The simple word Care may suffice to express [the journal’s] philosophical mission. The new journal is designed to promote better patient care by serving the expanded needs of all health professionals committed to the care of patients with diabetes. As such, the American Diabetes Association views Diabetes Care as a reaffirmation of Francis Weld Peabody’s contention that “the secret of the care of the patient is in caring for the patient.”

—Norbert Freinkel, Diabetes Care, January-February 1978
Diabetes Care is a journal for the health care practitioner that is intended to increase knowledge, stimulate research, and promote better management of people with diabetes. To achieve these goals, the journal publishes original research on human studies in the following categories: Clinical Care/Education/Nutrition/Psychosocial Research, Epidemiology/Health Services Research, Emerging Technologies and Therapeutics, Pathophysiology/Complications, and Cardiovascular and Metabolic Risk. The journal also publishes ADA statements, consensus reports, clinically relevant review articles, letters to the editor, and health/medical news or points of view. Topics covered are of interest to clinically oriented physicians, researchers, epidemiologists, psychologists, diabetes educators, and other health professionals. More information about the journal can be found online at care.diabetesjournals.org.

Copyright © 2021 by the American Diabetes Association, Inc. All rights reserved. Printed in the USA. Requests for permission to reuse content should be sent to Copyright Clearance Center at www.copyright.com or 222 Rosewood Dr., Danvers, MA 01923; phone: (978) 750-8400; fax: (978) 646-8600. Requests for permission to translate should be sent to Permissions Editor, American Diabetes Association, at permissions@diabetes.org.

The American Diabetes Association reserves the right to reject any advertisement for any reason, which need not be disclosed to the party submitting the advertisement.

Commercial reprint orders should be directed to Sheridan Content Services, (800) 635-7181, ext. 8065.

Single issues of Diabetes Care can be ordered by calling toll-free (800) 232-3472, 8:30 A.M. to 5:00 P.M. EST, Monday through Friday. Outside the United States, call (703) 549-1500. Rates: $75 in the United States, $95 in Canada and Mexico, and $125 for all other countries.

Diabetes Care is available online at care.diabetesjournals.org. Please call the numbers listed above, e-mail membership@diabetes.org, or visit the online journal for more information about submitting manuscripts, publication charges, ordering reprints, subscribing to the journal, becoming an ADA member, advertising, permission to reuse content, and the journal’s publication policies.

Periodicals postage paid at Arlington, VA, and additional mailing offices.
Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2022

1. Improving Care and Promoting Health in Populations
   - Diabetes and Population Health
   - Tailoring Treatment for Social Context

2. Classification and Diagnosis of Diabetes
   - Classification
   - Diagnostic Tests for Diabetes
   - Type 1 Diabetes
   - Prediabetes and Type 2 Diabetes
   - Cystic Fibrosis–Related Diabetes
   - Posttransplantation Diabetes Mellitus
   - Monogenic Diabetes Syndromes
   - Pancreatic Diabetes or Diabetes in the Context of Disease of the Exocrine Pancreas
   - Gestational Diabetes Mellitus

3. Prevention or Delay of Type 2 Diabetes and Associated Comorbidities
   - Lifestyle Behavior Change for Diabetes Prevention
   - Pharmacologic Interventions
   - Prevention of Vascular Disease and Mortality

4. Comprehensive Medical Evaluation and Assessment of Comorbidities
   - Patient-Centered Collaborative Care
   - Comprehensive Medical Evaluation
   - Immunizations
   - Assessment of Comorbidities

5. Facilitating Behavior Change and Well-being to Improve Health Outcomes
   - Diabetes Self-management Education and Support
   - Medical Nutrition Therapy
   - Physical Activity
   - Smoking Cessation, Tobacco and e-Cigarettes
   - Psychosocial Issues

6. Glycemic Targets
   - Assessment of Glycemic Control
   - Glycemic Goals
   - Hypoglycemia
   - Intercurrent Illness

7. Diabetes Technology
   - General Device Principles
   - Blood Glucose Monitoring
   - Continuous Glucose Monitoring Devices
   - Insulin Delivery

8. Obesity and Weight Management for the Prevention and Treatment of Type 2 Diabetes
   - Assessment
   - Diet, Physical Activity, and Behavioral Therapy
   - Pharmacotherapy
   - Medical Devices for Weight Loss
   - Metabolic Surgery

9. Pharmacologic Approaches to Glycemic Treatment
   - Pharmacologic Therapy for Adults With Type 1 Diabetes
   - Surgical Treatment for Type 1 Diabetes
   - Pharmacologic Therapy for Adults With Type 2 Diabetes

10. Cardiovascular Disease and Risk Management
    - The Risk Calculator
    - Hypertension/Blood Pressure Control
    - Lipid Management
    - Statin Treatment
    - Antiplatelet Agents
    - Cardiovascular Disease

11. Chronic Kidney Disease and Risk Management
    - Chronic Kidney Disease
    - Epidemiology of Diabetes and Chronic Kidney Disease
    - Assessment of Albuminuria and Estimated Glomerular Filtration Rate
    - Diagnosis of Diabetic Kidney Disease
    - Staging of Chronic Kidney Disease
    - Acute Kidney Injury
    - Surveillance
    - Interventions

12. Retinopathy, Neuropathy, and Foot Care
    - Diabetic Retinopathy
    - Neuropathy
    - Foot Care

13. Older Adults
    - Neurocognitive Function
    - Hypoglycemia
    - Treatment Goals
    - Lifestyle Management
    - Pharmacologic Therapy
    - Special Considerations for Older Adults With Type 1 Diabetes
    - Treatment in Skilled Nursing Facilities and Nursing Homes
    - End-of-Life Care

14. Children and Adolescents
    - Type 1 Diabetes
    - Type 2 Diabetes
    - Transition From Pediatric to Adult Care

15. Management of Diabetes in Pregnancy
    - Diabetes in Pregnancy
    - Preconception Counseling
    - Glycemic Targets in Pregnancy
    - Management of Gestational Diabetes Mellitus
    - Management of Preexisting Type 1 Diabetes and Type 2 Diabetes in Pregnancy
    - Preeclampsia and Aspirin
    - Pregnancy and Drug Considerations
    - Postpartum Care

16. Diabetes Care in the Hospital
    - Hospital Care Delivery Standards
    - Glycemic Targets in Hospitalized Patients
    - Bedside Blood Glucose Monitoring
    - Glucose-Lowering Treatment in Hospitalized Patients
    - Hypoglycemia
Introduction: *Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2022*

Diabetes is a complex, chronic illness requiring continuous medical care with multifactorial risk-reduction strategies beyond glycemic control. Ongoing diabetes self-management education and support are critical to preventing acute complications and reducing the risk of long-term complications. Significant evidence exists that supports a range of interventions to improve diabetes outcomes.

The American Diabetes Association (ADA) "Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes," referred to as the Standards of Care, is intended to provide clinicians, researchers, policy makers, and other interested individuals with the components of diabetes care, general treatment goals, and tools to evaluate the quality of care. The Standards of Care recommendations are not intended to preclude clinical judgment and must be applied in the context of excellent clinical care, with adjustments for individual preferences, comorbidities, and other patient factors. For more detailed information about the management of diabetes, please refer to *Medical Management of Type 1 Diabetes* (1) and *Medical Management of Type 2 Diabetes* (2).

The recommendations in the Standards of Care include screening, diagnostic, and therapeutic actions that are known or believed to favorably affect health outcomes of patients with diabetes. Many of these interventions have also been shown to be cost-effective (3,4). As indicated, the recommendations encompass care for youth (children ages birth to 11 years and adolescents ages 12–18 years) and older adults (65 years and older).

The ADA strives to improve and update the Standards of Care to ensure that clinicians, health plans, and policy makers can continue to rely on it as the most authoritative source for current guidelines for diabetes care.

**ADA STANDARDS, STATEMENTS, REPORTS, AND REVIEWS**

The ADA has been actively involved in the development and dissemination of diabetes care clinical practice recommendations and related documents for more than 30 years. The ADA’s Standards of Medical Care is viewed as an important resource for health care professionals who care for people with diabetes.

**Standards of Care**

The annual Standards of Care supplement to Diabetes Care contains official ADA position, is authored by the ADA, and provides all of the ADA’s current clinical practice recommendations.

To update the Standards of Care, the ADA’s Professional Practice Committee (PPC) performs an extensive clinical diabetes literature search, supplemented with input from ADA staff and the medical community at large. The PPC updates the Standards of Care annually and strives to include discussion of emerging clinical considerations in the text, and as evidence evolves, clinical guidance may be included in the recommendations. However, the Standards of Care is a “living” document, where important updates are published online should the PPC determine that new evidence or regulatory changes (e.g., drug approvals, label changes) merit immediate inclusion. More information on the “living Standards” can be found on the ADA’s professional website DiabetesPro at professional.diabetes.org/content-page/living-standards.

The Standards of Care supersedes all previous ADA position statements—and the recommendations therein—on clinical topics within the purview of the Standards of Care; ADA position statements, while still containing valuable analysis, should not be considered the ADA’s current position. The Standards of Care receives annual review and approval by the ADA’s Board of Directors and is reviewed by ADA’s clinical staff leadership.

**ADA Statement**

An ADA statement is an official ADA point of view or belief that does not contain clinical practice recommendations and may be issued on advocacy, policy, economic, or medical issues related to diabetes.

ADA statements undergo a formal review process, including a review by the appropriate ADA national committee, ADA science and health care staff, and the ADA’s Board of Directors.

**Consensus Report**

A consensus report of a particular topic contains a comprehensive examination and is authored by an expert panel (i.e., consensus panel) and represents the panel’s collective analysis, evaluation, and opinion. The need for a consensus report arises when clinicians, scientists, regulators,
and/or policy makers desire guidance and/or clarity on a medical or scientific issue related to diabetes for which the evidence is contradictory, emerging, or incomplete. Consensus reports may also highlight gaps in evidence and propose areas of future research to address these gaps. A consensus report is not an ADA position but represents expert opinion only and is produced under the auspices of the ADA by invited experts. A consensus report may be developed after an ADA Clinical Conference or Research Symposium.

**Scientific Review**

A scientific review is a balanced review and analysis of the literature on a scientific or medical topic related to diabetes. A scientific review is not an ADA position and does not contain clinical practice recommendations but is produced under the auspices of the ADA by invited experts. The scientific review may provide a scientific rationale for clinical practice recommendations in the Standards of Care. The category may also include task force and expert committee reports.

### GRADING OF SCIENTIFIC EVIDENCE

Since the ADA first began publishing clinical practice guidelines, there has been considerable evolution in the evaluation of scientific evidence and in the development of evidence-based guidelines. In 2002, the ADA developed a classification system to grade the quality of scientific evidence supporting ADA recommendations. A 2015 analysis of the evidence cited in the Standards of Care found steady improvement in quality over the previous 10 years, with the 2014 Standards of Care for the first time having the majority of bulletted recommendations supported by A level or B level evidence (5). A grading system (Table 1) developed by the ADA and modeled after existing methods was used to clarify and codify the evidence that forms the basis for the recommendations. All recommendations are critical to comprehensive care. ADA recommendations are assigned ratings of A, B, or C, depending on the quality of the evidence in support of the recommendation. Expert opinion E is a separate category for recommendations in which there is no evidence from clinical trials, clinical trials may be impractical, or there is conflicting evidence. Recommendations assigned an E level of evidence are informed by key opinion leaders in the field of diabetes (members of the PPC) and cover important elements of clinical care. All recommendations receive a rating for the strength of the evidence and not for the strength of the recommendation. Recommendations with A level evidence are based on large well-designed clinical trials or well-done meta-analyses. Generally, these recommendations have the best chance of improving outcomes when applied to the population for which they are appropriate. Recommendations with lower levels of evidence may be equally important but are not as well supported.

Of course, published evidence is only one component of clinical decision-making. Clinicians care for patients, not populations; guidelines must always be interpreted with the individual patient in mind. Individual circumstances, such as comorbid and coexisting diseases, age, education, disability, and, above all, patients’ values and preferences, must be considered and may lead to different treatment targets and strategies. Furthermore, conventional evidence hierarchies, such as the one adapted by the ADA, may miss nuances important in diabetes care. For example, although there is excellent evidence from clinical trials supporting the importance of achieving multiple risk factor control, the optimal way to achieve this result is less clear. It is difficult to assess each component of such a complex intervention.

### References
5. Grant RW, Kirkman MS. Trends in the evidence level for the American Diabetes Association’s “Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes” from 2005 to 2014. Diabetes Care 2015;38:6–8
The Professional Practice Committee (PPC) of the American Diabetes Association (ADA) is responsible for the “Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes,” referred to as the Standards of Care. The PPC is a multidisciplinary expert committee comprising physicians, diabetes care and education specialists, and others who have expertise in a range of areas, including, but not limited to, adult and pediatric endocrinology, epidemiology, public health, cardiovascular risk management, microvascular complications, preconception and pregnancy care, weight management and diabetes prevention, and use of technology in diabetes management. Appointment to the PPC is based on excellence in clinical practice and research, with attention to appropriate representation of members based on considerations including but not limited to demographic, geographical, work setting, or identity characteristics (e.g., gender, ethnicity, ability level, etc.). Although the primary role of the PPC members is to review and update the Standards of Care, they may also be involved in ADA statements, reports, and reviews.

All members of the PPC are required to disclose potential conflicts of interest with industry and other relevant organizations. These disclosures are discussed at the outset of each Standards of Care revision meeting. Members of the committee, their employers, and their disclosed conflicts of interest are listed in “Disclosures: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2022” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-PPPC). The ADA funds development of the Standards of Care out of its general revenues and does not use industry support for this purpose.

Relevant literature was thoroughly reviewed through 1 July 2021; additionally, critical updates published through 1 August 2021 were considered. Exceptions were made for ADA-convened consensus reports, like “The Management of Type 1 Diabetes in Adults. A Consensus Report by the American Diabetes Association (ADA) and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes (EASD)” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dci21-0043). Recommendations were revised based on new evidence, new considerations for standard of care practices, or, in some cases, to clarify the prior recommendations or revise wording to match the strength of the published evidence. A table linking the changes in recommendations to new evidence can be reviewed online at professional.diabetes.org/SOC. The Standards of Care is reviewed by ADA scientific and medical staff and is approved by the ADA’s Board of Directors, which includes health care professionals, scientists, and lay people.

Feedback from the larger clinical community was invaluable for the annual 2021 revision of the Standards of Care. Readers who wish to comment on the 2022 Standards of Care are invited to do so at professional.diabetes.org/SOC.

The PPC thanks the following individuals who provided their expertise in reviewing and/or consulting with the committee: Kristine Bell, APD, CDE, PhD; Lee-Shing Chang, MD; Alison B. Evert, MS, RDN, CDoses; Deborah Greenwood, PhD, RN, BC-ADM, CDoses, FADces; Joy Hayes, MS, RDN, CDoses; Helen Lawler, MD; Joshua J. Neumiller, PharmD, CDoses, FADces, FASCP; Naushira Pandya, MD, CMD, FACP; Mary Elizabeth Patti, MD, FACP, FTOS; Marian Rewers, MD; Alissa Segal, PharmD, RPh, CDE, CDTC, FCCP; David Simmons, BA, MBBS, MA, MD, FRACP, FRCP; Christopher Still, DO, FACP, FTOS; Jennifer Sun, MD; Erika F. Werner, MD, MS; and Jennifer Wyckoff, MD.

Members of the PPC
Boris Draznin, MD, PhD (Chair)
Vanita A. Aroda, MD
George Bakris, MD
Gretchen Benson, RDN, LD, CDoses
Florence M. Brown, MD
RaShaye Freeman, DNP, FNP-BC, CDoses, ADM-BC
Jennifer Green, MD
Elbert Huang, MD, MPH, FACP
Diana Isaacs, PharmD, BCPS, BC-ADM, CDoses
Scott Kahan, MD, MPH
Jose Leon, MD, MPH
Sarah K. Lyons, MD
Anne L. Peters, MD
Priya Prahalad, MD, PhD
Jane E.B. Reusch, MD
Deborah Young-Hyman, PhD, CDoses
American College of Cardiology—Designated Representatives (Section 10)
Sandeep Das, MD, MPH, FACC
Mikhail Kosiborod, MD, FACC

ADA Staff
Mindy Saraco, MHA (corresponding author: msaraco@diabetes.org)
Malaika J. Hill, MA
Robert A. Gabbay, MD, PhD
Nuha Ali El Sayed, MD, MMSc
Summary of Revisions: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2022

Diabetes Care 2022;45(Suppl. 1):S4–S7 | https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SREV

GENERAL CHANGES
The field of diabetes care is rapidly changing as new research, technology, and treatments that can improve the health and well-being of people with diabetes continue to emerge. With annual updates since 1989, the American Diabetes Association (ADA) has long been a leader in producing guidelines that capture the most current state of the field.

Although levels of evidence for several recommendations have been updated, these changes are not outlined below where the clinical recommendation has remained the same. That is, changes in evidence level from, for example, E to C are not noted below. The 2022 Standards of Care contains, in addition to many minor changes that clarify recommendations or reflect new evidence, the following more substantive revisions.

SECTION CHANGES
Section 1. Improving Care and Promoting Health in Populations
Additional information has been included on online platforms to support behavior change and well-being. The renamed “Cost Considerations for Medication-Taking Behaviors” subsection has been expanded to include more discussion about costs of medications and treatment goals.

The concept of health numeracy and its role in diabetes prevention and management was added to the newly named “Health Literacy and Numeracy” subsection.

The community health workers content was expanded.

Section 2. Classification and Diagnosis of Diabetes
A recommendation about adequate carbohydrate intake prior to oral glucose tolerance testing as a screen for diabetes was added, with supportive references added to the text (Recommendations 2.4 and 2.12).

The discussion regarding use of point-of-care A1C assays for the diagnosis of diabetes has been revised.

More information has been added to the “Race/Ethnicity/Hemoglobinopathies” subsection.

The “Type 1 Diabetes” subsection and the recommendations within have been updated based on the publication of “The Management of Type 1 Diabetes in Adults. A Consensus Report by the American Diabetes Association (ADA) and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes (EASD)” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dci21-0043).

The gestational diabetes mellitus recommendations have been revised with changes made regarding preconception and early pregnancy screening for diabetes and abnormal glucose metabolism, with supporting evidence added to the text.

Section 3. Prevention or Delay of Type 2 Diabetes and Associated Comorbidities
The title has been changed to “Prevention or Delay of Type 2 Diabetes and Associated Comorbidities.”

Recommendation 3.1 has been modified to better individualize monitoring for the development of type 2 diabetes in those with prediabetes.

Adults with overweight/obesity are recommended to be referred to an intensive lifestyle behavior change program (Recommendation 3.2).

Additional considerations have been added to the recommendation regarding screening for prediabetes and diabetes should begin at age 35 years.

Recommendation 2.24 regarding genetic testing for those who do not have typical characteristics of type 1 or type 2 diabetes has been revised based on the publication of “The Management of Type 1 Diabetes in Adults. A Consensus Report by the American Diabetes Association (ADA) and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes (EASD)” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S003).

The Management of Type 1 Diabetes in Adults. A Consensus Report by the American Diabetes Association (ADA) and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes (EASD)” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc21-0043).

The Title has been changed to “Prevention or Delay of Type 2 Diabetes and Associated Comorbidities.”

Recommendation 3.1 has been modified to better individualize monitoring for the development of type 2 diabetes in those with prediabetes.

Adults with overweight/obesity are recommended to be referred to an intensive lifestyle behavior change program (Recommendation 3.2).

Additional considerations have been added to the recommendation regarding screening for prediabetes and diabetes should begin at age 35 years.

Recommendation 2.24 regarding genetic testing for those who do not have typical characteristics of type 1 or type 2 diabetes has been revised based on the publication of “The Management of Type 1 Diabetes in Adults. A Consensus Report by the American Diabetes Association (ADA) and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes (EASD)” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S003).

The gestational diabetes mellitus recommendations have been revised with changes made regarding preconception and early pregnancy screening for diabetes and abnormal glucose metabolism, with supporting evidence added to the text.

Section 3. Prevention or Delay of Type 2 Diabetes and Associated Comorbidities
(https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S003)
The title has been changed to “Prevention or Delay of Type 2 Diabetes and Associated Comorbidities.”

Recommendation 3.1 has been modified to better individualize monitoring for the development of type 2 diabetes in those with prediabetes.

Adults with overweight/obesity are recommended to be referred to an intensive lifestyle behavior change program (Recommendation 3.2).

Additional considerations have been added to the recommendation regarding screening for prediabetes and diabetes should begin at age 35 years.

Recommendation 2.24 regarding genetic testing for those who do not have typical characteristics of type 1 or type 2 diabetes has been revised based on the publication of “The Management of Type 1 Diabetes in Adults. A Consensus Report by the American Diabetes Association (ADA) and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes (EASD)” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S003).

The gestational diabetes mellitus recommendations have been revised with changes made regarding preconception and early pregnancy screening for diabetes and abnormal glucose metabolism, with supporting evidence added to the text.
metformin therapy (Recommendation 3.6).

More discussion was added on vitamin D supplementation in the “Pharmacologic Interventions” subsection.

There is a new subsection and recommendation on patient-centered care aimed at weight loss or prevention of weight gain, minimizing progression of hyperglycemia, and attention to cardiovascular risk and associated comorbidities.

Section 4. Comprehensive Medical Evaluation and Assessment of Comorbidities
(https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S004)
The “Immunizations” subsection has been revised, and more information and evidence on the influenza vaccine for people with diabetes and cardiovascular disease has been added to the “Influenza” subsection. Within this subsection, coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) vaccination information has been added based on evolving evidence.

Table 4.6, management of patients with nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD) and nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH), and Table 4.7, summary of published NAFLD guidelines, reproduced from “Preparing for the NASH Epidemic: A Call to Action” (https://doi.org/10.2337/doi21-0020), provide more information on how to manage these diseases. Developed following an American Gastroenterological Association conference on the burden, screening, risk stratification, diagnosis, and management of individuals with NAFLD, the Call to Action informed other revisions to the “Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease” subsection.

Section 5. Facilitating Behavior Change and Well-being to Improve Health Outcomes
(https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S005)
Recommendation 5.5 has been added to the “Diabetes Self-Management Education and Support” subsection to address digital coaching and digital self-management interviews as effective methods of education and support.

In the “Carbohydrates” subsection, more emphasis has been placed on the quality of carbohydrates selected. In Recommendation 5.15, a fiber goal has been added for additional clarity. Evidence on consumption of mixed meals, insulin dosing, and impact on glyceremia has also been added to this subsection.

A new subsection on cognitive capacity/impairment has been added, with recommendations for monitoring (Recommendation 5.51) and referral (Recommendation 5.52) for formal assessment, and a discussion of the evidence regarding cognitive impairment and diabetes.

Section 6. Glycemic Targets
(https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S006)
Time in range has been more fully incorporated into the “Glycemic Assessment” subsection.

Table 6.2 for those values.

Glucose variability and the association of hypoglycemia was added to the “Hypoglycemia” subsection, as well as information on hypoglycemia prevention, including the Blood Glucose Awareness Training, Dose Adjusted for Normal Eating (DAFNE), and DAFNEplus programs.

Section 7. Diabetes Technology
(https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S007)
General recommendations on the selection of technology based on individual and caregiver preferences (Recommendation 7.1), ongoing education on use of devices (Recommendation 7.2), continued access to devices across payers (Recommendation 7.3), support of students using devices in school settings (Recommendation 7.4), and early initiation of technology (Recommendation 7.5) now introduce the technology section, when previously these concepts were distributed throughout the section.

“Self-monitoring of blood glucose (SMBG)” was replaced with the more commonly used “blood glucose monitoring (BGM)” throughout, and more information based on the U.S. Food and Drug Administration recommendation regarding when an individual might need access to BGM was added to the “Blood Glucose Monitoring” subsection.

The recommendations regarding use of continuous glucose monitoring (CGM) were divided between adults (Recommendations 7.11 and 7.12) and youth (Recommendations 7.13 and 7.14), and the recommendation regarding periodic use of CGM or the use of professional CGM has been simplified (Recommendation 7.17). Frequency of sensor use has also been added to the text of the “Continuous Glucose Monitoring Devices” subsection, as well as a restructuring of the text in this section based on study design.

“Smart pens” are now referred to as “connected insulin pens,” and more discussion and evidence has been added to the insulin pens content.

The discussion of automated insulin delivery (AID) systems has been combined with the insulin pumps section and is separate from the “Do-It-Yourself Closed-Loop Systems” subsection.

Recommendation 7.29 has been modified to include outpatient procedures and the consideration that people should be allowed continued use of diabetes devices during inpatient or outpatient procedures when they can safely use them and supervision is available.

Section 8. Obesity and Weight Management for the Prevention and Treatment of Type 2 Diabetes
(https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S008)
The title has been changed to “Obesity and Weight Management for the Prevention and Treatment of Type 2 Diabetes.”

Evidence has been added regarding the importance of addressing obesity, as both obesity and diabetes increase risk for more severe COVID-19 infections.

The concept of weight distribution and weight gain pattern and trajectory, in addition to weight and BMI, has been added to the “Assessment” subsection.

Recommendation 8.12 and its associated text discussion added to the “Diet, Physical Activity, and Behavioral Therapy” subsection address the lack of clear evidence that dietary supplements are effective for weight loss.

The “Medical Devices for Weight Loss” subsection has been revised to include more information on a newly approved oral hydrogel.

Recommendation 8.21 has been revised to include behavioral support and routine monitoring of metabolic status.

A new recommendation (Recommendation 8.22) and discussion on postbariatric hypoglycemia, its causes, diagnosis, and management have been added.

Table 8.2, medications approved by the FDA for the treatment of obesity, has been updated to include semaglutide.
Section 9. Pharmacologic Approaches to Glycemic Treatment

(https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S009)
Recommendation 9.3 has been revised to include fat and protein content, in addition to carbohydrates, as part of education on matching mealtime insulin dosing.

Fig. 9.1, “Choices of insulin regimens in people with type 1 diabetes,” Fig. 9.2, “Simplified overview of indications for β-cell replacement therapy in people with type 1 diabetes,” and Table 9.1, “Examples of subcutaneous insulin regimens,” from “The Management of Type 1 Diabetes in Adults. A Consensus Report by the American Diabetes Association (ADA) and the European Association for the Study of Diabetes (EASD)” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dci21-0043), have been added to the “Pharmacologic Therapy for Adults with Type 1 Diabetes” subsection.

Table 9.2 has been updated.
Recommendation 9.4 has been revised and is now two recommendations (Recommendations 9.4a and 9.4b) on first-line therapies and initial therapies, all based on comorbidities, patient-centered treatment factors, and management needs.

Recommendation 9.5 has been updated with other considerations for the continuation of metformin therapy after patients have been initiated on insulin.

A new recommendation has been added regarding the use of insulin and combination therapy with a glucagon-like peptide 1 (GLP-1) receptor agonist for greater efficacy and durability (Recommendation 9.11).

The section now concludes with an overview of changes made to Fig. 9.3, “Pharmacologic treatment of hyperglycemia in adults with type 2 diabetes,” to reconcile emerging evidence and support harmonization of guidelines recognizing alternative initial treatment approaches to metformin as acceptable, depending on comorbidities, patient-centered treatment factors, and glycemic and comorbidity management needs. The principle of medication incorporation is emphasized throughout Fig. 9.3—not all treatment intensification results in sequential add-on therapy, and instead may involve switching therapy or weaning current therapy to accommodate therapeutic changes.

Section 10. Cardiovascular Disease and Risk Management

(https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S010)
This section is endorsed for the fourth consecutive year by the American College of Cardiology.

A new figure (Fig. 10.1) has been added to depict the recommended comprehensive approach to the reduction in risk of diabetes-related complications.

Recommendation 10.1 on screening and diagnosis of blood pressure has been revised to include diagnosis of hypertension at a single health care visit for individuals with blood pressure measuring ≥180/110 mmHg and cardiovascular disease.

More information on low diastolic blood pressure and blood pressure management has been added to the “Individualization of Treatment Targets” subsection under “Hypertension/Blood Pressure Control.”

In the “Treatment Strategies: Lifestyle Interventions” subsection under “Hypertension/Blood Pressure Control,” discussion has been added on the use of internet or mobile-based digital platforms to reinforce healthy behaviors and their ability to enhance the efficacy of medical therapy for hypertension.

More information on use of ACE inhibitors and angiotensin receptor blocker (ARB) therapy for those with kidney function decline has been added to the “Pharmacologic Interventions” subsection under “Hypertension/Blood Pressure Control.”

Ezetimibe being preferential due to its lower cost has been removed from Recommendation 10.24.

More discussion was added on use of evolocumab therapy and reduction in all strokes and ischemic stroke.

A new subsection on statins and bempedoic acid has been added.

A discussion of the ADAPTABLE (Aspirin Dosing: A Patient-Centric Trial Assessing Benefits and Long-term Efficacy) trial has been added to the “Aspirin Dosing” subsection.

A discussion of the TWILIGHT (Ticagrelor With Aspirin or Alone in High-Risk Patients After Coronary Intervention) trial has been added to the “Indications for P2Y12 Receptor Antagonist Use” subsection.

Recommendation 10.42c has been added to the “Cardiovascular Disease: Treatment” subsection, providing guidance for patients with type 2 diabetes and established atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease (ASCVD) or multiple risk factors for ASCVD on the use of combined therapy with a sodium–glucose cotransporter 2 (SGLT2) inhibitor with demonstrated cardiovascular benefit and a GLP-1 receptor agonist with demonstrated cardiovascular benefit.

A discussion of the Dapagliflozin and Prevention of Adverse Outcomes in Chronic Kidney Disease (DAPA-KD) trial, the Effect of Sotagliflozin on Cardiovascular Events in Patients With Type 2 Diabetes Post Worsening Heart Failure (SOLOIST-WHF) trial, and the Effect of Eptifibatide on Cardiovascular Outcomes (AMPLITUDE-O) have been added, in addition to the results of the Dapagliflozin and Prevention of Adverse Outcomes in Heart Failure (DAPA-HF) trial, the Evaluation of Ertugliflozin Efficacy and Safety Cardiovascular Outcomes Trial (VERTIS CV), and the Effect of Sotagliflozin on Cardiovascular and Renal Events in Patients With Type 2 Diabetes and Moderate Renal Impairment Who Are at Cardiovascular Risk (SCORED) trial, which were added as a Living Standards update in June 2021.

Table 10.3C has been updated.
A new subsection, “Clinical Approach,” now concludes this section on risk reduction with SGLT2 inhibitors or GLP-1 receptor agonist therapy. Fig. 10.3 has been reproduced from the ADA-endorsed American College of Cardiology 2020 Expert Consensus Decision Pathway on Novel Therapies for Cardiovascular Risk Reduction in Patients with Type 2 Diabetes” (https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jacc.2020.05.037) and outlines the approach to risk reduction with SGLT2 inhibitor or GLP-1 receptor agonist therapy in conjunction with other traditional, guideline-based preventive medical therapies for blood pressure as well as lipid, glycemic, and antiplatelet therapy.

Section 11. Chronic Kidney Disease and Risk Management

(https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S011)
Formerly, Section 11, “Microvascular Complications and Foot Care,” contained content on chronic kidney disease, retinopathy, neuropathy, and foot care. This section has now been divided into two sections: Section 11, “Chronic Kidney Disease and Risk Management” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S011),...
Section 12. Retinopathy, Neuropathy, and Foot Care

(https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S012)

Formerly, Section 11, “Microvascular Complications and Foot Care,” contained content on chronic kidney disease, retinopathy, neuropathy, and foot care. This section has now been divided into two sections: Section 11, “Chronic Kidney Disease and Risk Management” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S011), and Section 12, “Retinopathy, Neuropathy, and Foot Care” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S012).

More discussion was added to the “Diabetic Retinopathy” subsection regarding use of GLP-1 receptor agonists and retinopathy.

Recommendation 12.11 was updated to indicate that intravitreous injections of anti–vascular endothelial growth factor are a reasonable alternative to traditional panretinal laser photocoagulation for some patients with proliferative diabetic retinopathy and also reduce the risk of vision loss in these patients.

Recommendation 12.12 was also updated to recommend intravitreous injections of anti–vascular endothelial growth factor as first-line treatment for most eyes with diabetic macular edema that involves the foveal center and impairs vision acuity.

A new recommendation (Recommendation 12.13) was added on macular focal/grid photocoagulation and intravitreal injections of corticosteroid.

Section 13. Older Adults

(https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S013)

In the “Hypoglycemia” subsection, glycemic variability and older adults with physical or cognitive limitations was added to the discussion of use of CGM.

The upper threshold of 8.5% (69 mmol/mol) was removed from the example of less stringent goals for those with multiple coexisting chronic illnesses, cognitive impairment, or functional dependence in Recommendation 13.6.

More discussion was added on classification of older adults in the “Patients With Complications and Reduced Functionality” subsection.

The benefits of a structured exercise program (as in the Lifestyle Interventions and Independence for Elders [LIFE] Study) was incorporated into the “Lifestyle Management” subsection.

More discussion of overtreatment was added to the “Pharmacologic Therapy” subsection, as was the consideration that for those taking metformin long term, monitoring vitamin B12 deficiency should be considered. The insulin therapy discussion was also updated with more information on avoidance of hypoglycemia.

Section 14. Children and Adolescents

(https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S014)

Table 14.1A and Table 14.1B have been newly created and provide an overview of the recommendations for screening and treatment of complications and related conditions in pediatric type 1 diabetes (Table 14.1A) and type 2 diabetes (Table 14.1B).

The “Diabetes Self-Management Education and Support” subsection now discusses adult caregivers as critical to diabetes self-management in youth, and how they should be engaged to ensure there is not a premature transfer of responsibility for self-management to the youth.

Recommendation 14.7 has been simplified.

Recommendations in the renamed “Glycemic Monitoring, Insulin Delivery, and Targets” subsection (Recommendations 14.18–14.27) have been reorganized and revised to better align with recommendations in Section 7, “Diabetes Technology” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S007).

The recommendations in the type 1 diabetes “Management of Cardiovascular Risk Factors” subsection (Recommendations 14.34–14.42) have been revised to include more information on timing of screening and treatment and updates to indicators for screening and treatment.

Throughout the section, more has been added regarding reproductive counseling in female youth considering ACE inhibitors and ARBs.

A new recommendation (Recommendation 14.49) was added to the “Retinopathy” subsection for type 1 diabetes regarding retinal photography.

A new recommendation (Recommendation 14.61) has been added on the use of CGM for youth with type 2 diabetes on multiple daily injections or continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion.

The recommendations for hypertension screening and management (Recommendations 14.77–14.80) for type 2 diabetes have been revised.

Fig. 14.1 has been updated.

Section 15. Management of Diabetes in Pregnancy

(https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S015)

A new recommendation (Recommendation 15.16) and discussion of the evidence on telehealth visits for pregnant women with gestational diabetes mellitus has been added to the “Management of Gestational Diabetes Mellitus” subsection.

A new subsection on “Physical Activity” has been added.

Additional discussion was added regarding insulin as the preferred treatment for type 2 diabetes in pregnancy.

Section 16. Diabetes Care in the Hospital

(https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S016)

Additional information has been added on the use of CGM during the COVID-19 pandemic to minimize contact between health care providers and patients, especially those in the intensive care unit.

Section 17. Diabetes Advocacy

(https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S017)

No changes have been made to this section.
1. Improving Care and Promoting Health in Populations: *Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2022*

Diabetes Care 2022;45(Suppl. 1):S8–S16 | https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S001

The American Diabetes Association (ADA) “Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes” includes the ADA’s current clinical practice recommendations and is intended to provide the components of diabetes care, general treatment goals and guidelines, and tools to evaluate quality of care. Members of the ADA Professional Practice Committee, a multidisciplinary expert committee (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SPPC), are responsible for updating the Standards of Care annually, or more frequently as warranted. For a detailed description of ADA standards, statements, and reports, as well as the evidence-grading system for ADA’s clinical practice recommendations, please refer to the Standards of Care Introduction (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SINT). Readers who wish to comment on the Standards of Care are invited to do so at professional.diabetes.org/SOC.

**DIABETES AND POPULATION HEALTH**

**Recommendations**

1.1 Ensure treatment decisions are timely, rely on evidence-based guidelines, include social community support, and are made collaboratively with patients based on individual preferences, prognoses, comorbidities, and informed financial considerations. **B**

1.2 Align approaches to diabetes management with the Chronic Care Model. This model emphasizes person-centered team care, integrated long-term treatment approaches to diabetes and comorbidities, and ongoing collaborative communication and goal setting between all team members. **A**

1.3 Care systems should facilitate team-based care, including those knowledgeable and experienced in diabetes management as part of the team, and utilization of patient registries, decision support tools, and community involvement to meet patient needs. **B**

1.4 Assess diabetes health care maintenance (see Table 4.1) using reliable and relevant data metrics to improve processes of care and health outcomes, with attention to care costs. **B**

Population health is defined as “the health outcomes of a group of individuals, including the distribution of health outcomes within the group”; these outcomes can be measured in terms of health outcomes (mortality, morbidity, health, and functional status), disease burden (incidence and prevalence), and behavioral and metabolic factors (exercise, diet, A1C, etc.) (1). Clinical practice recommendations for health care providers are tools that can ultimately improve health across...
populations; however, for optimal outcomes, diabetes care must also be individualized for each patient. Thus, efforts to improve population health will require a combination of policy-level, system-level, and patient-level approaches. With such an integrated approach in mind, the American Diabetes Association (ADA) highlights the importance of patient-centered care, defined as care that considers individual patient comorbidities and prognoses; is respectful of and responsive to patient preferences, needs, and values; and ensures that patient values guide all clinical decisions (2). Furthermore, social determinants of health (SDOH)—often out of direct control of the individual and potentially representing lifelong risk—contribute to medical and psychological outcomes and must be addressed to improve all health outcomes (3). Clinical practice recommendations, whether based on evidence or expert opinion, are intended to guide an overall approach to care. The science and art of medicine come together when the clinician makes treatment recommendations for a patient who may not meet the eligibility criteria used in the studies on which guidelines are based. Recognizing that one size does not fit all, the standards presented here provide guidance for when and how to adapt recommendations for an individual. This section provides guidance for providers as well as health systems and policy makers.

Care Delivery Systems
The proportion of patients with diabetes who achieve recommended A1C, blood pressure, and LDL cholesterol levels has fluctuated in recent years (4). Glycemic control and control of cholesterol through dietary intake remain challenging. In 2013–2016, 64% of adults with diagnosed diabetes met individualized A1C target levels, 70% achieved recommended blood pressure control, 57% met the LDL cholesterol target level, and 85% were nonsmokers (4). Only 23% met targets for glycemic, blood pressure, and LDL cholesterol measures while also avoiding smoking (4). The mean A1C nationally among people with diabetes increased slightly from 7.3% in 2005–2008 to 7.5% in 2013–2016 based on the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES), with younger adults, women, and non-Hispanic Black individuals less likely to meet treatment targets (4). Certain segments of the population, such as young adults and patients with complex comorbidities, financial or other social hardships, and/or limited English proficiency, face particular challenges to goal-based care (5–7). Even after adjusting for these patient factors, the persistent variability in the quality of diabetes care across providers and practice settings indicates that substantial system-level improvements are still needed.

Diabetes poses a significant financial burden to individuals and society. It is estimated that the annual cost of diagnosed diabetes in the U.S. in 2017 was $327 billion, including $237 billion in direct medical costs and $90 billion in reduced productivity. After adjusting for inflation, the economic costs of diabetes increased by 26% from 2012 to 2017 (8). This is attributed to the increased prevalence of diabetes and the increased cost per person with diabetes. Therefore, ongoing population health strategies are needed in order to reduce costs and provide optimized care.

Chronic Care Model
Numerous interventions to improve adherence to the recommended standards have been implemented. However, a major barrier to optimal care is a delivery system that is often fragmented, lacks clinical information capabilities, duplicates services, and is poorly designed for the coordinated delivery of chronic care. The Chronic Care Model (CCM) takes these factors into consideration and is an effective framework for improving the quality of diabetes care (9).

Six Core Elements. The CCM includes six core elements to optimize the care of patients with chronic disease:

1. Delivery system design (moving from a reactive to a proactive care delivery system where planned visits are coordinated through a team-based approach)
2. Self-management support
3. Decision support (basing care on evidence-based, effective care guidelines)
4. Clinical information systems (using registries that can provide patient-specific and population-based support to the care team)
5. Community resources and policies (identifying or developing resources to support healthy lifestyles)
6. Health systems (to create a quality-oriented culture)

A 5-year effectiveness study of the CCM in 53,436 primary care patients with type 2 diabetes suggested that the use of this model of care delivery reduced the cumulative incidence of diabetes-related complications and all-cause mortality (10). Patients who were enrolled in the CCM experienced a reduction in cardiovascular disease risk by 56.6%, microvascular complications by 11.9%, and mortality by 66.1% (10). In addition, the same study suggested that health care utilization was lower in the CCM group, which resulted in health care savings of $7,294 per individual over the study period (11).

Redefining the roles of the health care delivery team and empowering patient self-management are fundamental to the successful implementation of the CCM (12). Collaborative, multidisciplinary teams are best suited to provide care for people with chronic conditions such as diabetes and to facilitate patients’ self-management (13–15). There are references to guide the implementation of the CCM into diabetes care delivery, including opportunities and challenges (16).

Strategies for System-Level Improvement
Optimal diabetes management requires an organized, systematic approach and the involvement of a coordinated team of dedicated health care professionals working in an environment where patient-centered, high-quality care is a priority (7,17,18). While many diabetes processes of care have improved nationally in the past decade, the overall quality of care for patients with diabetes remains suboptimal (4). Efforts to increase the quality of diabetes care include providing care that is concordant with evidence-based guidelines (19); expanding the role of teams to implement more intensive disease management strategies (7,20,21); tracking medication-taking behavior at a systems level (22); redesigning the organization of the care process (23);
implementing electronic health record tools (24,25); empowering and educating patients (26,27); removing financial barriers and reducing patient out-of-pocket costs for diabetes education, eye exams, diabetes technology, and necessary medications (7); assessing and addressing psychosocial issues (28,29); and identifying, developing, and engaging community resources and public policies that support healthy lifestyles (30). The National Diabetes Education Program maintains an online resource (https://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/professional-info/training.html) to help health care professionals design and implement more effective health care delivery systems for those with diabetes. Given the pluralistic needs of patients with diabetes and how the constant challenges they experience vary over the course of disease management (complex insulin regimens, new technology, etc.), a diverse team with complementary expertise is consistently recommended (31).

**Care Teams**

The care team, which centers around the patient, should avoid therapeutic inertia and prioritize timely and appropriate intensification of behavior change (diet and physical activity) and/or pharmacologic therapy for patients who have not achieved the recommended metabolic targets (32–34). Strategies shown to improve care team behavior and thereby catalyze reductions in A1C, blood pressure, and/or LDL cholesterol include engaging in explicit and collaborative goal setting with patients (35,36); identifying and addressing language, numeracy, or cultural barriers to care (37–39); integrating evidence-based guidelines and clinical information tools into the process of care (19,40,41); soliciting performance feedback, setting reminders, and providing structured care (e.g., guidelines, formal case management, and patient education resources) (7); and incorporating care management teams including nurses, dietitians, pharmacists, and other providers (20,42). In addition, initiatives such as the Patient-Centered Medical Home show promise for improving health outcomes by fostering comprehensive primary care and offering new opportunities for team-based chronic disease management (43).

**Telemedicine**

Telemedicine is a growing field that may increase access to care for patients with diabetes. The American Telemedicine Association defines telemedicine as the use of medical information exchanged from one site to another via electronic communications to improve a patient’s clinical health status. Telemedicine includes a growing variety of applications and services using two-way video, smartphones, wireless tools, and other forms of telecommunications technology (44). Increasingly, evidence suggests that various telemedicine modalities may facilitate reducing A1C in patients with type 2 diabetes compared with usual care or in addition to usual care (45), and findings suggest that telemedicine is a safe method of delivering type 1 diabetes care to rural patients (46). For rural populations or those with limited physical access to health care, telemedicine has a growing body of evidence for its effectiveness, particularly with regard to glycemic control as measured by A1C (47–49). Interactive strategies that facilitate communication between providers and patients, including the use of web-based portals or text messaging and those that incorporate medication adjustment, appear more effective. Telemedicine and other virtual environments can also be used to offer diabetes self-management education and clinical support and remove geographic and transportation barriers for patients living in underresourced areas or with disabilities (50). However, there is limited data available on the cost-effectiveness of these strategies.

**Behaviors and Well-being**

Successful diabetes care also requires a systematic approach to supporting patients’ behavior-change efforts. High-quality diabetes self-management education and support (DSMES) has been shown to improve patient self-management, satisfaction, and glycemic outcomes. National DSMES standards call for an integrated approach that includes clinical content and skills, behavioral strategies (goal setting, problem-solving), and engagement with psychosocial concerns (29). Increasingly, such support is being adapted for online platforms that have the potential to improve patient access to this important resource. These curriculums need to be tailored to the needs of the intended populations, including addressing the “digital divide,” i.e., access to the technology required for implementation (51–54).

For more information on DSMES, see Section 5, “Facilitating Behavior Change and Well-being to Improve Health Outcomes” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-5005).

**Cost Considerations for Medication-Taking Behaviors**

The cost of diabetes medications and devices is an ongoing barrier to achieving glycemic goals. Up to 25% of patients who are prescribed insulin report cost-related insulin undersuse (55). Insulin undsure due to cost has also been termed cost-related medication nonadherence. The cost of insulin has continued to increase in recent years for reasons that are not entirely clear. There are recommendations from the ADA Insulin Access and Affordability Working Group for approaches to this issue from a systems level (56). Recommendations including concepts such as cost-sharing for insured people with diabetes should be based on the lowest price available, the list price for insulins that closely reflects net price, and health plans that ensure that people with diabetes can access insulin without undue administrative burden or excessive cost (56).

The cost of medications (not only insulin) influences prescribing patterns and cost-related medication nonadherence because of patient burden and lack of secondary payer support (public and private insurance) for effective approved glucose-lowering, cardiovascular disease risk–reducing, and weight management therapeutics. Although not usually addressed as a social determinant of health, financial barriers remain a major source of health disparities, and costs should be a focus of treatment goals (57). (See TAILORING TREATMENT FOR SOCIAL CONTEXT and TREATMENT CONSIDERATIONS.) Reduction in cost-related medication nonadherence is associated with better biologic and psychologic outcomes, including quality of life.

**Access to Care and Quality Improvement**

The Affordable Care Act and Medicaid expansion have resulted in increased access to care for many individuals with diabetes, emphasizing the protection
of people with preexisting conditions, health promotion, and disease prevention (58). In fact, health insurance coverage increased from 84.7% in 2009 to 90.1% in 2016 for adults with diabetes aged 18–64 years. Coverage for those ≥65 years remained nearly universal (59). Patients who have either private or public insurance coverage are more likely to meet quality indicators for diabetes care (60). As mandated by the Affordable Care Act, the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality developed a National Quality Strategy based on triple aims that include improving the health of a population, overall quality and patient experience of care, and per capita cost (61,62). As health care systems and practices adapt to the changing landscape of health care, it will be important to integrate traditional disease-specific metrics with measures of patient experience, as well as cost, in assessing the quality of diabetes care (63,64). Information and guidance specific to quality improvement and practice transformation for diabetes care is available from the National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases guidance on diabetes care and quality (65). Using patient registries and electronic health records, health systems can evaluate the quality of diabetes care being delivered and perform intervention cycles as part of quality improvement strategies (66). Improvement of health literacy and numeracy is also a necessary component to improve care (67,68). Critical to these efforts is provider adherence to clinical practice recommendations (see Table 4.1) and the use of accurate, reliable data metrics that include sociodemographic variables to examine health equity within and across populations (69).

In addition to quality improvement efforts, other strategies that simultaneously improve the quality of care and potentially reduce costs are gaining momentum and include reimbursement structures that, in contrast to visit-based billing, reward the provision of appropriate and high-quality care to achieve metabolic goals (70) and incentives that accommodate personalized care goals (7,71). (Also see COST CONSIDERATIONS FOR MEDICATION-TAKING BEHAVIOR, above, regarding cost-related medication nonadherence reduction.)

**TAILORING TREATMENT FOR SOCIAL CONTEXT**

**Recommendations**

1.5 Assess food insecurity, housing insecurity/homelessness, financial barriers, and social capital/social community support to inform treatment decisions, with referral to appropriate local community resources. A

1.6 Provide patients with self-management support from lay health coaches, navigators, or community health workers when available. A

Health inequities related to diabetes and its complications are well documented, are heavily influenced by SDOH, and have been associated with greater risk for diabetes, higher population prevalence, and poorer diabetes outcomes (72–76). SDOH are defined as the economic, environmental, political, and social conditions in which people live and are responsible for a major part of health inequality worldwide (77). Greater exposure to adverse SDOH over the life course results in worse health (78). The ADA recognizes the association between social and environmental factors and the prevention and treatment of diabetes and has issued a call for research that seeks to better understand how these social determinants influence behaviors and how the relationships between these variables might be modified for the prevention and management of diabetes (79,80). While a comprehensive strategy to reduce diabetes-related health inequities in populations has not been formally studied, general recommendations from other chronic disease management and prevention models can be drawn upon to inform systems-level strategies in diabetes (81). For example, the National Academy of Medicine has published a framework for educating health care professionals on the importance of SDOH (82). Furthermore, there are resources available for the inclusion of standardized sociodemographic variables in electronic medical records to facilitate the measurement of health inequities as well as the impact of interventions designed to reduce those inequities (63,82,83).

SDOH are not consistently recognized and often go undiscussed in the clinical encounter (75). For example, a study by Piette et al. (84) found that among patients with chronic illnesses, two-thirds of those who reported not taking medications as prescribed due to cost-related medication nonadherence never shared this with their physician. In a study using data from the National Health Interview Survey (NHIS), Patel et al. (75) found that one-half of adults with diabetes reported financial stress and one-fifth reported food insecurity. One population in which such issues must be considered is older adults, where social difficulties may impair the quality of life and increase the risk of functional dependency (85) (see Section 13, “Older Adults,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S013, for a detailed discussion of social considerations in older adults). Creating systems-level mechanisms to screen for SDOH may help overcome structural barriers and communication gaps between patients and providers (75,86). In addition, brief, validated screening tools for some SDOH exist and could facilitate discussion around factors that significantly impact treatment during the clinical encounter. Below is a discussion of assessment and treatment considerations in the context of food insecurity, homelessness, limited English proficiency, limited health literacy, and low literacy.

**Food Insecurity**

Food insecurity is the unreliable availability of nutritious food and the inability to consistently obtain food without resorting to socially unacceptable practices. Over 18% of the U.S. population reported food insecurity between 2005 and 2014 (87). The rate is higher in some racial/ethnic minority groups, including African American and Latino populations, low-income households, and homes headed by a single mother. The rate of food insecurity in individuals with diabetes may be up to 20% (88). Additionally, the risk for type 2 diabetes is increased twofold in those with food insecurity (79) and has been associated with low adherence to taking medications appropriately and recommended self-care behaviors, depression, diabetes distress, and worse glycemic control when compared with individuals who
are food secure (89,90). Older adults with food insecurity are more likely to have emergency department visits and hospitalizations compared with older adults who do not report food insecurity (91). Risk for food insecurity can be assessed with a validated two-item screening tool (91) that includes the statements: 1) “Within the past 12 months we worried whether our food would run out before we got money to buy more” and 2) “Within the past 12 months the food we bought just didn’t last, and we didn’t have money to get more.” An affirmative response to either statement had a sensitivity of 97% and specificity of 83%. Interventions such as food prescription programs are considered promising practices to address food insecurity by integrating community resources into primary care settings and directly deal with food deserts in underserved communities (92,93).

**Treatment Considerations**

In those with diabetes and food insecurity, the priority is mitigating the increased risk for uncontrolled hyperglycemia and severe hypoglycemia. Reasons for the increased risk of hyperglycemia include the steady consumption of inexpensive carbohydrate-rich processed foods, binge eating, financial constraints to filling diabetes medication prescriptions, and anxiety/depression leading to poor diabetes self-care behaviors. Hypoglycemia can occur as a result of inadequate or erratic carbohydrate consumption following the administration of sulfonylureas or insulin. See Table 9.2 for drug-specific and patient factors, including cost and risk of hypoglycemia, which may be important considerations for adults with food insecurity and type 2 diabetes. Providers should consider these factors when making treatment decisions in people with food insecurity and seek local resources that might help patients with diabetes and their family members obtain nutritious food more regularly (94).

**Homelessness and Housing Insecurity**

Homelessness/housing insecurity often accompanies many additional barriers to diabetes self-management, including food insecurity, literacy and numeracy deficiencies, lack of insurance, cognitive dysfunction, and mental health issues (95). The prevalence of diabetes in the homeless population is estimated to be around 8% (96). Additionally, patients with diabetes who are homeless need secure places to keep their diabetes supplies and refrigerator access to properly store their insulin and take it on a regular schedule. The risk for homelessness can be ascertained using a brief risk assessment tool developed and validated for use among veterans (97). Housing insecurity has also been shown to be directly associated with a person’s ability to maintain their diabetes self-management (98). Given the potential challenges, providers who care for either homeless or housing-insecure individuals should be familiar with resources or have access to social workers who can facilitate stable housing for their patients as a way to improve diabetes care (99).

**Migrant and Seasonal Agricultural Workers**

Migrant and seasonal agricultural workers may have a higher risk of type 2 diabetes than the overall population. While migrant farmworker-specific data are lacking, most agricultural workers in the U.S. are Latino, a population with a high rate of type 2 diabetes. In addition, living in severe poverty brings with it food insecurity, high chronic stress, and increased risk of diabetes; there is also an association between the use of certain pesticides and the incidence of diabetes (100).

Data from the Department of Labor indicate that there are 2.5–3 million agricultural workers in the U.S. These agricultural workers travel throughout the country, serving as the backbone for a multibillion-dollar agricultural industry. According to 2018 health center data, 174 health centers across the U.S. reported that they provided health care services to 579,806 adult agricultural patients, and 78,332 had encounters for diabetes (13.5%) (101). Migrant farmworkers encounter numerous and overlapping barriers to receiving care. Migration, which may occur as frequently as every few weeks for farmworkers, disrupts care. In addition, cultural and linguistic barriers, lack of transportation and money, lack of available work hours, unfamiliarity with new communities, lack of access to resources, and other barriers prevent migrant farmworkers from accessing health care. Without regular care, those with diabetes may suffer severe and often expensive complications that affect quality of life.

Health care providers should be attuned to the working and living conditions of all patients. For example, if a migrant farmworker with diabetes presents for care, appropriate referrals should be initiated to social workers and community resources, as available, to assist with removing barriers to care.

**Language Barriers**

Providers who care for non–English speakers should develop or offer educational programs and materials in multiple languages with the specific goals of preventing diabetes and building diabetes awareness in people who cannot easily read or write in English. The National Standards for Culturally and Linguistically Appropriate Services in Health and Health Care (National CLAS Standards) provide guidance on how health care providers can reduce language barriers by improving their cultural competency, addressing health literacy, and ensuring communication with language assistance (102). In addition, the National CLAS Standards website (https://thinkculturalhealth.hhs.gov) offers several resources and materials that can be used to improve the quality of care delivery to non–English-speaking patients (102).

**Health Literacy and Numeracy**

Health literacy is defined as the degree to which individuals have the capacity to obtain, process, and understand basic health information and services needed to make appropriate decisions (67). Health literacy is strongly associated with patients being able to engage in complex disease management and self-care (103). Approximately 80 million adults in the U.S. are estimated to have limited or low health literacy (68). Clinicians and diabetes care and education specialists should ensure they provide easy-to-understand information and reduce unnecessary complexity when developing care plans with patients. Interventions addressing low health literacy in populations with diabetes seem effective in improving diabetes outcomes, including ones focusing primarily on patient education, self-care training,
or disease management. Combining easily adapted materials with formal diabetes education demonstrates effectiveness on clinical and behavioral outcomes in populations with low literacy (104). However, evidence supporting these strategies is largely limited to observational studies, and more research is needed to investigate the most effective strategies for enhancing both acquisition and retention of diabetes knowledge, as well as to examine different media and strategies for delivering interventions to patients (37).

Health numeracy is also important in diabetes prevention and management. Health numeracy requires primary numeric skills, applied health numeracy, and interpretive health numeracy. There is also an emotional component that affects a person’s ability to understand concepts of risk, probability, and communication of scientific evidence (105). People with prediabetes or diabetes often need to perform numeric tasks such as interpreting food labels and blood glucose levels to make treatment decisions such as medication dosing. Thus, both health literacy and numeracy are necessary for enabling effective communication between patient and provider, arriving at a treatment regimen, and making diabetes self-management task decisions. If patients appear not to understand concepts associated with treatment decisions, both can be assessed using standardized screening measures (106). Adjunctive education and support may be indicated if limited health literacy and numeracy are barriers to optimal care decisions (28).

**Social Capital/Community Support**

Social capital, which comprises community and personal network instrumental support, promotes better health, whereas lack of social support is associated with poorer health outcomes in individuals with diabetes (80). Of particular concern are the SDOH including racism and discrimination, which are likely to be lifelong (107). These factors are rarely addressed in routine treatment or disease management but may drive underlying causes of nonadherence to regimen behaviors and medication use. Identification or development of community resources to support healthy lifestyles is a core element of the CCM (9) with particular need to incorporate relevant social support networks. There is currently a paucity of evidence regarding enhancement of these resources for those most likely to benefit from such intervention strategies.

Health care community linkages are receiving increasing attention from the American Medical Association, the Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality, and others as a means of promoting translation of clinical recommendations for diet and physical activity in real-world settings (108). Community health workers (CHWs) (109), peer supporters (110–112), and lay leaders (113) may assist in the delivery of DSMES services (82,114), particularly in underserved communities. A CHW is defined by the American Public Health Association as a “frontline public health worker who is a trusted member of and/or has an unusually close understanding of the community served” (115). CHWs can be part of a cost-effective, evidence-based strategy to improve the management of diabetes and cardiovascular risk factors in underserved communities and health care systems (116). The CHW scope of practice in areas such as outreach and communication, advocacy, social support, basic health education, referrals to community clinics, etc., has been successful in providing social and primary preventive services to underserved populations in rural and hard-to-reach communities. Even though CHWs’ core competencies are not clinical in nature, in some circumstances clinicians may delegate limited clinical tasks to CHWs. If such is the case, these tasks must always be performed under the direction and supervision of the delegating health professional and following state health care laws and statutes (117).

**References**

20. Jaffe MG, Lee GA, Young JD, Sidney S, Go AS. Improved blood pressure control associated
with a large-scale hypertension program. JAMA 2013;310:699–705.
84. Piette JD, Heisler M, Wagner TH. Cost-related medication underuse among chronically ill adults: the treatments people forgo, how often, and who is at risk. Am J Public Health 2004;94:1782–1787
111. Long JA, Jahnle EC, Richardson DM, Loewenstein G, Volpp KG. Peer mentoring and


2. Classification and Diagnosis of Diabetes: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2022

The American Diabetes Association (ADA) “Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes” includes the ADA’s current clinical practice recommendations and is intended to provide the components of diabetes care, general treatment goals and guidelines, and tools to evaluate quality of care. Members of the ADA Professional Practice Committee, a multidisciplinary expert committee (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SPPC), are responsible for updating the Standards of Care annually, or more frequently as warranted. For a detailed description of ADA standards, statements, and reports, as well as the evidence-grading system for ADA’s clinical practice recommendations, please refer to the Standards of Care Introduction (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SINT). Readers who wish to comment on the Standards of Care are invited to do so at professional.diabetes.org/SOC.

CLASSIFICATION

Diabetes can be classified into the following general categories:

1. Type 1 diabetes (due to autoimmune β-cell destruction, usually leading to absolute insulin deficiency, including latent autoimmune diabetes of adulthood)
2. Type 2 diabetes (due to a progressive loss of adequate β-cell insulin secretion frequently on the background of insulin resistance)
3. Specific types of diabetes due to other causes, e.g., monogenic diabetes syndromes (such as neonatal diabetes and maturity-onset diabetes of the young), diseases of the exocrine pancreas (such as cystic fibrosis and pancreatitis), and drug- or chemical-induced diabetes (such as with glucocorticoid use, in the treatment of HIV/AIDS, or after organ transplantation)
4. Gestational diabetes mellitus (diabetes diagnosed in the second or third trimester of pregnancy that was not clearly overt diabetes prior to gestation)

This section reviews most common forms of diabetes but is not comprehensive. For additional information, see the American Diabetes Association (ADA) position statement “Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus” (1).

Type 1 diabetes and type 2 diabetes are heterogeneous diseases in which clinical presentation and disease progression may vary considerably. Classification is important for determining therapy, but some individuals cannot be clearly classified as having type 1 or type 2 diabetes at the time of diagnosis. The traditional paradigms of type 2 diabetes occurring only in adults and type 1 diabetes only in children are no longer accurate, as both diseases occur in both age-groups. Children with type 1 diabetes often present with the hallmark symptoms of polyuria/polydipsia, and
approximately half present with diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) (2–4). The onset of type 1 diabetes may be more variable in adults; they may not present with the classic symptoms seen in children and may experience temporary remission from the need for insulin (5–7). The features most useful in discrimination of type 1 diabetes include younger age at diagnosis (<35 years) with lower BMI (<25 kg/m²), unintentional weight loss, ketoacidosis, and glucose >360 mg/dL (20 mmol/L) at presentation (8). Occasionally, patients with type 2 diabetes may present with DKA (9,10), particularly ethnic and racial minorities (11). It is important for the provider to realize that classification of diabetes type is not always straightforward at presentation and that misdiagnosis is common (e.g., adults with type 1 diabetes misdiagnosed as having type 2 diabetes; individuals with maturity-onset diabetes of the young [MODY] misdiagnosed as having type 1 diabetes, etc.). Although difficulties in distinguishing diabetes type may occur in all age-groups at onset, the diagnosis becomes more obvious over time in people with β-cell deficiency.

In both type 1 and type 2 diabetes, various genetic and environmental factors can result in the progressive loss of β-cell mass and/or function that manifests clinically as hyperglycemia. Once hyperglycemia occurs, people with all forms of diabetes are at risk for developing the same chronic complications, although rates of progression may differ. The identification of individualized therapies for diabetes in the future will be informed by better characterization of the many paths to β-cell demise or dysfunction (12). Across the globe many groups are working on combining clinical, pathophysiological, and genetic characteristics to more precisely define the subsets of diabetes that are currently clustered into the type 1 diabetes versus type 2 diabetes nomenclature with the goal of optimizing personalized treatment approaches. Many of these studies show great promise and may soon be incorporated into the diabetes classification system (13).

Characterization of the underlying pathophysiology is more precisely developed in type 1 diabetes than in type 2 diabetes. It is now clear from prospective studies that the persistent presence of two or more islet autoantibodies is a near certain predictor of clinical diabetes (14). The rate of progression is dependent on the age at first detection of autoantibody, number of autoantibodies, autoantibody specificity, and autoantibody titer. Glucose and A1C levels rise well before the clinical onset of diabetes, making diagnosis feasible well before the onset of DKA. Three distinct stages of type 1 diabetes can be identified (Table 2.1) and serve as a framework for future research and regulatory decision-making (12,15). There is debate as to whether slowly progressive autoimmune diabetes with an adult onset should be termed latent autoimmune diabetes in adults (LADA) or type 1 diabetes. The clinical priority with detection of LADA is awareness that slow autoimmune β-cell destruction can occur in adults leading to a long duration of marginal insulin secretory capacity. For the purpose of this classification, all forms of diabetes mediated by autoimmune β-cell destruction are included under the rubric of type 1 diabetes. Use of the term LADA is common and acceptable in clinical practice and has the practical impact of heightening awareness of a population of adults likely to have progressive autoimmune β-cell destruction (16), thus accelerating insulin initiation prior to deterioration of glucose control or development of DKA (6,17).

The paths to β-cell demise and dysfunction are less well defined in type 2 diabetes, but deficient β-cell insulin secretion, frequently in the setting of insulin resistance, appears to be the common denominator. Type 2 diabetes is associated with insulin secretory defects related to genetics, inflammation, and metabolic stress. Future classification schemes for diabetes will likely focus on the pathophysiology of the underlying β-cell dysfunction (12,13,18–20).

### Diagnostic Tests for Diabetes

Diabetes may be diagnosed based on plasma glucose criteria, either the fasting plasma glucose (FPG) value or the 2-h plasma glucose (2-h PG) value during a 75-g oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT), or A1C criteria (21) (Table 2.2).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage 1</th>
<th>Stage 2</th>
<th>Stage 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Characteristics</td>
<td>Autoimmunity</td>
<td>Autoimmunity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Normoglycemia</td>
<td>Dysglycemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Presymptomatic</td>
<td>Presymptomatic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagnostic criteria</td>
<td>Multiple islet autoantibodies</td>
<td>Islet autoantibodies (usually multiple)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No IGT or IFG</td>
<td>Dysglycemia: IFG and/or IGT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>FPG 100–125 mg/dL (5.6–6.9 mmol/L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2-h PG 140–199 mg/dL (7.8–11.0 mmol/L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>A1C 5.7–6.4% (39–47 mmol/mol) or ≥10% increase in A1C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FPG, fasting plasma glucose; IFG, impaired fasting glucose; IGT, impaired glucose tolerance; 2-h PG, 2-h plasma glucose.
seemingly low-risk individuals who happen to have glucose testing, in individuals screened based on diabetes risk assessment, and in symptomatic patients. For additional details on the evidence used to establish the criteria for the diagnosis of diabetes, prediabetes and abnormal glucose tolerance (OGT, IGT), see the ADA position statement “Diagnosis and Classification of Diabetes Mellitus” (1) and other reports (21,25,26).

### Fasting and 2-Hour Plasma Glucose

The FPG and 2-h PG may be used to diagnose diabetes (Table 2.2). The concordance between the FPG and 2-h PG tests is imperfect, as is the concordance between A1C and either glucose-based test. Compared with FPG and A1C cut points, the 2-h PG value diagnoses more people with prediabetes and diabetes (27). In people in whom there is discordance between A1C values and glucose values, FPG and 2-h PG are more accurate (28).

### Table 2.2—Criteria for the diagnosis of diabetes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FPG ≥126 mg/dL (7.0 mmol/L)</th>
<th>Fasting is defined as no caloric intake for at least 8 h.*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-h PG ≥200 mg/dL (11.1 mmol/L) during OGTT</td>
<td>The test should be performed as described by WHO, using a glucose load containing the equivalent of 75 g anhydrous glucose dissolved in water.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1C ≥6.5% (48 mmol/mol)</td>
<td>The test should be performed in a laboratory using a method that is NGSP certified and standardized to the DCCT assay.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a patient with classic symptoms of hyperglycemia or hyperglycemic crisis, a random plasma glucose ≥200 mg/dL (11.1 mmol/L).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DCCT, Diabetes Control and Complications Trial; FPG, fasting plasma glucose; OGTT, oral glucose tolerance test; WHO, World Health Organization; 2-h PG, 2-h plasma glucose. *In the absence of unequivocal hyperglycemia, diagnosis requires two abnormal test results from the same sample or in two separate test samples.

### A1C

#### Recommendations

**2.1** To avoid misdiagnosis or missed diagnosis, the A1C test should be performed using a method that is certified by the NGSP and standardized to the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT) assay.

**2.2** Marked discordance between measured A1C and plasma glucose levels should raise the possibility of A1C assay interference and consideration of using an assay without interference or plasma blood glucose criteria to diagnose diabetes.

#### 2.3

In conditions associated with an altered relationship between A1C and glycemia, such as hemoglobinopathies including sickle cell disease, pregnancy (second and third trimesters and the postpartum period), glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, HIV, hemodialysis, recent blood loss or transfusion, or erythropoietin therapy, only plasma blood glucose criteria should be used to diagnose diabetes. (See other conditions altering the relationship of A1C and glycemia below for more information.)

#### 2.4

Adequate carbohydrate intake (at least 150 g/day) should be assured for 3 days prior to oral glucose tolerance testing as a screen for diabetes.

The A1C test should be performed using a method that is certified by the NGSP (www.ngsp.org) and standardized or traceable to the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT) reference assay. Point-of-care A1C assays may be NGSP certified and cleared by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for use in monitoring glycemic control in people with diabetes in both Clinical Laboratory Improvement Amendments (CLIA)-regulated and CLIA-waived settings. Point-of-care A1C assays have not been prospectively studied for the diagnosis of diabetes and are not recommended for diabetes diagnosis; if used, they should be confirmed with a validated measure. In the U.S., point-of-care A1C is a laboratory test that limits CLIA regulation. As discussed in Section 6, “Glycemic Targets” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S006), point-of-care A1C assays may be more generally applied for assessment of glycemic control in the clinic.

A1C has several advantages compared with FPG and OGTT, including greater convenience (fasting not required), greater preanalytical stability, and less day-to-day perturbations during stress, changes in diet, or illness. However, these advantages may be offset by the lower sensitivity of A1C at the designated cut point, greater cost, limited availability of A1C testing in certain regions of the developing world, and the imperfect correlation between A1C and average glucose in certain individuals. The A1C test, with a diagnostic threshold of ≥6.5% (48 mmol/mol), diagnoses only 30% of the diabetes cases identified collectively using A1C, FPG, or 2-h PG, according to National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES) data (29). Despite these limitations with A1C, in 2009 the International Expert Committee added A1C to the diagnostic criteria with the goal of increased screening (21).

When using A1C to diagnose diabetes, it is important to recognize that A1C is an indirect measure of average blood glucose levels and to take other factors into consideration that may impact hemoglobin glycation independently of glycemia, such as hemodialysis, pregnancy, HIV treatment (30,31), age, race/ethnicity, genetic background, and anemia/hemoglobinopathies. (See other conditions altering the relationship of A1C and glycemia below for more information.)

#### Age

The epidemiologic studies that formed the basis for recommending A1C to diagnose diabetes included only adult populations (29). However, recent ADA
clinical guidance concluded that A1C, FPG, or 2-h PG can be used to test for prediabetes or type 2 diabetes in children and adolescents (see SCREENING AND TESTING FOR PREDIABETES AND TYPE 2 DIABETES IN CHILDREN AND ADOLESCENTS below for additional information) (32).

Race/Ethnicity/Hemoglobinopathies
Hemoglobin variants can interfere with the measurement of A1C, although most assays in use in the U.S. are unaffected by the most common variants. Marked discrepancies between measured A1C and plasma glucose levels should prompt consideration that the A1C assay may not be reliable for that individual. For patients with a hemoglobin variant but normal red blood cell turnover, such as those with the sickle cell trait, an A1C assay without interference from hemoglobin variants should be used. An updated list of A1C assays with interferences is available at www.ngsp.org/interf.asp.

African Americans heterozygous for the common hemoglobin variant HbS may have, for any given level of mean glycemia, lower A1C by about 0.3% compared with those without the trait (33). Another genetic variant, X-linked glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase G202A, carried by 11% of African Americans, was associated with a decrease in A1C of about 0.8% in homozygous men and 0.7% in homozygous women compared with those without the variant (34). For example, in Tanzania, where there is a high likelihood of hemoglobinopathies in people with HIV, A1C may be lower than expected based on glucose, limiting its usefulness for screening (35).

Even in the absence of hemoglobin variants, A1C levels may vary with race/ethnicity independently of glycemia (36–38). For example, African Americans may have higher A1C levels than non-Hispanic Whites with similar fasting and postglucose load glucose levels (39). Though conflicting data exists, African Americans may also have higher levels of fructosamine and glycated albumin and lower levels of 1,5-anhydroglucitol, suggesting that their glycemic burden (particularly postprandially) may be higher (40,41). Similarly, A1C levels may be higher for a given mean glucose concentration when measured with continuous glucose monitoring (42). A recent report in Afro-Caribbean people demonstrated a lower A1C than predicted by glucose levels (43). Despite these and other reported differences, the association of A1C with risk for complications appears to be similar in African Americans and non-Hispanic Whites (44,45). In the Taiwanese population, age and sex have been reported to be associated with increased A1C in men (46); the clinical implications of this finding are unclear at this time.

Other Conditions Altering the Relationship of A1C and Glycemia
In conditions associated with increased red blood cell turnover, such as sickle cell disease, pregnancy (second and third trimesters), glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency (47,48), hemodialysis, recent blood loss or transfusion, or erythropoietin therapy, only plasma blood glucose criteria should be used to diagnose diabetes (49). A1C is less reliable than blood glucose measurement in other conditions such as the postpartum state (50–52), HIV treated with certain protease inhibitors (PIs) and nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs) (30), and iron-deficient anemia (53).

Confirming the Diagnosis
Unless there is a clear clinical diagnosis (e.g., patient in a hyperglycemic crisis or with classic symptoms of hyperglycemia and a random plasma glucose ≥200 mg/dL [11.1 mmol/L]), diagnosis requires two abnormal screening test results, either from the same sample (54) or in two separate test samples. If using two separate test samples, it is recommended that the second test, which may either be a repeat of the initial test or a different test, be performed without delay. For example, if the A1C is 7.0% (53 mmol/mol) and a repeat result is 6.8% (51 mmol/mol), the diagnosis of diabetes is confirmed. If two different tests (such as A1C and FPG) are both above the diagnostic threshold when analyzed from the same sample or in two different test samples, this also confirms the diagnosis. On the other hand, if a patient has discordant results from two different tests, then the test result that is above the diagnostic cut point should be repeated, with careful consideration of the possibility of A1C assay interference. The diagnosis is made on the basis of the confirmatory screening test. For example, if a patient meets the diabetes criterion of the A1C (two results ≥6.5% [48 mmol/mol]) but not FPG (<126 mg/dL [7.0 mmol/L]), that person should nevertheless be considered to have diabetes.

Each of the screening tests has preanalytic and analytic variability, so it is possible that a test yielding an abnormal result (i.e., above the diagnostic threshold), when repeated, will produce a value below the diagnostic cut point. This scenario is likely for FPG and 2-h PG if the glucose samples remain at room temperature and are not centrifuged promptly. Because of the potential for preanalytic variability, it is critical that samples for plasma glucose be spun and separated immediately after they are drawn. If patients have test results near the margins of the diagnostic threshold, the health care professional should discuss signs and symptoms with the patient and repeat the test in 3–6 months.

People should consume a mixed diet with at least 150 g of carbohydrate on the 3 days prior to oral glucose tolerance testing (55–57). Fasting and carbohyd late restriction can falsely elevate glucose level with an oral glucose challenge.

Diagnosis
In a patient with classic symptoms, measurement of plasma glucose is sufficient to diagnose diabetes (symptoms of hyperglycemia or hyperglycemic crisis plus a random plasma glucose ≥200 mg/dL [11.1 mmol/L]). In these cases, knowing the plasma glucose level is critical because, in addition to confirming that symptoms are due to diabetes, it will inform management decisions. Some providers may also want to know the A1C to determine the chronicity of the hyperglycemia. The criteria to diagnose diabetes are listed in Table 2.2.

TYPE 1 DIABETES

Recommendations
2.5 Screening for presymptomatic type 1 diabetes using screening tests that detect autoantibodies to insulin, glutamic acid decarboxylase (GAD), islet antigen 2, or zinc transporter
Immune-Mediated Diabetes

This form, previously called “insulin-dependent diabetes” or “juvenile-onset diabetes,” accounts for 5–10% of diabetes and is due to cellular-mediated autoimmune destruction of the pancreatic β-cells. Autoimmune markers include islet cell autoantibodies and autoantibodies to GAD (glutamic acid decarboxylase, GAD65), insulin, the tyrosine phosphatases islet antigen 2 (IA-2) and IA-2β, and zinc transporter 8. Numerous clinical studies are being conducted to test various methods of preventing type 1 diabetes in those with evidence of islet autoimmunity (www.clinicaltrials.gov and www.trialnet.org/our-research/prevention-studies) (14,17,58–61). Stage 1 of type 1 diabetes is defined by the presence of two or more of these autoimmune markers. The disease has strong HLA associations, with linkage to the DQB1 and DRB1 haplotypes, and genetic screening has been used in some research studies to identify high risk populations. Specific alleles in these genes can be either predisposing or protective (Table 2.1).

The rate of β-cell destruction is quite variable, being rapid in some individuals (particularly but not exclusively in infants and children) and slow in others (mainly but not exclusively adults) (62,63). Children and adolescents often present with DKA as the first manifestation of the disease, and the rates in the U.S. have increased dramatically over the past 20 years (2–4). Others have modest fasting hyperglycemia that can rapidly change to severe hyperglycemia and/or DKA with infection or other stress. Adults may retain sufficient β-cell function to prevent DKA for many years; such individuals may have remission or decreased insulin needs for months or years and eventually become dependent on insulin for survival and are at risk for DKA (5–7,64,65). At this latter stage of the disease, there is little or no insulin secretion, as manifested by low or undetectable levels of plasma C-peptide. Immune-mediated diabetes is the most common form of diabetes in childhood and adolescence, but it can occur at any age, even in the 8th and 9th decades of life.

Autoimmune destruction of β-cells has multiple genetic factors and is also related to environmental factors that are still poorly defined. Although patients do not typically have obesity when they present with type 1 diabetes, obesity is increasingly common in the general population; as such, obesity should not preclude testing for type 1 diabetes. People with type 1 diabetes are also prone to other autoimmune disorders such as Hashimoto thyroiditis, Graves disease, celiac disease, Addison disease, vitiligo, autoimmune hepatitis, myasthenia gravis, and pernicious anemia (see Section 4, “Comp-rehensive Medical Evaluation and Assessment of Comorbidities,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S004). Type 1 diabetes can be associated with monogenic polyglucandular autoimmune syndromes including immune dysregulation, polyendocrinopathy, enteropathy, and X-linked (IPEX) syndrome, which is an early-onset systemic autoimmune genetic disorder caused by mutation of the forhead box protein 3 (FOXP3) gene, and another caused by the autoimmune regulator (AIRE) gene mutation (66,67). As indicated by the names, these disorders are associated with other autoimmunity and rheumatological diseases.

Introduction of immunotherapy, specifically checkpoint inhibitors, for cancer treatment has led to unexpected adverse events including immune system activation precipitating autoimmune disease. Fulminant onset of type 1 diabetes can develop, with DKA and low or undetectable levels of C-peptide as a marker of endogenous β-cell function (68,69). Fewer than half of these patients have autoantibodies that are seen in type 1 diabetes, supporting alternate pathobiology. This immune-related adverse event occurs in just under 1% of checkpoint inhibitor–treated patients but most commonly occurs with agents that block the programmed cell death protein 1/programmed cell death ligand 1 pathway alone or in combination with other checkpoint inhibitors (70). To date, risk cannot be predicted by family history or autoantibodies, so all providers administering these medications should be mindful of this adverse effect and educate patients appropriately.

Idiopathic Type 1 Diabetes

Some forms of type 1 diabetes have no known etiologies. These patients have permanent insulinopenia and are prone to DKA but have no evidence of β-cell autoimmunity. However, only a minority of patients with type 1 diabetes fall into this category. Individuals with autoantibody-negative type 1 diabetes of African or Asian ancestry may suffer from episodic DKA and exhibit varying degrees of insulin deficiency between episodes (possibly ketosis-prone diabetes [71]). This form of diabetes is strongly inherited and is not HLA associated. An absolute requirement for insulin replacement therapy in affected patients may be intermittent. Future research is needed to determine the cause of β-cell destruction in this rare clinical scenario.

Screening for Type 1 Diabetes Risk

The incidence and prevalence of type 1 diabetes are increasing (72). Patients with type 1 diabetes often present with acute symptoms of diabetes and markedly elevated blood glucose levels, and 40–60% are diagnosed with life-threatening DKA (2–4). Multiple studies indicate that measuring islet autoantibodies in relatives of those with type 1 diabetes (15) or in children from the general population (73,74) can effectively identify those who will develop type 1 diabetes. A study reported the risk of progression to type 1 diabetes from the time of seroconversion to autoantibody positivity in three pediatric cohorts from Finland, Germany, and the U.S. Of the 585 children who developed more than two autoantibodies, nearly 70% developed type 1 diabetes within 10 years and 84% within 15 years (14). These findings are highly significant because while the German group was recruited from offspring of parents with type 1 diabetes, the Finnish and American groups were recruited from the general population. Remarkably, the findings in all three groups were the same, suggesting that the same sequence of events led to
clinical disease in both “sporadic” and familial cases of type 1 diabetes. Indeed, the risk of type 1 diabetes increases as the number of relevant autoantibodies detected increases (60,75,76). In The Environmental Determinants of Diabetes in the Young (TEDDY) study, type 1 diabetes developed in 21% of 363 subjects with at least one autoantibody at 3 years of age (77). Such testing, coupled with education about diabetes symptoms and close follow-up, has been shown to enable earlier diagnosis and prevent DKA (78,79).

While widespread clinical screening of asymptomatic low-risk individuals is not currently recommended due to lack of approved therapeutic interventions, several innovative research screening programs are available in Europe (e.g., Fr1da, www.gppad.org) and the U.S. (www.trialnet.org, www.askhealth.org). Participation should be encouraged to accelerate development of evidence-based clinical guidelines for the general population and relatives of those with type 1 diabetes. Individuals who test positive should be counseled about the risk of developing diabetes, diabetes symptoms, and DKA prevention. Numerous clinical studies are being conducted to test various methods of preventing and treating stage 2 type 1 diabetes in those with evidence of autoimmunity with promising results (see www.clinicaltrials.gov and www.trialnet.org). Delay of overt diabetes development in stage 2 type 1 diabetes with the anti-CD3 antibody teplizumab in relatives at risk for type 1 diabetes was reported in 2019, with an extension of the randomized controlled trial in 2021 (80,81). Based on these data, this agent has been submitted to the FDA for the indication of delay or prevention of clinical type 1 diabetes in at-risk individuals. Neither this agent nor others in this category are currently available for clinical use.

**PREDIABETES AND TYPE 2 DIABETES**

**Recommendations**

**2.7** Screening for prediabetes and type 2 diabetes with an informal assessment of risk factors or validated risk calculator should be done in asymptomatic adults. B

**2.8** Testing for prediabetes and/or type 2 diabetes in asymptomatic people should be considered in adults of any age with overweight or obesity (BMI ≥25 kg/m² or ≥23 kg/m² in Asian Americans) who have one or more risk factors (Table 2.3). B

**2.9** For all people, screening should begin at age 35 years. B

**2.10** If tests are normal, repeat screening recommended at a minimum of 3-year intervals is reasonable, sooner with symptoms or change in risk (i.e., weight gain). C

**2.11** To screen for prediabetes and type 2 diabetes, fasting plasma glucose, 2-h plasma glucose during 75-g oral glucose tolerance test, and A1C are each appropriate (Table 2.2 and Table 2.5). B

**2.12** When using oral glucose tolerance testing as a screen for diabetes, adequate carbohydrate intake (at least 150 g/day) should be assured for 3 days prior to testing. A

**2.13** In people with prediabetes and type 2 diabetes, identify and treat cardiovascular disease risk factors. A

**2.14** Risk-based screening for prediabetes and/or type 2 diabetes should be considered after the onset of puberty or after 10 years of age, whichever occurs earlier, in children and adolescents with overweight (BMI ≥85th percentile) or obesity (BMI ≥95th percentile) and who have one or more risk factor for diabetes. (See Table 2.4 for evidence grading of risk factors.) B

**2.15** People with HIV should be screened for diabetes and prediabetes with a fasting glucose test before starting antiretroviral therapy, at the time of switching antiretroviral therapy, and 3–6 months after starting or switching antiretroviral therapy. If initial screening results are normal, fasting glucose should be checked annually. E

**Prediabetes**

“Prediabetes” is the term used for individuals whose glucose levels do not meet the criteria for diabetes yet have abnormal carbohydrate metabolism (44,45). People with prediabetes are defined by the presence of IFG and/or

**Table 2.3—Criteria for screening for diabetes or prediabetes in asymptomatic adults**

1. Testing should be considered in adults with overweight or obesity (BMI ≥25 kg/m² or ≥23 kg/m² in Asian Americans) who have one or more of the following risk factors:
   - First-degree relative with diabetes
   - High-risk race/ethnicity (e.g., African American, Latino, Native American, Asian American, Pacific Islander)
   - History of CVD
   - Hypertension (≥140/90 mmHg or on therapy for hypertension)
   - HDL cholesterol level <35 mg/dL (0.90 mmol/L) and/or a triglyceride level >250 mg/dL (2.82 mmol/L)
   - Women with polycystic ovary syndrome
   - Physical inactivity
   - Other clinical conditions associated with insulin resistance (e.g., severe obesity, acanthosis nigricans)

2. Patients with prediabetes (A1C ≥5.7% [39 mmol/mol], IGT, or IFG) should be tested yearly.

3. Women who were diagnosed with GDM should have lifelong testing at least every 3 years.

4. For all other patients, testing should begin at age 35 years.

5. If results are normal, testing should be repeated at a minimum of 3-year intervals, with consideration of more frequent testing depending on initial results and risk status.

6. People with HIV

CVD, cardiovascular disease; GDM, gestational diabetes mellitus; IFG, impaired fasting glucose; IGT, impaired glucose tolerance.
Table 2.4—Risk-based screening for type 2 diabetes or prediabetes in asymptomatic children and adolescents in a clinical setting (254)

Screening should be considered in youth* who have overweight (≥85th percentile) or obesity (≥95th percentile) A and who have one or more additional risk factors based on the strength of their association with diabetes:
- Maternal history of diabetes or GDM during the child’s gestation A
- Family history of type 2 diabetes in first- or second-degree relative A
- Race/ethnicity (Native American, African American, Latino, Asian American, Pacific Islander) A
- Signs of insulin resistance or conditions associated with insulin resistance (acanthosis nigricans, hypertension, dyslipidemia, polycystic ovary syndrome, or small-for-gestational-age birth weight) B

GDM, gestational diabetes mellitus. *After the onset of puberty or after 10 years of age, whichever occurs earlier. If tests are normal, repeat testing at a minimum of 3-year intervals (or more frequently if BMI is increasing or risk factor profile deteriorating) is recommended. Reports of type 2 diabetes before age 10 years exist, and this can be considered with numerous risk factors.

IGT and/or A1C 5.7–6.4% (39–47 mmol/mol) (Table 2.5). Prediabetes should not be viewed as a clinical entity in its own right, but rather as risk factor for progression to diabetes and cardiovascular disease (CVD). Criteria for screening for diabetes or prediabetes in asymptomatic adults are outlined in Table 2.3. Prediabetes is associated with obesity (especially abdominal or visceral obesity), dyslipidemia with high triglycerides and/or low HDL cholesterol, and hypertension. The presence of prediabetes should prompt comprehensive screening for cardiovascular risk factors.

Diagnosis

IGF is defined as FPG levels from 100 to 125 mg/dL (from 5.6 to 6.9 mmol/L) (82,83) and IGT as 2-h PG levels during 75-g OGTT from 140 to 199 mg/dL (from 7.8 to 11.0 mmol/L) (25). It should be noted that the World Health Organization and numerous other diabetes organizations define the IFG lower limit at 110 mg/dL (6.1 mmol/L).

As with the glucose measures, several prospective studies that used A1C to predict the progression to diabetes as defined by A1C criteria demonstrated a strong, continuous association between A1C and subsequent diabetes. In a systematic review of 44,203 individuals from 16 cohort studies with a follow-up interval averaging 5.6 years (range 2.8–12 years), those with A1C between 5.5% and 6.0% (between 37 and 42 mmol/mol) had a substantially increased risk of diabetes (5-year incidence from 9% to 25%). Those with an A1C range of 6.0–6.5% (42–48 mmol/mol) had a 5-year risk of developing diabetes between 25% and 50% and a relative risk 20 times higher compared with A1C of 5.0% (31 mmol/mol) (84). In a community-based study of African American and non-Hispanic White adults without diabetes, baseline A1C was a stronger predictor of subsequent diabetes and cardiovascular events than fasting glucose (85). Other analyses suggest that A1C of 5.7% (39 mmol/mol) or higher is associated with a diabetes risk similar to that of the high-risk participants in the Diabetes Prevention Program (DPP) (86), and A1C at baseline was a strong predictor of the development of glucose-defined diabetes during the DPP and its follow-up (87).

Hence, it is reasonable to consider an A1C range of 5.7–6.4% (39–47 mmol/mol) as identifying individuals with prediabetes. Similar to those with IGF and/or IGT, individuals with A1C of 5.7–6.4% (39–47 mmol/mol) should be informed of their increased risk for diabetes and CVD and counseled about effective strategies to lower their risks (see Section 3, “Prevention or Delay of Type 2 Diabetes and Associated Comorbidities,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S003). Similar to glucose measurements, the continuum of risk is curvilinear, so as A1C rises, the diabetes risk rises disproportionately (84). Aggressive interventions and vigilant follow-up should be pursued for those considered at very high risk (e.g., those with A1C >6.0% (42 mmol/mol)).

Table 2.5 summarizes the categories of prediabetes and Table 2.3 the criteria for screening for prediabetes. The ADA diabetes risk test is an additional option for assessment to determine the appropriateness of screening for diabetes or prediabetes in asymptomatic adults (Fig. 2.1) (diabetes.org/socrisktest). For additional background regarding risk factors and screening for prediabetes, see SCREENING AND TESTING FOR PREDIABETES AND TYPE 2 DIABETES IN ASYMPTOMATIC ADULTS and also SCREENING AND TESTING FOR PREDIABETES AND TYPE 2 DIABETES IN CHILDREN AND ADOLESCENTS below. For details regarding individuals with prediabetes most likely to benefit from a formal behavioral or lifestyle intervention, see Section 3, “Prevention or Delay of Type 2 Diabetes and Associated Comorbidities” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S003).

**Type 2 Diabetes**

Type 2 diabetes, previously referred to as “noninsulin-dependent diabetes” or “adult-onset diabetes,” accounts for 90–95% of all diabetes. This form encompasses individuals who have relative (rather than absolute) insulin deficiency and have peripheral insulin resistance. At least initially, and often throughout their lifetime, these individuals may not need insulin treatment to survive.

There are various causes of type 2 diabetes. Although the specific etiologies are not known, autoimmune destruction of β-cells does not occur, and patients do not have any of the other known causes of diabetes. More,
but not all, patients with type 2 diabetes have overweight or obesity. Excess weight itself causes some degree of insulin resistance. Patients who do not have obesity or overweight by traditional weight criteria may have an increased percentage of body fat distributed predominantly in the abdominal region.

DKA seldom occurs spontaneously in type 2 diabetes; when seen, it usually arises in association with the stress of another illness such as infection, myocardial infarction, or with the use of certain drugs (e.g., corticosteroids, atypical antipsychotics, and sodium–glucose cotransporter 2 inhibitors) (88,89). Type 2 diabetes frequently goes undiagnosed for many years because hyperglycemia develops gradually and, at earlier stages, is often not severe enough for

### Are you at risk for type 2 diabetes?

#### Diabetes Risk Test:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. How old are you?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less than 40 years (0 points)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40–49 years (1 point)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50–59 years (2 points)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 years or older (3 points)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Are you a man or a woman?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Man (1 point)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Woman (0 points)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. If you are a woman, have you ever been diagnosed with gestational diabetes?</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>1 point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes (1 point)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No (0 points)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Do you have a mother, father, sister or brother with diabetes?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes (1 point)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No (0 points)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Have you ever been diagnosed with high blood pressure?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes (1 point)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No (0 points)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Are you physically active?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yes (0 points)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No (1 point)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. What is your weight category?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>See chart at right.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Add up your score: 0 points

#### If you scored 5 or higher:

You are at increased risk for having type 2 diabetes. However, only your doctor can tell for sure if you do have type 2 diabetes or prediabetes, a condition in which blood glucose levels are higher than normal but not yet high enough to be diagnosed as diabetes. Talk to your doctor to see if additional testing is needed.

Type 2 diabetes is more common in African Americans, Hispanics/Latinos, Native Americans, Asian Americans, and Native Hawaiians and Pacific Islanders.

Higher body weight increases diabetes risk for everyone. Asian Americans are at increased diabetes risk at lower body weight than the rest of the general public (about 15 pounds lower).

---

**Lower Your Risk**

The good news is you can manage your risk for type 2 diabetes. Small steps make a big difference in helping you live a longer, healthier life.

If you are at high risk, your first step is to visit your doctor to see if additional testing is needed.

Visit diabetes.org or call 1-800-DIABETES (800-342-2383) for information, tips on getting started, and ideas for simple, small steps you can take to help lower your risk.

---

Learn more at diabetes.org/risktest | 1-800-DIABETES (800-342-2383)
the patient to notice the classic diabetes symptoms caused by hyperglycemia, such as dehydration or unintentional weight loss. Nevertheless, even undiagnosed patients are at increased risk of developing macrovascular and microvascular complications.

Patients with type 2 diabetes may have insulin levels that appear normal or elevated, yet the failure to normalize blood glucose reflects a relative defect in glucose-stimulated insulin secretion. Thus, insulin secretion is defective in these patients and insufficient to compensate for insulin resistance. Insulin resistance may improve with weight reduction, exercise, and/or pharmacologic treatment of hyperglycemia but is seldom restored to normal. Recent interventions with intensive diet and exercise or surgical weight loss have led to diabetes remission (90–96) (see Section 8, “Obesity and Weight Management for the Prevention and Treatment of Type 2 Diabetes,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S008).

The risk of developing type 2 diabetes increases with age, obesity, and lack of physical activity (97,98). It occurs more frequently in women with prior gestational diabetes mellitus (GDM) or polycystic ovary syndrome. It is also more common in people with hypertension or dyslipidemia and in certain racial/ethnic subgroups (African American, Native American, Hispanic/Latino, and Asian American). It is often associated with a strong genetic predisposition or family history in first-degree relatives (more so than type 1 diabetes). However, the genetics of type 2 diabetes are poorly understood and under intense investigation in this era of precision medicine (18). In adults without traditional risk factors for type 2 diabetes and/or of younger age, consider islet autoantibody testing (e.g., GAD65 autoantibodies) to exclude the diagnosis of type 1 diabetes (8).

**Screening and Testing for Prediabetes and Type 2 Diabetes in Asymptomatic Adults**

Screening for prediabetes and type 2 diabetes risk through an informal assessment of risk factors (Table 2.3) or with an assessment tool, such as the ADA risk test (Fig. 2.1) (online at diabetes.org/socrisktest), is recommended to guide providers on whether performing a diagnostic test (Table 2.2) is appropriate. Prediabetes and type 2 diabetes meet criteria for conditions in which early detection via screening is appropriate. Both conditions are common and impose significant clinical and public health burdens. There is often a long pre-symptomatic phase before the diagnosis of type 2 diabetes. Simple tests to detect prediabetes at first CVD events or mortality was not significantly different between the groups (25). The excellent care provided to patients in the routine care group and the lack of an unscreened control arm limited the authors’ ability to determine whether screening and early treatment improved outcomes compared with no screening and later treatment after clinical diagnoses. Computer simulation modeling studies suggest that major benefits are likely to accrue from the early diagnosis and treatment of hyperglycemia and cardiovascular risk factors in type 2 diabetes (108); moreover, screening, beginning at age 30 or 45 years and independent of risk factors, may be cost-effective (<$11,000 per quality-adjusted life year gained—2010 modeling data) (109). Cost-effectiveness of screening has been reinforced in cohort studies (110,111).

Additional considerations regarding testing for type 2 diabetes and prediabetes in asymptomatic patients include the following.

**Age**

Age is a major risk factor for diabetes. Testing should begin at no later than age 35 years for all patients (111a). Screening should be considered in adults of any age with overweight or obesity and one or more risk factors for diabetes.

**BMI and Ethnicity**

In general, BMI ≥ 25 kg/m² is a risk factor for diabetes. However, data suggest that the BMI cut point should be lower...
for the Asian American population (112,113). The BMI cut points fall consistently between 23 and 24 kg/m² (sensitivity of 80%) for nearly all Asian American subgroups (with levels slightly lower for Japanese Americans). This makes a rounded cut point of 23 kg/m² practical. An argument can be made to push the BMI cut point to lower than 23 kg/m² in favor of increased sensitivity; however, this would lead to an unacceptably low specificity (13.1%). Data from the World Health Organization also suggest that a BMI of ≥23 kg/m² should be used to define increased risk in Asian Americans (114). The finding that one-third to one-half of diabetest in Asian Americans is undiagnosed suggests that testing is not occurring at lower BMI thresholds (97,115).

Evidence also suggests that other populations may benefit from lower BMI cut points. For example, in a large multiethnic cohort study, for an equivalent incidence rate of diabetes, a BMI of 30 kg/m² in non-Hispanic Whites was equivalent to a BMI of 26 kg/m² in African Americans (116).

Medications
Certain medications, such as glucocorticoids, thiazide diuretics, some HIV medications (30), and atypical antipsychotics (90), are known to increase the risk of diabetes and should be considered when deciding whether to screen.

HIV
Individuals with HIV are at higher risk for developing prediabetes and diabetes on antiretroviral (ARV) therapies, so a screening protocol is recommended (117). The A1C test may underestimate glycemia in people with HIV; it is not recommended for diagnosis and may present challenges for monitoring (31). In those with prediabetes, weight loss through healthy nutrition and physical activity may reduce the progression toward diabetes. Among patients with HIV and diabetes, preventive health care using an approach used in patients without HIV is critical to reduce the risks of microvascular and macrovascular complications. Diabetes risk is increased with certain PIs and NRTIs. New-onset diabetes is estimated to occur in more than 5% of patients infected with HIV on PIs, whereas more than 15% may have prediabetes (118). PIs are associated with insulin resistance and may also lead to apoptosis of pancreatic β-cells. NRTIs also affect fat distribution (both lipohypertrophy and lipoatrophy), which is associated with insulin resistance. For patients with HIV and ARV-associated hyperglycemia, it may be appropriate to consider discontinuing the problematic ARV agents if safe and effective alternatives are available (119). Before making ARV substitutions, carefully consider the possible effect on HIV virological control and the potential adverse effects of new ARV agents. In some cases, antihyperglycemic agents may still be necessary.

Testing Interval
The appropriate interval between screening tests is not known (120). The rationale for the 3-year interval is that with this interval, the number of false-positive tests that require confirmatory testing will be reduced and individuals with false-negative tests will be retested before substantial time elapses and complications develop (120). In especially high-risk individuals, particularly with weight gain, shorter intervals between screening may be useful.

Community Screening
Ideally, screening should be carried out within a health care setting because of the need for follow-up and treatment. Community screening outside a health care setting is generally not recommended because people with positive tests may not seek, or have access to, appropriate follow-up testing and care. However, in specific situations where an adequate referral system is established beforehand for positive tests, community screening may be considered. Community screening may also be poorly targeted; i.e., it may fail to reach the groups most at risk and inappropriately test those at very low risk or even those who have already been diagnosed (121).

Screening in Dental Practices
Because periodontal disease is associated with diabetes, the utility of screening in a dental setting and referral to primary care as a means to improve the diagnosis of prediabetes and diabetes has been explored (122–124), with one study estimating that 30% of patients ≥30 years of age seen in general dental practices had dysglycemia (124,125). A similar study in 1,150 dental patients ≥40 years old in India reported 20.69% and 14.60% meeting criteria for prediabetes and diabetes, respectively, using random blood glucose. Further research is needed to demonstrate the feasibility, effectiveness, and cost-effectiveness of screening in this setting.

Screening and Testing for Prediabetes and Type 2 Diabetes in Children and Adolescents
In the last decade, the incidence and prevalence of type 2 diabetes in children and adolescents has increased dramatically, especially in racial and ethnic minority populations (72). See Table 2.4 for recommendations on risk-based screening for type 2 diabetes or prediabetes in asymptomatic children and adolescents in a clinical setting (32). See Table 2.2 and Table 2.5 for the criteria for the diagnosis of diabetes and prediabetes, respectively, that apply to children, adolescents, and adults. See Section 14, “Children and Adolescents” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S014) for additional information on type 2 diabetes in children and adolescents.

Some studies question the validity of A1C in the pediatric population, especially among certain ethnicities, and suggest OGTT or FPG as more suitable diagnostic tests (126). However, many of these studies do not recognize that diabetes diagnostic criteria are based on long-term health outcomes, and validations are not currently available in the pediatric population (127). The ADA acknowledges the limited data supporting A1C for diagnosing type 2 diabetes in children and adolescents. Although A1C is not recommended for diagnosis of diabetes in children with cystic fibrosis or symptoms suggestive of acute onset of type 1 diabetes and only A1C assays without interference are appropriate for children with hemoglobinopathies, the ADA continues to recommend A1C and the criteria in Table 2.2 for diagnosis of type 2 diabetes in this cohort to decrease barriers to screening (128,129).
Cystic fibrosis–related diabetes (CFRD) is the most common comorbidity in people with cystic fibrosis, occurring in about 20% of adolescents and 40–50% of adults (130). Diabetes in this population, compared with individuals with type 1 or type 2 diabetes, is associated with worse nutritional status, more severe inflammatory lung disease, and greater mortality. Insulin insufficiency is the primary defect in CFRD. Genetically determined β-cell function and insulin resistance associated with infection and inflammation may also contribute to the development of CFRD. Milder abnormalities of glucose tolerance are even more common and occur at earlier ages than CFRD. Whether individuals with IGT should be treated with insulin to attain individualized glycemic goals is determined.

Beginning 5 years after the diagnosis of cystic fibrosis–related diabetes, annual monitoring for complications of diabetes is recommended.

A1C is not recommended for screening (133). Regardless of age, weight loss or failure of expected weight gain is a risk for CFRD and should prompt screening (131,132). The Cystic Fibrosis Foundation Patient Registry (134) evaluated 3,553 cystic fibrosis patients and diagnosed 445 (13%) with CFRD. Early diagnosis and treatment of CFRD was associated with preservation of lung function. The European Cystic Fibrosis Society Patient Registry reported an increase in CFRD with age (increased 10% per decade), genotype, decreased lung function, and female sex (135,136). Continuous glucose monitoring or HOMA of β-cell function (137) may be more sensitive than OGTT to detect risk for progression to CFRD; however, evidence linking these results to long-term outcomes is lacking, and these tests are not recommended for screening outside of the research setting (138).

CFRD mortality has significantly decreased over time, and the gap in mortality between cystic fibrosis patients with and without diabetes has considerably narrowed (139). There are limited clinical trial data on therapy for CFRD. The largest study compared three regimens: premeal insulin aspart, repaglinide, or oral placebo in cystic fibrosis patients with diabetes or abnormal glucose tolerance. Participants all had weight loss in the year preceding treatment; however, in the insulin-treated group, this pattern was reversed, and patients gained 0.39 (± 0.21) BMI units (P = 0.02). The repaglinide-treated group had initial weight gain, but it was not sustained by 6 months. The placebo group continued to lose weight (139). Insulin remains the most widely used therapy for CFRD (140). The primary rationale for the use of insulin in patients with CFRD is to induce an anabolic state while promoting macronutrient retention and weight gain.

Additional resources for the clinical management of CFRD can be found in the position statement “Clinical Care Guidelines for Cystic Fibrosis–Related Diabetes: A Position Statement of the American Diabetes Association and a Clinical Practice Guideline of the Cystic Fibrosis Foundation, Endorsed by the Pediatric Endocrine Society” (141) and in the International Society for Pediatric and Adolescent Diabetes 2018 clinical practice consensus guidelines (130).

Several terms are used in the literature to describe the presence of diabetes following organ transplantation (142). “New-onset diabetes after transplantation” (NODAT) is one such designation that describes individuals who develop new-onset diabetes following transplant. NODAT excludes patients with pretransplant diabetes that was undiagnosed as well as posttransplant hyperglycemia that resolves by the time of discharge (143). Another term, “posttransplantation diabetes mellitus” (PTDM) (143,144), describes the presence of diabetes in the posttransplant setting irrespective of the timing of diabetes onset.

Hyperglycemia is very common during the early posttransplant period, with ~90% of kidney allograft recipients exhibiting hyperglycemia in the first few weeks following transplant (143–146). In most cases, such stress- or steroid-induced hyperglycemia resolves by the time of discharge (146,147). Although the use of immunosuppressive therapies is a major contributor to the development of PTDM, the risks of transplant rejection outweigh the risks of PTDM and the role of the diabetes care provider is to treat hyperglycemia appropriately regardless of the type of immunosuppression (143). Risk factors for PTDM include both general diabetes
risks (such as age, family history of diabetes, etc.) as well as transplant-specific factors, such as use of immunosuppressant agents (148–150). Whereas post-transplantation hyperglycemia is an important risk factor for subsequent PTDM, a formal diagnosis of PTDM is optimally made once the patient is stable on maintenance immunosuppression and in the absence of acute infection (146–148,151). In a recent study of 152 heart transplant recipients, 38% had PTDM at 1 year. Risk factors for PTDM included elevated BMI, discharge from the hospital on insulin, and glucose values in the 24 h prior to hospital discharge (152). In an Iranian cohort, 19% had PTDM after heart and lung transplant (153). The OGTT is considered the gold-standard test for the diagnosis of PTDM (1 year posttransplant) (143,144,154,155). Pretransplant elevation in hs-CRP was associated with PTDM in the setting of renal transplant (156,157). However, screening patients with fasting glucose and/or A1C can identify high-risk patients requiring further assessment and may reduce the number of overall OGTTs required.

Few randomized controlled studies have reported on the short- and long-term use of antihyperglycemic agents in the setting of PTDM (148,158,159). Most studies have reported that transplant patients with hyperglycemia and PTDM after transplantation have higher rates of rejection, infection, and hospitalization (146,148,160). Insulin therapy is the agent of choice for the management of hyperglycemia, PTDM, and preexisting diabetes and diabetes in the hospital setting. After discharge, patients with preexisting diabetes could go back on their pretransplant regimen if they were in good control before transplantation. Those with previously poor control or with persistent hyperglycemia should continue insulin with frequent home self-monitoring of blood glucose to determine when insulin dose reductions may be needed and when it may be appropriate to switch to noninsulin agents.

No studies to date have established which noninsulin agents are safest or most efficacious in PTDM. The choice of agent is usually made based on the side effect profile of the medication and possible interactions with the patient’s immunosuppression regimen (148).

Drug dose adjustments may be required because of decreases in the glomerular filtration rate, a relatively common complication in transplant patients. A small short-term pilot study reported that metformin was safe to use in renal transplant recipients (161), but its safety has not been determined in other types of organ transplant. Thiazolidinediones have been used successfully in patients with liver and kidney transplants, but side effects include fluid retention, heart failure, and osteopenia (162,163). Dipeptidyl peptidase 4 inhibitors do not interact with immunosuppressant drugs and have demonstrated safety in small clinical trials (164,165). Well-designed intervention trials examining the efficacy and safety of these and other anti-hyperglycemic agents in patients with PTDM are needed.

**MONOGENIC DIABETES SYNDROMES**

**Recommendations**

2.23 Regardless of current age, all people diagnosed with diabetes in the first 6 months of life should have immediate genetic testing for neonatal diabetes. A

2.24 Children and young adults who do not have typical characteristics of type 1 or type 2 diabetes and who often have a family history of diabetes in successive generations (suggestive of an autosomal dominant pattern of inheritance) should have genetic testing for maturity-onset diabetes of the young. A

2.25 In both instances, consultation with a center specializing in diabetes genetics is recommended to understand the significance of genetic mutations and how best to approach further evaluation, treatment, and genetic counseling. E

Monogenic defects that cause β-cell dysfunction, such as neonatal diabetes and MODY, represent a small fraction of patients with diabetes (<5%). Table 2.6 describes the most common causes of monogenic diabetes. For a comprehensive list of causes, see *Genetic Diagnosis of Endocrine Disorders* (166).

**Neonatal Diabetes**

Diabetes occurring under 6 months of age is termed “neonatal” or “congenital” diabetes, and about 80–85% of cases can be found to have an underlying monogenic cause (8,167–170). Neonatal diabetes occurs much less often after 6 months of age, whereas autoimmune type 1 diabetes rarely occurs before 6 months of age. Neonatal diabetes can either be transient or permanent. Transient diabetes is most often due to overexpression of genes on chromosome 6q24, is recurrent in about half of cases, and may be treatable with medications other than insulin. Permanent neonatal diabetes is most commonly due to autosomal dominant mutations in the genes encoding the Kir6.2 subunit (KCNJ11) and SUR1 subunit (ABCC8) of the β-cell K_ATP channel. A recent report details a de novo mutation in EIF2B1 affecting eIF2 signaling associated with permanent neonatal diabetes and hepatic dysfunction, similar to Wolcott-Rallison syndrome but with few severe comorbidities (171). The recent ADA-European Association for the Study of Diabetes type 1 diabetes consensus report makes the recommendation that regardless of current age, individuals diagnosed under 6 months of age should have genetic testing (8). Correct diagnosis has critical implications because 30–50% of people with K_ATP-related neonatal diabetes will exhibit improved glycemic control when treated with high-dose oral sulfonylureas instead of insulin. Insulin gene (INS) mutations are the second most common cause of permanent neonatal diabetes, and, while intensive insulin management is currently the preferred treatment strategy, there are important genetic counseling considerations, as most of the mutations that cause diabetes are dominantly inherited.

**Maturity-Onset Diabetes of the Young**

MODY is frequently characterized by onset of hyperglycemia at an early age (classically before age 25 years, although diagnosis may occur at older ages). MODY is characterized by impaired insulin secretion with minimal or no defects in insulin
action (in the absence of coexistent obesity). It is inherited in an autosomal dominant pattern with abnormalities in at least 13 genes on different chromosomes identified to date (172). The most commonly reported forms are GCK-MODY (MODY2), HNF1A-MODY (MODY3), and HNF4A-MODY (MODY1).

For individuals with MODY, the treatment implications are considerable and warrant genetic testing (173,174). Clinically, patients with GCK-MODY exhibit mild, stable fasting hyperglycemia and do not require antihyperglycemic therapy except commonly during pregnancy. Patients with HNF1A- or HNF4A-MODY usually respond well to low doses of sulfonylureas, which are considered first-line therapy; in some instances insulin will be required over time. Mutations or deletions in HNF1B are associated with renal cysts and uterine malformations (renal cysts and diabetes [RCAD] syndrome). Other extremely rare forms of MODY have been reported to involve other transcription factor genes including PDX1 (IPF1) and NEUROD1.

Table 2.6—Most common causes of monogenic diabetes (166)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gene</th>
<th>Inheritance</th>
<th>Clinical features</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MODY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GCK</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>GCK-MODY: higher glucose threshold (set-point) for glucose-stimulated insulin secretion, causing stable, nonprogressive elevated fasting blood glucose; typically does not require treatment; microvascular complications are rare; small rise in 2-h PG level on OGTT (&lt;54 mg/dL [3 mmol/L])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HNF1A</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>HNF1A-MODY: progressive insulin secretory defect with presentation in adolescence or early adulthood; lowered renal threshold for glucosuria; large rise in 2-h PG level on OGTT (&gt;90 mg/dL [5 mmol/L]); sensitive to sulfonylureas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HNF4A</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>HNF4A-MODY: progressive insulin secretory defect with presentation in adolescence or early adulthood; may have large birth weight and transient neonatal hypoglycemia; sensitive to sulfonylureas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HNF1B</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>HNF1B-MODY: developmental renal disease (typically cystic); genitourinary abnormalities; atrophy of the pancreas; hyperuricemia; gout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neonatal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KCNJ11</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Permanent or transient: IUGR; possible developmental delay and seizures; responsive to sulfonylureas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INS</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Permanent: IUGR; insulin requiring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABCB8</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Permanent or transient: IUGR; rarely developmental delay; responsive to sulfonylureas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6q24 (PLAGL1, HYMA1)</td>
<td>AD for paternal duplications</td>
<td>Transient: IUGR; macroglossia; umbilical hernia; mechanisms include UPD6, paternal duplication, or maternal methylation defect; may be treatable with medications other than insulin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GATA6</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Permanent: pancreatic hypoplasia; cardiac malformations; pancreatic exocrine insufficiency; insulin requiring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EIF2AK3</td>
<td>AR</td>
<td>Permanent: Wolcott-Rallison syndrome: epiphyseal dysplasia; pancreatic exocrine insufficiency; insulin requiring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EIF2B1</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Permanent diabetes; can be associated with fluctuating liver function (171)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOXP3</td>
<td>X-linked</td>
<td>Permanent: immunodysregulation, polyendocrinopathy, enteropathy X-linked (IPEX) syndrome: autoimmune diabetes, autoimmune thyroid disease, exfoliative dermatitis; insulin requiring</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AD, autosomal dominant; AR, autosomal recessive; IUGR, intrauterine growth restriction; OGTT, oral glucose tolerance test; UPD6, uniparental disomy of chromosome 6; 2-h PG, 2-h plasma glucose.

Diagnosis of Monogenic Diabetes

A diagnosis of one of the three most common forms of MODY, including GCK-MODY, HNF1A-MODY, and HNF4A-MODY, allows for more cost-effective therapy (no therapy for GCK-MODY; sulfonylureas as first-line therapy for HNF1A-MODY and HNF4A-MODY). Additionally, diagnosis can lead to identification of other affected family members. Genetic screening is increasingly available and cost-effective (171,174).

A diagnosis of MODY should be considered in individuals who have atypical diabetes and multiple family members with diabetes not characteristic of type 1 or type 2 diabetes, although admittedly “atypical diabetes” is becoming increasingly difficult to precisely define in the absence of a definitive set of tests for either type of diabetes (168–170,173–179). In most cases, the presence of autoantibodies for type 1 diabetes precludes further testing for monogenic diabetes, but the presence of autoantibodies in patients with monogenic diabetes has been reported (180). Individuals in whom monogenic diabetes is suspected should be referred to a specialist for further evaluation if available, and consultation can be obtained from several centers. Readily available commercial genetic testing following the criteria listed below now enables a cost-effective (181), often cost-saving, genetic diagnosis that is increasingly supported by health insurance. A biomarker screening pathway such as the combination of urinary C-peptide/creatinine ratio and antibody screening may aid in determining who should get genetic testing for MODY (182). It is critical to correctly diagnose one of the monogenic forms of diabetes because these patients may be incorrectly diagnosed with type 1 or type 2 diabetes, leading to suboptimal, even potentially harmful, treatment regimens and delays in diagnosing other family members (183). The correct diagnosis is especially critical for those with GCK-MODY mutations, where multiple studies have shown that no complications ensue in the absence of glucose-
lowering therapy (184). The risks of microvascular and macrovascular complications with HNF1A- and HNF4A-MODY are similar to those observed in patients with type 1 and type 2 diabetes (185,186). Genetic counseling is recommended to ensure that affected individuals understand the patterns of inheritance and the importance of a correct diagnosis and addressing comprehensive cardiovascular risk.

The diagnosis of monogenic diabetes should be considered in children and adults diagnosed with diabetes in early adulthood with the following findings:

- Diabetes diagnosed within the first 6 months of life (with occasional cases presenting later, mostly INS and ABCC8 mutations) (167,187)
- Diabetes without typical features of type 1 or type 2 diabetes (negative diabetes-associated autoantibodies, no obesity, lacking other metabolic features, especially with strong family history of diabetes)
- Stable, mild fasting hyperglycemia (100–150 mg/dL [5.5–8.5 mmol/L]), stable A1C between 5.6% and 7.6% (between 38 and 60 mmol/mol), especially if no obesity

**PANCREATIC DIABETES OR DIABETES IN THE CONTEXT OF DISEASE OF THE EXOCRINE PANCREAS**

Pancreatic diabetes includes both structural and functional loss of glucose-normalizing insulin secretion in the context of exocrine pancreatic dysfunction and is commonly misdiagnosed as type 2 diabetes. Hyperglycemia due to general pancreatic dysfunction has been called “type 3c diabetes” and, more recently, diabetes in the context of disease of the exocrine pancreas has been termed pancreateprivic diabetes (1). The diverse set of etiologies includes pancreatitis (acute and chronic), trauma or pancreatectomy, neoplasia, cystic fibrosis (addressed elsewhere in this chapter), hemochromatosis, fibrocalkalciﬁc pancreatopathy, rare genetic disorders (188), and idiopathic forms (1); as such, pancreatic diabetes is the preferred umbrella terminology.

Pancreatitis, even a single bout, can lead to postpancreatitis diabetes mellitus (PPDM). Both acute and chronic pancreatitis can lead to PPDM, and the risk is highest with recurrent bouts. A distinguishing feature is concurrent pancreatic exocrine insufﬁciency (according to the monoclonal fecal elastase 1 test or direct function tests), pathological pancreatic imaging (endoscopic ultrasound, MRI, computed tomography), and absence of type 1 diabetes–associated autoimmunity (189–194). There is loss of both insulin and glucagon secretion and often higher-than-expected insulin requirements. Risk for microvascular complications appears to be similar to other forms of diabetes. In the context of pancreatectomy, islet autotransplantation can be done to retain insulin secretion (195,196). In some cases, autotransplant can lead to insulin independence. In others, it may decrease insulin requirements (197).

**GESTATIONAL DIABETES MELLITUS**

**Definitions**

For many years, GDM was defined as any degree of glucose intolerance that was first recognized during pregnancy (84), regardless of the degree of hyperglycemia. This definition facilitated a uniform strategy for detection and classification of GDM, but this definition has serious limitations (198). First, the best available evidence reveals that many cases of GDM represent preexisting hyperglycemia that is detected by routine screening in pregnancy, as routine screening is not widely performed in nonpregnant women of reproductive age. It is the severity of hyperglycemia that is clinically important with regard to both short- and long-term maternal and fetal risks.

The ongoing epidemic of obesity and diabetes has led to more type 2 diabetes in women of reproductive age, with an increase in the number of pregnant women with undiagnosed type 2 diabetes in early pregnancy (199–201). Ideally, undiagnosed diabetes should be identﬁed preconception in women with risk factors or in high-risk populations (202–207), as the preconception care of women with preexisting diabetes results in lower A1C and reduced risk of birth defects, preterm delivery,
perinatal mortality, small-for-gestational-age births, and neonatal intensive care unit admission (208). If women are not screened prior to pregnancy, universal early screening at <15 weeks of gestation for undiagnosed diabetes may be considered over selective screening (Table 2.3), particularly in populations with high prevalence of risk factors and undiagnosed diabetes in women of childbearing age. Strong racial and ethnic disparities exist in the prevalence of undiagnosed diabetes. Therefore, early screening provides an initial step to identify these health disparities so that they can begin to be addressed (204–207). Standard diagnostic criteria for identifying undiagnosed diabetes in early pregnancy are the same as those used in the nonpregnant population (see Table 2.2). Women found to have diabetes by the standard diagnostic criteria used outside of pregnancy should be classified as having diabetes complicating pregnancy (most often type 2 diabetes, rarely type 1 diabetes or monogenic diabetes) and managed accordingly.

Early abnormal glucose metabolism, defined as fasting glucose threshold of 110 mg/dL (6.1 mmol/L) or an A1C of 5.9% (39 mmol/mol) may identify women who are at higher risk of adverse pregnancy and neonatal outcomes (pre-eclampsia, macrosomia, shoulder dystocia, perinatal death), are more likely to need insulin treatment, and are at high risk of a later GDM diagnosis (209–215). An A1C threshold of 5.7% has not been shown to be associated with adverse perinatal outcomes (216,217).

If early screening is negative, women should be rescreened for GDM between 24 and 28 weeks of gestation (see Section 15, “Management of Diabetes in Pregnancy,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S015). The International Association of the Diabetes and Pregnancy Study Groups (IADPSG) GDM diagnostic criteria for the 75-g OGTT as well as the GDM screening and diagnostic criteria used in the two-step approach were not derived from data in the first half of pregnancy and should not be used for early screening (218). To date, most randomized controlled trials of treatment of early abnormal glucose metabolism have been underpowered for outcomes. Therefore, the benefits of treatment for early abnormal glucose metabolism remain uncertain. Nutrition counseling and periodic “block” testing of glucose levels weekly to identify women with high glucose levels are suggested. Testing frequency may proceed to daily, and treatment may be intensified, if the fasting glucose is predominantly >110 mg/dL, prior to 18 weeks of gestation.

Both the fasting glucose and A1C are low-cost tests. An advantage of the A1C is its convenience, as it can be added to the prenatal laboratories and does not require an early-morning fasting appointment. Disadvantages include inaccuracies in the presence of increased red blood cell turnover and hemoglobinopathies (usually reads lower), and higher values with anemia and reduced red blood cell turnover (219). A1C is not reliable to screen for GDM or for preexisting diabetes at 15 weeks of gestation or later. See Recommendation 2.3 above.

GDM is often indicative of underlying β-cell dysfunction (220), which confers marked increased risk for later development of diabetes, generally but not always type 2 diabetes, in the mother after delivery (221,222). As effective prevention interventions are available (223,224), women diagnosed with GDM should receive lifelong screening for prediabetes to allow interventions to reduce diabetes risk and for type 2 diabetes to allow treatment at the earliest possible time (225).

**Diagnosis**

GDM carries risks for the mother, fetus, and neonate. The Hyperglycemia and Adverse Pregnancy Outcome (HAPO) study (226), a large-scale multinational cohort study completed by more than 23,000 pregnant women, demonstrated that risk of adverse maternal, fetal, and neonatal outcomes continuously increased as a function of maternal glycemia at 24–28 weeks of gestation, even within ranges previously considered normal for pregnancy. For most complications, there was no threshold for risk. These results have led to careful reconsideration of the diagnostic criteria for GDM.

GDM diagnosis (Table 2.7) can be accomplished with either of two strategies:

1. The “one-step” 75-g OGTT derived from the IADPSG criteria, or
2. The older “two-step” approach with a 50-g (nonfasting) screen followed by a 100-g OGTT for those who screen positive, based on the work of Carpenter and Coustan’s interpretation of the older O’Sullivan (227) criteria.

### Table 2.7—Screening for and diagnosis of GDM

**One-step strategy**

Perform a 75-g OGTT, with plasma glucose measurement when patient is fasting and at 1 and 2 h, at 24–28 weeks of gestation in women not previously diagnosed with diabetes. The OGTT should be performed in the morning after an overnight fast of at least 8 h. The diagnosis of GDM is made when any of the following plasma glucose values are met or exceeded:

- **Fasting:** 92 mg/dL (5.1 mmol/L)
- **1 h:** 180 mg/dL (10.0 mmol/L)
- **2 h:** 153 mg/dL (8.5 mmol/L)

**Two-step strategy**

**Step 1:** Perform a 50-g GLT (nonfasting), with plasma glucose measurement at 1 h and 24–28 weeks of gestation in women not previously diagnosed with diabetes. If the plasma glucose level measured 1 h after the load is ≥130, 135, or 140 mg/dL (7.2, 7.5, or 7.8 mmol/L, respectively), proceed to a 100-g OGTT.

**Step 2:** The 100-g OGTT should be performed when the patient is fasting. The diagnosis of GDM is made when at least two* of the following four plasma glucose levels (measured fasting and at 1, 2, and 3 h during OGTT) are met or exceeded (Carpenter-Coustan criteria [244]):

- **Fasting:** 95 mg/dL (5.3 mmol/L)
- **1 h:** 180 mg/dL (10.0 mmol/L)
- **2 h:** 155 mg/dL (8.6 mmol/L)
- **3 h:** 140 mg/dL (7.8 mmol/L)

GDM, gestational diabetes mellitus; GLT, glucose load test; OGTT, oral glucose tolerance test. *American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists notes that one elevated value can be used for diagnosis (240).
Different diagnostic criteria will identify different degrees of maternal hyperglycemia and maternal/fetal risk, leading some experts to debate, and disagree on, optimal strategies for the diagnosis of GDM.

**One-Step Strategy**

The IADPSG defined diagnostic cut points for GDM as the average fasting, 1-h, and 2-h PG values during a 75-g OGTT in women at 24–28 weeks of gestation who participated in the HAPO study at which odds for adverse outcomes reached 1.75 times the estimated odds of these outcomes at the mean fasting, 1-h, and 2-h PG levels of the study population. This one-step strategy was anticipated to significantly increase the incidence of GDM (from 5–6% to 15–20%), primarily because only one abnormal value, not two, became sufficient to make the diagnosis (228). Many regional studies have investigated the impact of adopting the IADPSG criteria on prevalence and have seen a roughly one- to threefold increase (229). The anticipated increase in the incidence of GDM could have a substantial impact on costs and medical infrastructure needs and has the potential to “medicalize” pregnancies previously categorized as normal. A recent follow-up study of women participating in a blinded study of pregnancy OGTTs found that 11 years after their pregnancies, women who would have been diagnosed with GDM by the one-step approach, as compared with those without, were at 3.4-fold higher risk of developing prediabetes and type 2 diabetes and had children with a higher risk of obesity and increased body fat, suggesting that the larger group of women identified by the one-step approach would benefit from the increased screening for diabetes and prediabetes that would accompany a history of GDM (230,231). The ADA recommends the IADPSG diagnostic criteria with the intent of optimizing gestational outcomes because these criteria are the only ones based on pregnancy outcomes rather than end points such as prediction of subsequent maternal diabetes.

The expected benefits of using IADPSG criteria to the offspring are inferred from intervention trials that focused on women with lower levels of hyperglycemia than identified using older GDM diagnostic criteria. Those trials found modest benefits including reduced rates of large-for-gestational-age births and preeclampsia (232,233). It is important to note that 80–90% of women being treated for mild GDM in these two randomized controlled trials could be managed with lifestyle therapy alone. The OGTT glucose cutoffs in these two trials overlapped with the thresholds recommended by the IADPSG, and in one trial (233), the 2-h PG threshold (140 mg/dL [7.8 mmol/L]) was lower than the cutoff recommended by the IADPSG (153 mg/dL [8.5 mmol/L]). No randomized controlled trials of treating versus not treating GDM diagnosed by the IADPSG criteria but not the Carpenter-Coustan criteria have been published to date. However, a recent randomized trial of testing for GDM at 24–28 weeks of gestation by the one-step method using IADPSG criteria versus the two-step method using a 1-h 50-g glucose loading test (GLT) and, if positive, a 3-h OGTT by Carpenter-Coustan criteria identified twice as many women with GDM using the one-step method compared with the two-step. Despite treating more women for GDM using the one-step method, there was no difference in pregnancy and perinatal complications (234).

The one-step method identifies the long-term risks of maternal prediabetes and diabetes and offspring abnormal glucose metabolism and adiposity. Post hoc GDM in women diagnosed by the one-step method in the HAPO cohort was associated with higher prevalence of IGT; higher 30-min, 1-h, and 2-h glucose values during the OGTT; and reduced insulin sensitivity and oral disposition index in their offspring at 10–14 years of age compared with offspring of mothers without GDM. Associations of mother’s fasting, 1-h, and 2-h values on the 75-g OGTT were continuous with a comprehensive panel of offspring metabolic outcomes (231,235). In addition, HAPO Follow-up Study (HAPO FUS) data demonstrate that neonatal adiposity and fetal hyperinsulinemia (cord C-peptide), both higher across the continuum of maternal hyperglycemia, are mediators of childhood body fat (236).

Data are lacking on how the treatment of mother’s hyperglycemia in pregnancy affects her offspring’s risk for obesity, diabetes, and other metabolic disorders. Additional well-designed clinical studies are needed to determine the optimal intensity of monitoring and treatment of women with GDM diagnosed by the one-step strategy (237,238).

**Two-Step Strategy**

In 2013, the NIH convened a consensus development conference to consider diagnostic criteria for diagnosing GDM (239). The 15-member panel had representatives from obstetrics and gynecology, maternal-fetal medicine, pediatrics, diabetes research, biostatistics, and other related fields. The panel recommended a two-step approach to screening that used a 1-h 50-g GLT followed by a 3-h 100-g OGTT for those who screened positive. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG) recommends any of the commonly used thresholds of 130, 135, or 140 mg/dL for the 1-h 50-g GLT (240). A systematic review for the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force compared GLT cutoffs of 130 mg/dL (7.2 mmol/L) and 140 mg/dL (7.8 mmol/L) (241). The higher cutoff yielded sensitivity of 70–88% and specificity of 69–89%, while the lower cutoff was 88–99% sensitive and 66–77% specific. Data regarding a cutoff of 135 mg/dL are limited. As for other screening tests, choice of a cutoff is based upon the trade-off between sensitivity and specificity. The use of A1C at 24–28 weeks of gestation as a screening test for GDM does not function as well as the GLT (242).

Key factors cited by the NIH panel in their decision-making process were the lack of clinical trial data demonstrating the benefits of the one-step strategy and the potential negative consequences of identifying a large group of women with GDM, including medicalization of pregnancy with increased health care utilization and costs. Moreover, screening with a 50-g GLT does not require fasting and is therefore easier to accomplish for many women. Treatment of higher-threshold maternal hyperglycemia, as identified by the two-step approach, reduces rates of neonatal macrosomia, large-for-gestational-age births (243), and shoulder dystocia without increasing small-for-gestational-age births. ACOG currently supports the two-step approach but notes that one elevated value, as opposed to two, may
be used for the diagnosis of GDM (240). If this approach is implemented, the incidence of GDM by the two-step strategy will likely increase markedly. ACOG recommends either of two sets of diagnostic thresholds for the 3-h 100-g OGT—Carpenter-Coustan or National Diabetes Data Group (244,245). Each is based on different mathematical conversions of the original recommended thresholds by O’Sullivan (227), which used whole blood and nonenzymatic methods for glucose determination. A secondary analysis of data from a randomized clinical trial of identification and treatment of mild GDM (246) demonstrated that treatment was similarly beneficial in patients meeting only the lower thresholds per Carpenter-Coustan (244) and in those meeting only the higher thresholds per National Diabetes Data Group (245). If the two-step approach is used, it would appear advantageous to use the Carpenter-Coustan lower diagnostic thresholds as shown in step 2 in Table 2.7.

Future Considerations
The conflicting recommendations from expert groups underscore the fact that there are data to support each strategy. A cost-benefit estimation comparing the two strategies concluded that the one-step approach is cost-effective only if patients with GDM receive postdelivery counseling and care to prevent type 2 diabetes (247). The decision of which strategy to implement must therefore be made based on the relative values placed on factors that have yet to be measured (e.g., willingness to change practice based on correlation studies rather than intervention trial results, available infrastructure, and importance of cost considerations).

As the IADPSG criteria (“one-step strategy”) have been adopted internationally, further evidence has emerged to support improved pregnancy outcomes with cost savings (248), and IADPSG may be the preferred approach. Data comparing populationwide outcomes with one-step versus two-step approaches have been inconsistent to date (234,249–251). In addition, pregnancies complicated by GDM per the IADPSG criteria, but not recognized as such, have outcomes comparable to pregnancies with diagnosed GDM by the more stringent two-step criteria (252,253). There remains strong consensus that establishing a uniform approach to diagnosing GDM will benefit patients, caregivers, and policy makers. Longer-term outcome studies are currently underway.

References
6. Thomas NJ, Lynam AL, Hill AV, et al. Type 1 diabetes defined by severe insulin deficiency occurs after 30 years of age and is commonly treated as type 2 diabetes. Diabetologia 2019;62:1167–1172
118. Monroe AK, Glebsy MJ, Brown TT. Diagnosing and managing diabetes in HIV-


189. Urbanova J, Ekberg K, Hattersley AT, Ellard S. Maturity-onset diabetes of the young (MODY): how many cases are we missing? Diabetologia 2010;53:2504–2508


3. Prevention or Delay of Type 2 Diabetes and Associated Comorbidities: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2022

The American Diabetes Association (ADA) “Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes” includes the ADA’s current clinical practice recommendations and is intended to provide the components of diabetes care, general treatment goals and guidelines, and tools to evaluate quality of care. Members of the ADA Professional Practice Committee, a multidisciplinary expert committee (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SPPC), are responsible for updating the Standards of Care annually, or more frequently as warranted. For a detailed description of ADA standards, statements, and reports, as well as the evidence-grading system for ADA’s clinical practice recommendations, please refer to the Standards of Care Introduction (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SINT). Readers who wish to comment on the Standards of Care are invited to do so at professional.diabetes.org/SOC.

For guidelines related to screening for increased risk for type 2 diabetes (prediabetes), please refer to Section 2, “Classification and Diagnosis of Diabetes” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S002). For guidelines related to screening, diagnosis, and management of type 2 diabetes in youth, please refer to Section 14, “Children and Adolescents” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S014).

**Recommendation 3.1** Monitor for the development of type 2 diabetes in those with prediabetes at least annually, modified based on individual risk/benefit assessment. E

Screening for prediabetes and type 2 diabetes risk through an informal assessment of risk factors (Table 2.3) or with an assessment tool, such as the American Diabetes Association risk test (Fig. 2.1), is recommended to guide providers on whether performing a diagnostic test for prediabetes (Table 2.5) and previously undiagnosed type 2 diabetes (Table 2.2) is appropriate (see Section 2, “Classification and Diagnosis of Diabetes,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S002). Testing high-risk patients for prediabetes is warranted because the laboratory assessment is safe and reasonable in cost, substantial time exists before the development of type 2 diabetes and its complications during which one can intervene, and there is an effective means of preventing type 2 diabetes in those determined to have prediabetes with an A1C 5.7–6.4% (39–47 mmol/mol), impaired glucose tolerance, or impaired fasting glucose. The utility of A1C screening for prediabetes and diabetes may be limited in the presence of hemoglobinopathies and conditions that affect red blood cell turnover. See
Section 2, “Classification and Diagnosis of Diabetes” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S002), and Section 6, “Glycemic Targets” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S006), for additional details on the appropriate use and limitations of A1C testing.

**LIFESTYLE BEHAVIOR CHANGE FOR DIABETES PREVENTION**

**Recommendations**

3.2 Refer adults with overweight/obesity at high risk of type 2 diabetes, as typified by the Diabetes Prevention Program (DPP), to an intensive lifestyle behavior change program consistent with the DPP to achieve and maintain 7% loss of initial body weight, and increase moderate-intensity physical activity (such as brisk walking) to at least 150 min/week. A

3.3 A variety of eating patterns can be considered to prevent diabetes in individuals with prediabetes. B

3.4 Given the cost-effectiveness of lifestyle behavior modification programs for diabetes prevention, such diabetes prevention programs should be offered to patients. A Diabetes prevention programs should be covered by third-party payers and inconsistencies in access should be addressed. B

3.5 Based on patient preference, certified technology-assisted diabetes prevention programs may be effective in preventing type 2 diabetes and should be considered. B

The Diabetes Prevention Program

Several major randomized controlled trials, including the Diabetes Prevention Program (DPP) (1), the Finnish Diabetes Prevention Study (DPS) (2), and the Da Qing Diabetes Prevention Study (Da Qing study) (3), demonstrate that lifestyle/behavioral therapy with individualized reduced-calorie meal plan is highly effective in preventing or delaying type 2 diabetes and improving other cardiovascular metabolic markers (such as blood pressure, lipids, and inflammation) (4). The strongest evidence for diabetes prevention in the U.S. comes from the DPP trial (1). The DPP demonstrated that intensive lifestyle intervention could reduce the risk of incident type 2 diabetes by 58% over 3 years. Follow-up of three large studies of lifestyle intervention for diabetes prevention has shown sustained reduction in the risk of progression to type 2 diabetes: 39% reduction at 30 years in the Da Qing study (5), 43% reduction at 7 years in the Finnish DPS (2), and 34% reduction at 10 years (6) and 27% reduction at 15 years (7) in the U.S. Diabetes Prevention Program Outcomes Study (DPPOS).

The two major goals of the DPP intensive lifestyle intervention were to achieve and maintain a minimum of 7% weight loss and 150 min of physical activity per week similar in intensity to brisk walking. The DPP lifestyle intervention was a goal-based intervention: all participants were given the same weight loss and physical activity goals, but individualization was permitted in the specific methods used to achieve the goals (8). Although weight loss was the most important factor to reduce the risk of incident diabetes, it was also found that achieving the target behavioral goal of at least 150 min of physical activity per week, even without achieving the weight loss goal, reduced the incidence of type 2 diabetes by 44% (9). The 7% weight loss goal was selected because it was feasible to achieve and maintain and likely to lessen the risk of developing diabetes. Participants were encouraged to achieve the 7% weight loss during the first 6 months of the intervention. Further analysis suggests maximal prevention of diabetes with at least 7–10% weight loss (9). The recommended pace of weight loss was 1–2 lb/week. Calorie goals were calculated by estimating the daily calories needed to maintain the participant’s initial weight and subtracting 500–1,000 calories/day (depending on initial body weight). The initial focus was on reducing total dietary fat. After several weeks, the concept of calorie balance and the need to restrict calories as well as fat was introduced (8).

The goal for physical activity was selected to approximate at least 700 kcal/week expenditure from physical activity. For ease of translation, this goal was described as at least 150 min of moderate-intensity physical activity per week similar in intensity to brisk walking. Participants were encouraged to distribute their activity throughout the week with a minimum frequency of three times per week and at least 10 min per session. A maximum of 75 min of strength training could be applied toward the total 150 min/week physical activity goal (8).

To implement the weight loss and physical activity goals, the DPP used an individual model of treatment rather than a group-based approach. This choice was based on a desire to intervene before participants had the possibility of developing diabetes or losing interest in the program. The individual approach also allowed for tailoring of interventions to reflect the diversity of the population (8).

The DPP intervention was administered as a structured core curriculum followed by a flexible maintenance program of individual counseling, group sessions, motivational campaigns, and restart opportunities. The 16-session core curriculum was completed within the first 24 weeks of the program and included sessions on lowering calories, increasing physical activity, self-monitoring, maintaining healthy lifestyle behaviors, and guidance on managing psychological, social, and motivational challenges. Further details are available regarding the core curriculum sessions (8).

**Nutrition**

Dietary counseling for weight loss in the DPP lifestyle intervention arm included a reduction of total dietary fat and calories (1,8,9). However, evidence suggests that there is not an ideal percentage of calories from carbohydrate, protein, and fat for all people to prevent diabetes; therefore, macronutrient distribution should be based on an individualized assessment of current eating patterns, preferences, and metabolic goals (10). Based on other intervention trials, a variety of eating patterns characterized by the totality of food and beverages habitually consumed (10,11) may also be appropriate for patients with prediabetes (10), including Mediterranean-style and low-carbohydrate eating plans (12–15). Observational studies have also shown that vegetarian, plant-based (may include some animal products), and
Dietary Approaches to Stop Hypertension (DASH) eating patterns are associated with a lower risk of developing type 2 diabetes (16–19). Evidence suggests that the overall quality of food consumed (as measured by the Healthy Eating Index, Alternative Healthy Eating Index, and DASH score), with an emphasis on whole grains, legumes, nuts, fruits, and vegetables and minimal refined and processed foods, is also associated with a lower risk of type 2 diabetes (18,20–22). As is the case for those with diabetes, individualized medical nutrition therapy (see Section 5, “Facilitating Behavior Change and Well-being to Improve Health Outcomes,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S005, for more detailed information) is effective in lowering A1C in individuals diagnosed with prediabetes (23).

Physical Activity
Just as 150 min/week of moderate-intensity physical activity, such as brisk walking, showed beneficial effects in those with prediabetes (1), moderate-intensity physical activity has been shown to improve insulin sensitivity and reduce abdominal fat in children and young adults (24,25). On the basis of these findings, providers are encouraged to promote a DPP-style program, including a focus on physical activity, to all individuals who have been identified to be at an increased risk of type 2 diabetes. In addition to aerobic activity, an exercise regimen designed to prevent diabetes may include resistance training (8,26,27). Breaking up prolonged sedentary time may also be encouraged, as it is associated with moderately lower postprandial glucose levels (28,29). The preventive effects of exercise appear to extend to the prevention of gestational diabetes mellitus (GDM) (30).

Delivery and Dissemination of Lifestyle Behavior Change for Diabetes Prevention
Because the intensive lifestyle intervention in the DPP was effective in preventing type 2 diabetes among those at high risk for the disease and lifestyle behavior change programs for diabetes prevention were shown to be cost-effective, broader efforts to disseminate scalable lifestyle behavior change programs for diabetes prevention with coverage by third-party payers ensued (31–35). Group delivery of DPP content in community or primary care settings has demonstrated the potential to reduce overall program costs while still producing weight loss and diabetes risk reduction (36–40).

The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) developed the National Diabetes Prevention Program (National DPP), a resource designed to bring such evidence-based lifestyle change programs for preventing type 2 diabetes to communities (www.cdc.gov/diabetes/prevention/index.htm). This online resource includes locations of CDC-recognized diabetes prevention lifestyle change programs (available at www.cdc.gov/diabetes/prevention/find-a-program.html). To be eligible for this program, patients must have a BMI in the overweight range and be at risk for diabetes based on laboratory testing, a previous diagnosis of GDM, or a positive risk test (available at www.cdc.gov/prediabetes/takethetest/). Results from the CDC’s National DPP during the first 4 years of implementation are promising and demonstrate cost-efficacy (41). The CDC has also developed the Diabetes Prevention Impact Tool Kit (available at nccd.cdc.gov/toolkit/diabetesimpact) to help organizations assess the economics of providing or covering the National DPP lifestyle change program (42). In an effort to expand preventive services using a cost-effective model that began in April 2018, the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services expanded Medicare reimbursement coverage for the National DPP lifestyle intervention to organizations recognized by the CDC that become Medicare suppliers for this service (at innovation.cms.gov/innovation-models/medicare-diabetes-prevention-program). The locations of Medicare DPPs are available online at innovation.cms.gov/innovation-models/medicare-diabetes-prevention-program/mdpp-map. To qualify for Medicare coverage, patients must have BMI >25 kg/m² (or BMI >23 kg/m² if self-identified as Asian) and laboratory testing consistent with prediabetes in the last year. Medicaid coverage of the DPP lifestyle intervention is also expanding on a state-by-state basis.

While CDC-recognized behavioral counseling programs, including Medicare DPP services, have met minimum quality standards and are reimbursed by many payers, there have been lower retention rates reported for younger adults and racial/ethnic minority populations (43). Therefore, other programs and modalities of behavioral counseling for diabetes prevention may also be appropriate and efficacious based on patient preferences and availability. The use of community health workers to support DPP efforts has been shown to be effective and cost-effective (44,45) (see Section 1, “Improving Care and Promoting Health in Populations,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S001, for more information). The use of community health workers may facilitate adoption of behavioral changes for diabetes prevention while bridging barriers related to social determinants of health, though coverage by third-party payers remains problematic. Counseling by registered dietitians/registered dietitian nutritionists (RDNs) has been shown to help individuals with prediabetes improve eating habits, increase physical activity, and achieve 7–10% weight loss (10,46–48). Individualized medical nutrition therapy (see Section 5, “Facilitating Behavior Change and Well-being to Improve Health Outcomes,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S005, for more detailed information) is also effective in improving glycemia in individuals diagnosed with prediabetes (23,46). Furthermore, trials involving medical nutrition therapy for patients with prediabetes found significant reductions in weight, waist circumference, and glycemia. Individuals with prediabetes can benefit from referral to an RDN for individualized medical nutrition therapy upon diagnosis and at regular intervals throughout their treatment regimen (48,49). Other allied health professionals, such as pharmacists and diabetes care and education specialists, may be considered for diabetes prevention efforts (50,51).

Technology-assisted programs may effectively deliver the DPP program (52–57). Such technology-assisted programs may deliver content through smartphone, web-based applications, and telehealth and may be an acceptable and efficacious option to bridge barriers, particularly for low-income and rural patients; however, not all programs are effective in helping people reach targets for diabetes prevention (52,58–60). The CDC Diabetes Prevention Recognition Program (DPRP) (www.cdc.gov/diabetes/prevention/requirements-recognition.htm) certifies technology-assisted modalities as effective vehicles for DPP-based programs; such programs must use an approved curriculum,
include interaction with a coach, and attain the DPP outcomes of participation, physical activity reporting, and weight loss. Therefore, providers should consider referring patients with prediabetes to certified technology-assisted DPP programs based on patient preference.

**PHARMACOLOGIC INTERVENTIONS**

3.6 Metformin therapy for prevention of type 2 diabetes should be considered in adults with prediabetes, as typified by the Diabetes Prevention Program, especially those aged 25–59 years with BMI ≥35 kg/m², higher fasting plasma glucose (e.g., ≥110 mg/dL), and higher A1C (e.g., ≥6.0%), and in women with prior gestational diabetes mellitus. A

3.7 Long-term use of metformin may be associated with biochemical vitamin B12 deficiency; consider periodic measurement of vitamin B12 levels in metformin-treated patients, especially in those with anemia or peripheral neuropathy. B

Because weight loss through behavior changes in diet and exercise alone can be difficult to maintain long term (6), people being treated with weight loss therapy may benefit from support and additional pharmacotherapeutic options, if needed. Various pharmacologic agents used to treat diabetes have been evaluated for diabetes prevention. Metformin, α-glucosidase inhibitors, liraglutide, thiazolidinediones, testosterone, and insulin have been shown to lower the incidence of diabetes in specific populations (62–67), whereas diabetes prevention was not seen with nateglinide (68).

In addition, several weight loss medications like orlistat and phentermine topiramate have also been shown in research studies to decrease the incidence of diabetes to various degrees in those with prediabetes (69,70). Studies of other pharmacologic agents have shown some efficacy in diabetes prevention with valsartan but no efficacy in preventing diabetes with ramipril or anti-inflammatory drugs (71–74). Although the Vitamin D and Type 2 Diabetes (D2d) prospective randomized controlled trial showed no significant benefit of vitamin D versus placebo on the progression to type 2 diabetes in individuals at high risk (75), post hoc analyses and meta-analyses suggest a potential benefit in specific populations (75–78). Further research is needed to define patient characteristics and clinical indicators where vitamin D supplementation may be of benefit (61).

No pharmacologic agent has been approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration specifically for diabetes prevention. The risk versus benefit of each medication must be weighed. Metformin has the strongest evidence base (1) and demonstrated long-term safety as pharmacologic therapy for diabetes prevention (79). For other drugs, cost, side effects, treatment goals, and durable efficacy require consideration.

Metformin was overall less effective than lifestyle modification in the DPP, though group differences declined over time in the DPP (7), and metformin may be cost-saving over a 10-year period (33). During initial follow-up in the DPP, metformin was as effective as lifestyle modification in participants with BMI ≥35 kg/m² and in younger participants aged 25–44 years (1). In the DPP, for women with a history of GDM, metformin and intensive lifestyle modification led to an equivalent 50% reduction in diabetes risk (80), and both interventions remained highly effective during a 10-year follow-up period (81). By the time of the 15-year follow-up (DPPOS), exploratory analyses demonstrated that participants with a higher baseline fasting glucose (≥110 mg/dL vs. 95–109 mg/dL), those with a higher A1C (6.0–6.4% vs. <6.0%), and women with a history of GDM (vs. women without a history of GDM) experienced higher risk reductions with metformin, identifying subgroups of participants that benefitted the most from metformin (82). In the Indian Diabetes Prevention Program (IDPP-1), metformin and the lifestyle intervention reduced diabetes risk similarly at 30 months; of note, the lifestyle intervention in IDPP-1 was less intensive than that in the DPP (83). Based on findings from the DPP, metformin should be recommended as an option for high-risk individuals (e.g., those with a history of GDM or those with BMI ≥35 kg/m²). Consider periodic monitoring of vitamin B12 levels in those taking metformin chronically to check for possible deficiency (84,85) (see Section 9, “Pharmacologic Approaches to Glycemic Treatment,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S009, for more details).

**PREVENTION OF VASCULAR DISEASE AND MORTALITY**

3.8 Prediabetes is associated with heightened cardiovascular risk; therefore, screening for and treatment of modifiable risk factors for cardiovascular disease are suggested. B

People with prediabetes often have other cardiovascular risk factors, including hypertension and dyslipidemia (86), and are at increased risk for cardiovascular disease (87,88). Evaluation for tobacco use and referral for tobacco cessation, if indicated, should be part of routine care for those at risk for diabetes. Of note, the years immediately following smoking cessation may represent a time of increased risk for diabetes (89–91), a time when patients should be monitored for diabetes development and receive the concurrent evidence-based lifestyle behavior change for diabetes prevention described in this section. See Section 5, “Facilitating Behavior Change and Well-being to Improve Health Outcomes” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S005), for more detailed information. The lifestyle interventions for weight loss in study populations at risk for type 2 diabetes have shown a reduction in cardiovascular risk factors and the need for medications used to treat these cardiovascular risk factors (92,93). In longer-term follow-up, lifestyle interventions for diabetes prevention also prevented the development of microvascular complications among women enrolled in the DPPOS and in the study population enrolled in the China Da Qing Diabetes Prevention Outcome Study (7,94). The lifestyle intervention in the latter study was also efficacious in preventing cardiovascular disease and mortality at 23 and 30 years of follow-up (3,5). Treatment goals and therapies for hypertension and dyslipidemia in the primary prevention of cardiovascular disease for people with prediabetes should
be based on their level of cardiovascular risk, and increased vigilance is warranted to identify and treat these and other cardiovascular risk factors (95).

**PATIENT-CENTERED CARE GOALS**

**Recommendation 3.9** In adults with overweight/obesity at high risk of type 2 diabetes, care goals should include weight loss or prevention of weight gain, minimizing progression of hyperglycemia, and attention to cardiovascular risk and associated comorbidities.

Individualized risk/benefit should be considered in screening, intervention, and monitoring for the prevention or delay of type 2 diabetes and associated comorbidities. Multiple factors, including age, BMI, and other comorbidities, may influence risk of progression to diabetes and lifetime risk of complications (96,97). In the DPP, which enrolled high-risk individuals with impaired glucose tolerance, elevated fasting glucose, and elevated BMI, the crude incidence of diabetes within the placebo arm was 11.0 cases per 100 person-years, with a cumulative 3-year incidence of diabetes of 28.9% (1). In the community-based Atherosclerosis Risk in Communities (ARIC) study, observational follow-up of older adults (mean age 75 years) with laboratory evidence of prediabetes (based on A1C 5.7–6.4% and/or fasting glucose 100–125 mg/dL) but not meeting specific BMI criteria found much lower progression to diabetes over 6 years: 9% of those with A1C-defined prediabetes, 8% with impaired fasting glucose (97).

Thus, it is important to individualize the risk/benefit of intervention and consider person-centered goals. Risk models have explored risk-based benefit, in general finding higher benefit of intervention in those at highest risk (9). Diabetes prevention and observational studies highlight several key principles, which may guide patient-centered goals. In the DPP, which enrolled a high-risk population meeting criteria for overweight/obesity, weight loss was an important mediator of diabetes prevention or delay, with greater metabolic benefit generally seen with greater weight loss (9,98). In the DPP/DPPOS, progression to diabetes, duration of diabetes, and mean level of glycemia were important determinants of development of microvascular complications (7). Furthermore, ability to achieve normal glucose regulation, even once, during the DPP was associated with a lower risk of diabetes and lower risk of microvascular complications (99). Observational follow-up of the Da Qing study also showed that regression from impaired glucose tolerance to normal glucose tolerance or remaining with impaired glucose tolerance rather than progressing to type 2 diabetes at the end of the 6-year intervention trial resulted in significantly lower risk of cardiovascular disease and microvascular disease over 30 years (100). Prediabetes is associated with increased cardiovascular disease and mortality (88), emphasizing the importance of attending to cardiovascular risk in this population.

**References**

23. Parker AR, Byham-Gray L, Denmark R, Winkle PJ. The effect of medical nutrition therapy by a registered dietitian nutritionist in patients with prediabetes participating in a randomized


60. Gerstein HC, Yusuf S, Bosch J, et al.; DREAM (Diabetes REduction Assessment with ramipril and rosiglitazone Medication) Trial Investigators. Effect of rosiglitazone on the frequency of diabetes in patients with impaired glucose tolerance or impaired fasting glucose: a
4. Comprehensive Medical Evaluation and Assessment of Comorbidities: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2022

The American Diabetes Association (ADA) “Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes” includes the ADA’s current clinical practice recommendations and is intended to provide the components of diabetes care, general treatment goals and guidelines, and tools to evaluate quality of care. Members of the ADA Professional Practice Committee, a multidisciplinary expert committee (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SPPC), are responsible for updating the Standards of Care annually, or more frequently as warranted. For a detailed description of ADA standards, statements, and reports, as well as the evidence-grading system for ADA’s clinical practice recommendations, please refer to the Standards of Care Introduction (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SINT). Readers who wish to comment on the Standards of Care are invited to do so at professional.diabetes.org/SOC.

PATIENT-CENTERED COLLABORATIVE CARE

**Recommendations**

4.1 A patient-centered communication style that uses person-centered and strength-based language and active listening; elicits patient preferences and beliefs; and assesses literacy, numeracy, and potential barriers to care should be used to optimize patient health outcomes and health-related quality of life. B

4.2 People with diabetes can benefit from a coordinated multidisciplinary team that may include and is not limited to diabetes care and education specialists, primary care and subspecialty clinicians, nurses, dietitians, exercise specialists, pharmacists, dentists, podiatrists, and mental health professionals. E

A successful medical evaluation depends on beneficial interactions between the patient and the care team. The Chronic Care Model (1–3) (see Section 1, “Improving Care and Promoting Health in Populations,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S001) is a patient-centered approach to care that requires a close working relationship between the patient and clinicians involved in treatment planning. People with diabetes should receive health care from a coordinated interdisciplinary team that may include but is not limited to diabetes care and education specialists, primary care and subspecialty clinicians, nurses, dietitians, exercise specialists, pharmacists, dentists, podiatrists, and mental health professionals. Individuals with diabetes must assume an active role in their care. Based on patient
preferences, the patient, family or support people, and health care team together formulate the management plan, which includes lifestyle management (see Section 5, “Facilitating Behavior Change and Well-being to Improve Health Outcomes,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S005).

The goals of treatment for diabetes are to prevent or delay complications and optimize quality of life (Fig. 4.1). Treatment goals and plans should be created with patients based on their individual preferences, values, and goals. This individualized management plan should take into account the patient’s age, cognitive abilities, school/work schedule and conditions, health beliefs, support systems, eating patterns, physical activity, social situation, financial concerns, cultural factors, literacy and numeracy (mathematical literacy), diabetes history (duration, complications, current use of medications), comorbidities, disabilities, health priorities, other medical conditions, preferences for care, and life expectancy. Various strategies and techniques should be used to support patients’ self-management efforts, including providing education on problem-solving skills for all aspects of diabetes management.

Provider communication with patients and families should acknowledge that multiple factors impact glycemic management but also emphasize that collaboratively developed treatment plans and a healthy lifestyle can significantly improve disease outcomes and well-being (4–7). Thus, the goal of provider-patient communication is to establish a collaborative relationship and to assess and address self-management barriers without blaming patients for “noncompliance” or “nonadherence” when the outcomes of self-management are not optimal (8). The familiar terms “noncompliance” and “nonadherence” denote a passive, obedient role for a person with diabetes in “following doctor’s orders” that is at odds with the active role people with diabetes take in directing the day-to-day decision-making, planning, monitoring, evaluation, and problem-solving involved in diabetes self-management. Using a nonjudgmental approach that normalizes periodic lapses in self-management may help minimize patients’ resistance to reporting problems with self-management. Empathizing and using active listening techniques, such as open-ended questions, reflective statements, and summarizing what the patient said, can help facilitate communication. Patients’ perceptions about their own ability, or self-efficacy, to self-manage diabetes constitute one important psychosocial factor related to improved diabetes self-management and treatment outcomes in diabetes (9–11) and should be a target of ongoing assessment, patient education, and treatment planning.

Language has a strong impact on perceptions and behavior. The use of empowering language in diabetes care and education can help to inform and motivate people, yet language that shames and judges may undermine this effort. The American Diabetes Association (ADA) and the Association of Diabetes Care & Education Specialists (formerly

Figure 4.1—Decision cycle for patient-centered glycemic management in type 2 diabetes. Adapted from Davies et al. (104).
The comprehensive medical evaluation includes the initial and follow-up evaluations, assessment of complications, psychosocial assessment, management of comorbid conditions, and engagement of the patient throughout the process. While a comprehensive list is provided in Table 4.1, in clinical practice the provider may need to prioritize the components of the medical evaluation given the available resources and time. The goal is to provide the health care team information so it can optimally support a patient. In addition to the medical history, physical examination, and laboratory tests, providers should assess diabetes self-management behaviors, nutrition, social determinants of health, and psychosocial health (see Section 5, “Facilitating Behavior Change and Well-being to Improve Health Outcomes,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S005) and give guidance on routine immunizations. The assessment of sleep pattern and duration should be considered; a meta-analysis found that poor sleep quality, short sleep, and long sleep were associated with higher A1C in people with type 2 diabetes (13). Interval follow-up visits should occur at least every 3–6 months individualized to the patient, and then at least annually.

Lifestyle management and psychosocial care are the cornerstones of diabetes management. Patients should be referred for diabetes self-management education and support, medical nutrition therapy, and assessment of psychosocial/emotional health concerns if indicated. Patients should receive recommended preventive care services (e.g., immunizations, cancer screening, etc.); smoking cessation counseling; and ophthalmological, dental, and podiatric referrals, as needed.

The assessment of risk of acute and chronic diabetes complications and treatment planning are key components of initial and follow-up visits (Table 4.2). The risk of atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease and heart failure (see Section 10, “Cardiovascular Disease and Risk Management,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S010), chronic kidney disease staging (see Section 11, “Chronic Kidney Disease and Risk Management,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S011), presence of retinopathy (see Section 12, “Retinopathy, Neuropathy, and Foot Care,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S012), and risk of treatment-associated hypoglycemia (Table 4.3) should be used to individualize targets for glycemia (see Section 6, “Glycemic Targets,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S006), blood pressure, and lipids and to select specific glucose-lowering medication (see Section 9, “Pharmacologic Approaches to Glycemic Treatment,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S009), antihypertension medication, and statin treatment intensity.

Additional referrals should be arranged as necessary (Table 4.4). Clinicians should ensure that individuals with diabetes are appropriately screened for complications and comorbidities. Discussing and implementing an approach to glycemic control with the patient is a part, not the sole goal, of the patient encounter.

IMMUNIZATIONS

Recommendation 4.6 Provide routinely recommended vaccinations for children and adults with diabetes as indicated by age (see Table 4.5 for highly recommended vaccinations for adults with diabetes). A

The importance of routine vaccinations for people with diabetes has been elevated by the coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) pandemic. Preventing avoidable infections not only directly prevents morbidity but also reduces hospitalizations, which may additionally reduce risk of acquiring infections such as COVID-19. Children and adults with diabetes should receive vaccinations according to age-appropriate recommendations (14,15). The Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) provides vaccination schedules specifically for children, adolescents, and adults with diabetes (see www.cdc.gov/vaccines/). The CDC Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP) makes recommendations based on its own review and rating of the evidence, provided in Table 4.5 for selected vaccinations. The ACIP evidence review has evolved over time with the adoption of Grading of Recommendations Assessment, Development and Evaluation (GRADE) in 2010 and then the Evidence to Decision or Evidence to Recommendation frameworks.
### Table 4.1 - Components of the comprehensive diabetes medical evaluation at initial, follow-up, and annual visits

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST MEDICAL AND FAMILY HISTORY</strong></th>
<th><strong>INITIAL VISIT</strong></th>
<th><strong>EVERY FOLLOW-UP VISIT</strong></th>
<th><strong>ANNUAL VISIT</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Diabetes history</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Characteristics at onset (e.g., age, symptoms)</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Review of previous treatment regimens and response</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Assess frequency/cause/severity of past hospitalizations</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Family history</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Family history of diabetes in a first-degree relative</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Family history of autoimmune disorder</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Personal history of complications and common comorbidities</strong></td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Common comorbidities (e.g., obesity, OSA, NAFLD)</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- High blood pressure or abnormal lipids</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Macrovascular and microvascular complications</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Hypoglycemia: awareness/frequency/causes/timing of episodes</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Presence of hemoglobinopathies or anemias</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Last dental visit</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Last dilated eye exam</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Visits to specialists</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Interval history</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Changes in medical/family history since last visit</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BEHAVIORAL FACTORS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Eating patterns and weight history</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Assess familiarity with carbohydrate counting (e.g., type 1 diabetes, type 2 diabetes treated with MDI)</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Physical activity and sleep behaviors</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Tobacco, alcohol, and substance use</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MEDICATIONS AND VACCINATIONS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Current medication regimen</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Medication-taking behavior</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Medication intolerance or side effects</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Complementary and alternative medicine use</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Vaccination history and needs</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>TECHNOLOGY USE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Assess use of health apps, online education, patient portals, etc.</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Glucose monitoring (meter/CGM): results and data use</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Review insulin pump settings and use, connected pen and glucose data</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SOCIAL LIFE ASSESSMENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Identify existing social supports</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Identify surrogate decision maker, advanced care plan</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Identify social determinants of health (e.g., food security, housing stability &amp; homelessness, transportation access, financial security, community safety)</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
<td>✔️</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Continued on p. S50*
In 2018 (16). Here we discuss the particular importance of specific vaccines.

**Influenza**

Influenza is a common, preventable infectious disease associated with high mortality and morbidity in vulnerable populations, including youth, older adults, and people with chronic diseases. Influenza vaccination in people with diabetes has been found to significantly reduce influenza and diabetes-related hospital admissions (17). In patients with diabetes and cardiovascular disease, influenza vaccine has been associated with lower risk of all-cause mortality, cardiovascular mortality, and cardiovascular events (18). Given the benefits of the annual influenza vaccination, it is recommended for all individuals ≥6 months of age who do not have a contraindication. Influenza vaccination is critically important in the next year as the severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2) and influenza viruses will both be active in the U.S. during the 2021–2022 season (19). The live attenuated influenza vaccine, which is delivered by nasal spray, is an option for patients who are age 2 years through age 49 years and who are...
not pregnant, but patients with chronic conditions such as diabetes are cautioned against taking the live attenuated influenza vaccine and are instead recommended to receive the inactive or recombinant influenza vaccination. For individuals ≥65 years of age, there may be additional benefit from the high-dose quadrivalent inactivated influenza vaccine (19).

Table 4.2—Assessment and treatment plan*
Assessing risk of diabetes complications
- ASCVD and heart failure history
- ASCVD risk factors and 10-year ASCVD risk assessment
- Staging of chronic kidney disease (see Table 11.1)
- Hypoglycemia risk (see Table 4.3)
- Assessment for retinopathy
- Assessment for neuropathy

Goal setting
- Set A1C/blood glucose/time in range target
- If hypertension is present, establish blood pressure target
- Diabetes self-management goals

Therapeutic treatment plans
- Lifestyle management
- Pharmacologic therapy: glucose lowering
- Pharmacologic therapy: cardiovascular and renal disease risk factors
- Use of glucose monitoring and insulin delivery devices
- Referral to diabetes education and medical specialists (as needed)

ASCVD, atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease. *Assessment and treatment planning are essential components of initial and all follow-up visits.

Table 4.3—Assessment of hypoglycemia risk
Factors that increase risk of treatment-associated hypoglycemia
- Use of insulin or insulin secretagogues (i.e., sulfonylureas, meglitinides)
- Impaired kidney or hepatic function
- Longer duration of diabetes
- Frailty and older age
- Cognitive impairment
- Impaired counterregulatory response, hypoglycemia unawareness
- Physical or intellectual disability that may impair behavioral response to hypoglycemia
- Alcohol use
- Polypharmacy (especially ACE inhibitors, angiotensin receptor blockers, nonselective β-blockers)
- History of severe hypoglycemic event

In addition to individual risk factors, consider use of comprehensive risk prediction models (105).

See references 106–110.

Table 4.4—Referrals for initial care management
- Eye care professional for annual dilated eye exam
- Family planning for women of reproductive age
- Registered dietitian nutritionist for medical nutrition therapy
- Diabetes self-management education and support
- Dentist for comprehensive dental and periodontal examination
- Mental health professional, if indicated
- Audiology, if indicated
- Social worker/community resources, if indicated

Pneumococcal Pneumonia
Like influenza, pneumococcal pneumonia is a common, preventable disease. People with diabetes are at increased risk for the bacteremic form of pneumococcal infection and have been reported to have a high risk of nosocomial bacteremia, with a mortality rate as high as 50% (20). There are two vaccination types, the 23-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine (PPSV23) and the 13-valent pneumococcal conjugate vaccine (PCV13), with distinct schedules for children and adults.

All children are recommended to receive a four-dose series of PCV13 by 15 months of age. For children with diabetes who have incomplete series by ages 2–5 years, the CDC recommends a catch-up schedule to ensure that these children have four doses. Children with diabetes between 6–18 years of age are also advised to receive one dose of PPSV23, preferably after receipt of PCV13.

For adults with diabetes, one dose of PPSV23 is recommended between the ages of 19 and 64 years and another dose at ≥65 years of age. The PCV13 is no longer routinely recommended for patients over 65 years of age because of the declining rates of pneumonia attributable to these strains (21). Older patients should have a shared decision-making discussion with their provider to determine individualized risks and benefits. PCV13 is recommended for patients with immunocompromising conditions such as asplenia, advanced kidney disease, cochlear implants, or cerebrospinal fluid leaks (22). Some older patients residing in assisted living facilities may also consider PCV13. If the PCV13 is to be administered, it should be given prior to the next dose of PPSV23.

Hepatitis B
Compared with the general population, people with type 1 or type 2 diabetes have higher rates of hepatitis B. This may be due to contact with infected blood or through improper equipment use (glucose monitoring devices or infected needles). Because of the higher likelihood of transmission, hepatitis B vaccine is recommended for adults with diabetes aged <60 years. For adults aged ≥60 years, hepatitis B vaccine may be administered at the discretion of the treating clinician based on the patient’s likelihood of acquiring hepatitis B infection.

COVID-19
As of August 2021, the COVID-19 vaccines are recommended for all adults and some children, including people with diabetes, under full approval of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration. The three options in the U.S. are the mRNA vaccines from Pfizer-BioNTech and
### Table 4.5—Highly recommended immunizations for adult patients with diabetes (Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vaccination</th>
<th>Age-group recommendations</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>GRADE evidence type*</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hepatitis B</td>
<td>&lt;60 years of age; ≥60 years of age discuss with health care provider</td>
<td>Two- or three-dose series</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Use of Hepatitis B Vaccination for Adults With Diabetes Mellitus: Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP) (111)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human papilloma virus (HPV)</td>
<td>≥26 years of age; 27–45 years of age may also be vaccinated against HPV after a discussion with health care provider</td>
<td>Three doses over 6 months</td>
<td>2 for females, 3 for males</td>
<td>Meites et al., Human Papillomavirus Vaccination for Adults: Updated Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (112)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Influenza</td>
<td>All patients; advised not to receive live attenuated influenza vaccine</td>
<td>Annual</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>Demicheli et al., Vaccines for Preventing Influenza in the Elderly (113)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumonia (PPSV23 [Pneumovax])</td>
<td>19–64 years of age, vaccinate with Pneumovax</td>
<td>One dose</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Updated Recommendations for Prevention of Invasive Pneumococcal Disease Among Adults Using the 23-Valent Pneumococcal Polysaccharide Vaccine (PPSV23) (114)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>≥65 years of age, obtain second dose of Pneumovax, at least 5 years from prior Pneumovax vaccine</td>
<td>One dose, if PCV13 has been given, then give PPSV23 ≥1 year after PCV13 and ≥5 years after any PPSV23 at age &lt;65 years</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Falkenhorst et al., Effectiveness of the 23-Valent Pneumococcal Polysaccharide Vaccine (PPV23) Against Pneumococcal Disease in the Elderly: Systematic Review and Meta-analysis (115)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumonia (PCV13 [Prevnar])</td>
<td>Adults ≥19 of age, with an immunocompromising condition (e.g., chronic renal failure), cochlear implant, or cerebrospinal fluid leak; 19–64 years of age, immunocompetent, no recommendation; ≥65 years of age, immunocompetent, have shared decision-making discussion with health care provider</td>
<td>One dose</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Matanock et al., Use of 13-Valent Pneumococcal Conjugate Vaccine and 23-Valent Pneumococcal Polysaccharide Vaccine Among Adults Aged ≥65 Years: Updated Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (21)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetanus, diphtheria, pertussis (TDAP)</td>
<td>All adults; pregnant women should have an extra dose</td>
<td>Booster every 10 years</td>
<td>2 for effectiveness, 3 for safety</td>
<td>Havers et al., Use of Tetanus Toxoid, Reduced Diphtheria Toxoid, and Acellular Pertussis Vaccines: Updated Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices—United States, 2019 (116)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Continued on p. S53
Modern and the recombinant, replication-competent adenovirus serotype 26 (Ad26) vector vaccine from Janssen. Pfizer-BioNTech vaccine is recommended for people aged 12 years and older, with a grade 1 evidence rating for the prevention of symptomatic COVID-19 (23,24). It is given as a two-shot series 21 days apart. Moderna vaccine is recommended for people aged 18 years and older, with a grade 1 evidence rating for prevention of symptomatic COVID-19 (23). It is given as a two-shot series 28 days apart. Janssen vaccine is also recommended for people aged 18 years and older, with a grade 2 evidence rating (25). Unlike the mRNA vaccines, only one shot is required. Evidence regarding the efficacy of mixing vaccines is still emerging. Booster vaccine recommendations are also evolving, with the CDC just recently recommending the Pfizer-BioNTech booster for older adults and those with underlying conditions such as diabetes. The COVID-19 vaccine will likely become a routine part of the annual preventive schedule for people with diabetes.

**Autoimmune Diseases**

**Recommendations**

4.7 Patients with type 1 diabetes should be screened for autoimmune thyroid disease soon after diagnosis and periodically thereafter. B

4.8 Adult patients with type 1 diabetes should be screened for celiac disease in the presence of gastrointestinal symptoms, signs, or laboratory manifestations suggestive of celiac disease. B

People with type 1 diabetes are at increased risk for other autoimmune diseases, with thyroid disease, celiac disease, and pernicious anemia (vitamin B12 deficiency) being among the most common (31). Other associated conditions include autoimmune hepatitis, primary adrenal insufficiency (Addison disease), collagen vascular diseases, and myasthenia gravis (32–35). Type 1 diabetes may also occur with other autoimmune diseases in the context of specific genetic disorders or polyglandular autoimmune syndromes (36). Given the high prevalence, nonspecific symptoms, and insidious onset of primary hypothyroidism, routine screening for thyroid dysfunction is recommended for all patients with type 1 diabetes. Screening for celiac disease should be considered in adult patients with suggestive symptoms (e.g., diarrhea, malabsorption, abdominal pain) or signs (e.g., osteoporosis, vitamin deficiencies, iron deficiency anemia) (37,38). Measurement of vitamin B12 levels should be considered for patients with type 1 diabetes and peripheral neuropathy or unexplained anemia.

**Cancer**

Diabetes is associated with increased risk of cancers of the liver, pancreas, endometrium, colon/rectum, breast, and bladder (39). The association may result from shared risk factors between type 2 diabetes and cancer (older age, obesity, and physical inactivity) but may also be due to diabetes-related factors (40), such as underlying disease physiology or diabetes treatments, although evidence for these links is scarce. Patients with diabetes should be encouraged to undergo recommended age- and sex-appropriate cancer screenings and to reduce their modifiable cancer risk factors (obesity, physical inactivity, and smoking). New onset of atypical diabetes (lean body habitus, negative family history) in a middle-aged or older patient may precede the diagnosis of pancreatic adenocarcinoma (41). However, in the absence of other symptoms (e.g., weight loss, abdominal pain), routine screening of all such patients is not currently recommended.

**Cognitive Impairment/Dementia**

**Recommendation**

4.9 In the presence of cognitive impairment, diabetes treatment regimens should be simplified as much as possible and tailored to minimize the risk of hypoglycemia. B

Diabetes is associated with a significantly increased risk and rate of cognitive decline and an increased risk of dementia (42,43). A recent meta-analysis of prospective observational studies in people with diabetes showed 73% increased risk of all types of dementia, 56% increased

---

**Table 4.5—Continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vaccination</th>
<th>Age-group recommendations</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>GRADE evidence type*</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zoster</td>
<td>≥50 years of age</td>
<td>Two-dose Shingrix, even if previously vaccinated</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Dooling et al., Recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices for Use of Herpes Zoster Vaccines (117)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GRADE,** Grading of Recommendations Assessment, Development and Evaluation; PCV13, 13-valent pneumococcal conjugate vaccine; PPSV23, 23-valent pneumococcal polysaccharide vaccine. *Evidence type: 1 = randomized controlled trials (RCTs), or overwhelming evidence from observational studies; 2 = RCTs with important limitations, or exceptionally strong evidence from observational studies; 3 = observational studies, or RCTs with notable limitations; and 4 = clinical experience and observations, observational studies with important limitations, or RCTs with several major limitations. For a comprehensive list, refer to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention at www.cdc.gov/vaccines/.
risk of Alzheimer dementia, and 127% increased risk of vascular dementia compared with individuals without diabetes (44). The reverse is also true: people with Alzheimer dementia are more likely to develop diabetes than people without Alzheimer dementia. In a 15-year prospective study of community-dwelling people >60 years of age, the presence of diabetes at baseline significantly increased the age- and sex-adjusted incidence of all-cause dementia, Alzheimer dementia, and vascular dementia compared with rates in those with normal glucose tolerance (45). See Section 13, “Older Adults” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S013), for a more detailed discussion regarding screening for cognitive impairment.

**Hyperglycemia**

In those with type 2 diabetes, the degree and duration of hyperglycemia are related to dementia. More rapid cognitive decline is associated with both increased A1C and longer duration of diabetes (44). The Action to Control Cardiovascular Risk in Diabetes (ACCORD) study found that each 1% higher A1C level was associated with lower cognitive function in individuals with type 2 diabetes (46). However, the ACCORD study found no difference in cognitive outcomes in participants randomly assigned to intensive and standard glycemic control, supporting the recommendation that intensive glucose control should not be advised for the improvement of cognitive function in individuals with type 2 diabetes (47).

**Hypoglycemia**

In type 2 diabetes, severe hypoglycemia is associated with reduced cognitive function, and those with poor cognitive function have more severe hypoglycemia. In a long-term study of older patients with type 2 diabetes, individuals with one or more recorded episodes of severe hypoglycemia had a stepwise increase in risk of dementia (48). Likewise, the ACCORD trial found that as cognitive function decreased, the risk of severe hypoglycemia increased (49). Tailoring glycemic therapy may help to prevent hypoglycemia in individuals with cognitive dysfunction. See Section 13, “Older Adults” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S013), for more detailed discussion of hypoglycemia in older patients with type 1 and type 2 diabetes.

**Nutrition**

In one study, adherence to the Mediterranean diet correlated with improved cognitive function (50). However, a recent Cochrane review found insufficient evidence to recommend any specific dietary change for the prevention or treatment of cognitive dysfunction (51).

**Statin**

A systematic review has reported that data do not support an adverse effect of statins on cognition (52). The U.S. Food and Drug Administration postmarketing surveillance databases have also revealed a low reporting rate for cognitive-related adverse events, including cognitive dysfunction or dementia, with statin therapy, similar to rates seen with other commonly prescribed cardiovascular medications (52). Therefore, fear of cognitive decline should not be a barrier to statin use in individuals with diabetes and a high risk for cardiovascular disease.

**Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease**

**Recommendation 4.10** Patients with type 2 diabetes or prediabetes and elevated liver enzymes (ALT) or fatty liver on ultrasound should be evaluated for presence of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis and liver fibrosis.

Diabetes is associated with the development of nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD), including its more severe manifestations of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH), liver fibrosis, cirrhosis, and hepatocellular carcinoma (53). Elevations of hepatic transaminase concentrations are associated with higher BMI, waist circumference, and triglyceride levels and lower HDL cholesterol levels. Noninvasive tests, such as elastography or fibrosis biomarkers, may be used to assess risk of fibrosis, but referral to a liver specialist and liver biopsy may be required for definitive diagnosis (54). Interventions that improve metabolic abnormalities in patients with diabetes (weight loss, glycemic control, and treatment with specific drugs for hyperglycemia or dyslipidemia) are also beneficial for fatty liver disease (55,56). Pioglitazone, vitamin E treatment, liraglutide, and semaglutide treatment of biopsy-proven NASH have each been shown to improve liver histology, but effects on longer-term clinical outcomes are not known (57–59). Treatment with other glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonists and with sodium–glucose cotransporter 2 inhibitors has shown promise in preliminary studies, although benefits may be mediated, at least in part, by weight loss (59–61).

The American Gastroenterological Association convened an international conference, including representatives of the ADA, to review and discuss published literature on burden, screening, risk stratification, diagnosis, and management of individuals with NAFLD, including NASH (62). Please see the special report “Preparing for the NASH Epidemic: A Call to Action” for full details (62). Significant gaps were identified, including gaps in knowledge in who to screen and how to diagnose and treat patients at high risk for NASH. In patients with suspected NAFLD, diagnosis consists of evaluating patients for alternative or coexisting causes of liver disease through history and laboratory testing. In patients with NAFLD/NASH, risk stratification with noninvasive fibrosis scores was suggested.

**Table 4.6**, reproduced from the special report, summarizes the management recommendations for patients with NAFLD and NASH, and **Table 4.7** presents the summary of published NAFLD guidelines included in the the report (62). Further research and interdisciplinary consensus are required to fully define screening, referral, and diagnostic pathways.

**Hepatitis C Infection**

Infection with hepatitis C virus (HCV) is associated with a higher prevalence of type 2 diabetes, which is present in up to one-third of individuals with chronic HCV infection. HCV may impair glucose metabolism by several mechanisms, including directly via viral proteins and indirectly by altering proinflammatory cytokine levels (63). The use of newer direct-acting antiviral drugs produces a sustained virological response (cure) in nearly all cases and has been reported to improve glucose metabolism in individuals with diabetes (64). A meta-analysis of mostly observational studies...
found a mean reduction in A1C levels of 0.45% (95% CI −0.60 to −0.30) and reduced requirement for glucose-lowering medication use following successful eradication of HCV infection (65).

Pancreatitis
Diabetes is linked to diseases of the exocrine pancreas such as pancreatitis, which may disrupt the global architecture or physiology of the pancreas, often resulting in both exocrine and endocrine dysfunction. Up to half of patients with diabetes may have some degree of impaired exocrine pancreas function (66). People with diabetes are at an approximately twofold higher risk of developing acute pancreatitis (67).

Conversely, prediabetes and/or diabetes has been found to develop in approximately one-third of patients after an episode of acute pancreatitis (68); thus, the relationship is likely bidirectional. Postacute pancreatitis diabetes may include either new-onset disease or previously unrecognized diabetes (69). Studies of patients treated with incretin-based therapies for diabetes have also reported that pancreatitis may occur more frequently with these medications, but results have been mixed and causality has not been established (70–72).

Islet autotransplantation should be considered for patients requiring total pancreatectomy for medically refractory chronic pancreatitis to prevent postsurgical diabetes. Approximately one-third of patients undergoing total pancreatectomy with islet autotransplantation are insulin free 1 year postoperatively, and observational studies from different centers have demonstrated islet graft function up to a decade after the surgery in some patients (73–77). Both patient and disease factors should be carefully considered when deciding the indications and timing of this surgery. Surgeries should be performed in skilled facilities that have demonstrated expertise in islet autotransplantation.

Fractures
Age-specific hip fracture risk is significantly increased in both people with type 1 diabetes (relative risk 6.3) and those with type 2 diabetes (relative risk 1.7) in both sexes (78). Type 1 diabetes is associated with osteoporosis, but in type 2 diabetes, an increased risk of hip fracture is seen despite higher bone mineral density (BMD) (79). In three large observational studies of older adults, femoral neck BMD T-score and the World Health Organization Fracture Risk Assessment Tool (FRAX) score were associated with hip and nonspine fractures. Fracture risk was higher in participants with diabetes compared with those without diabetes for a given T-score and age or for a given FRAX score (80). Providers should assess fracture history and risk factors in older patients with diabetes and recommend measurement of BMD if appropriate for the patient’s age and sex. Fracture prevention strategies for people with diabetes are the same as for the general population and may include vitamin D supplementation. For patients with type 2 diabetes with fracture risk factors, thiazolidinediones (81) and sodium–glucose cotransporter 2 inhibitors (82) should be used with caution.

Sensory Impairment
Hearing impairment, both in high-frequency and low- to midfrequency ranges, is more common in people with diabetes than in those without, with stronger associations found in studies of younger people (83). Proposed pathophysiologic mechanisms include the combined contributions of hyperglycemia and oxidative stress to cochlear microangiopathy and auditory neuropathy (84). In a National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES) analysis, hearing impairment was about twice as prevalent in people with diabetes compared with those without, after adjusting for age and other risk factors for hearing impairment (85). Low HDL cholesterol, coronary heart disease, peripheral neuropathy, and general poor health have been reported as risk factors for hearing impairment for people with diabetes, but an association of hearing loss with blood glucose levels has not been consistently observed (86). In the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial/Epidemiology of Diabetes Intervention and Complications (DCCT/EDIC) cohort, time-weighted mean A1C was associated with increased risk of hearing impairment when tested after long-term (>20 years) follow-up (87). Impairment in smell, but not taste, has also been reported in individuals with diabetes (88).

Low Testosterone in Men

Recommendation
4.11 In men with diabetes who have symptoms or signs of hypogonadism, such as decreased sexual desire (libido) or activity, or

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Variable</th>
<th>Lifestyle intervention*</th>
<th>Liver-directed pharmacotherapy</th>
<th>Diabetes care (in individuals with diabetes)</th>
<th>Cardiovascular risk reduction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NAFLD</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Standard of care</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NASH with fibrosis stage 0 or 1 (F0, F1)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Standard of care</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NASH with fibrosis stage 2 or 3 (F2, F3)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Pioglitazone, GLP-1 receptor agonists†</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NASH cirrhosis (F4)</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Individual‡</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NAFLD, nonalcoholic fatty liver disease; NASH, nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. *All patients require regular physical activity and healthy diet and to avoid excess alcohol intake; weight loss recommended. †Among glucagon-like peptide 1 (GLP-1) receptor agonists, semaglutide has the best evidence of benefit in patients with NASH and fibrosis. ‡Evidence for efficacy of pharmacotherapy in patients with NASH cirrhosis is very limited and should be individualized and used with caution. Adapted from “Preparing for the NASH Epidemic: A Call to Action” (62).
Mean levels of testosterone are lower in men with diabetes compared with age-matched men without diabetes, but obesity is a major confounder (89,90). Testosterone replacement in men with symptomatic hypogonadism may have benefits including improved sexual function, well-being, muscle mass and strength, and bone density (91). In men with diabetes who have symptoms or signs of low testosterone (hypogonadism), a morning total testosterone level should be measured using an accurate and reliable assay (92). In men who have total testosterone levels close to the lower limit, it is reasonable to determine free testosterone concentrations either directly from equilibrium dialysis assays or by calculations that use total testosterone, sex hormone binding globulin, and albumin concentrations (92). Please see the Endocrine Society clinical practice guideline for detailed recommendations (92). Further tests (such as luteinizing hormone and follicle-stimulating hormone levels) may be needed to further evaluate the patient. Testosterone replacement in older men with hypogonadism has been associated with increased coronary artery plaque volume, with no conclusive evidence that testosterone supplementation is associated with increased cardiovascular risk in hypogonadal men (92).

### Obstructive Sleep Apnea
Age-adjusted rates of obstructive sleep apnea, a risk factor for cardiovascular disease, are significantly higher (4- to 10-fold) with obesity, especially with central obesity (93). The prevalence of obstructive sleep apnea in the population with type 2 diabetes may be as high as 23%, and the prevalence of any sleep-disordered breathing may be as high as 58% (94,95). In participants with obesity enrolled in the Action for Health in Diabetes (Look AHEAD) trial, it exceeded 80% (96). Patients with symptoms suggestive of obstructive sleep apnea (e.g., excessive daytime sleepiness, snoring, witnessed apnea) should be considered for screening (97). Sleep apnea treatment (lifestyle modification, continuous positive airway pressure, oral appliances, and surgery) significantly improves quality of life and blood pressure control. The evidence for a treatment effect on glycemic control is mixed (98).

### Periodontal Disease
Periodontal disease is more severe, and may be more prevalent, in patients with diabetes than in those without and has been associated with higher A1C levels (99–101). Longitudinal studies suggest that people with periodontal disease have higher rates of incident diabetes. Current evidence suggests that periodontal disease adversely affects diabetes outcomes, although evidence for treatment benefits remains controversial (30,102). In a randomized clinical trial, intensive periodontal treatment was associated with better glycemic control (A1C 8.3% vs. 7.8% in control subjects and the intensive-treatment group, respectively) and reduction in inflammatory markers after 12 months of follow-up (103).

### References
5. Diabetes Control and Complications Trial Research Group; Nathan DM, Genthosh S, Lachin J,


33. Triolo TM, Armstrong TK, McFann K, et al. Additional autoimmune disease found in 33% of patients at type 1 diabetes onset. Diabetes Care 2011;34:1211–1213


47. Lauher LJ, Miller ME, Williamson JD, et al.; ACCORD MIND investigators. Effects of intensive glucose lowering on brain structure and function in people with type 2 diabetes (ACCORD MIND):
a randomised open-label substudy. Lancet Neurol 2011;10:969–977
5. Facilitating Behavior Change and Well-being to Improve Health Outcomes: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2022

The American Diabetes Association (ADA) “Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes” includes the ADA’s current clinical practice recommendations and is intended to provide the components of diabetes care, general treatment goals and guidelines, and tools to evaluate quality of care. Members of the ADA Professional Practice Committee, a multidisciplinary expert committee (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SPPC), are responsible for updating the Standards of Care annually, or more frequently as warranted. For a detailed description of ADA standards, statements, and reports, as well as the evidence-grading system for ADA’s clinical practice recommendations, please refer to the Standards of Care Introduction (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SINT). Readers who wish to comment on the Standards of Care are invited to do so at professional.diabetes.org/SOC.

Building positive health behaviors and maintaining psychological well-being are foundational for achieving diabetes treatment goals and maximizing quality of life (1,2). Essential to achieving these goals are diabetes self-management education and support (DSMES), medical nutrition therapy (MNT), routine physical activity, smoking cessation counseling when needed, and psychosocial care. Following an initial comprehensive medical evaluation (see Section 4, “Comprehensive Medical Evaluation and Assessment of Comorbidities,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S004), patients and providers are encouraged to engage in person-centered collaborative care (3–6), which is guided by shared decision-making in treatment regimen selection; facilitation of obtaining medical, psychosocial, and technology resources as needed; and shared monitoring of agreed-upon regimens and behavioral goals (7,8). Reevaluation during routine care should include assessment of medical, behavioral, and mental health outcomes, especially during times of deterioration in health and well-being.

DIABETES SELF-MANAGEMENT EDUCATION AND SUPPORT

**Recommendations**

**5.1 In accordance with the national standards for diabetes self-management education and support, all people with diabetes should participate in diabetes self-management education and receive the support needed to facilitate the knowledge, decision-making, and skills mastery for diabetes self-care. A**
5.2 There are four critical times to evaluate the need for diabetes self-management education to promote skills acquisition in support of regimen implementation, medical nutrition therapy, and well-being: at diagnosis, annually and/or when not meeting treatment targets, when complicating factors develop (medical, physical, psychosocial), and when transitions in life and care occur. 

5.3 Clinical outcomes, health status, and well-being are key goals of diabetes self-management education and support that should be measured as part of routine care.

5.4 Diabetes self-management education and support should be patient-centered, may be offered in group or individual settings, and should be communicated with the entire diabetes care team.

5.5 Digital coaching and digital self-management interventions can be effective methods to deliver diabetes self-management education and support.

5.6 Because diabetes self-management education and support can improve outcomes and reduce costs, reimbursement by third-party payers is recommended.

5.7 Barriers to diabetes self-management education and support exist at the health system, payer, provider, and patient levels. Efforts to identify and address barriers to diabetes self-management education and support should be prioritized.

5.8 Some barriers to diabetes self-management education and support access may be mitigated through telemedicine approaches.

DSMES services facilitate the knowledge, decision-making, and skills mastery necessary for optimal diabetes self-care and incorporate the needs, goals, and life experiences of the person with diabetes. The overall objectives of DSMES are to support informed decision-making, self-care behaviors, problem-solving, and active collaboration with the health care team to improve clinical outcomes, health status, and well-being in a cost-effective manner. Providers are encouraged to consider the burden of treatment and the patient’s level of confidence and self-efficacy for management behaviors as well as the level of social and family support when providing DSMES. Patient engagement in self-management behaviors and their effects on clinical outcomes, health status, and quality of life, as well as the psychosocial factors impacting the person’s ability to self-manage, should be monitored as part of routine clinical care. A randomized controlled trial (RCT) testing a decision-making education and skill-building program showed that addressing these targets improved health outcomes in a population in need of health care resources. Furthermore, following a DSMES curriculum improves quality of care.

5.6 Digital coaching and digital self-management interventions can be effective methods to deliver diabetes self-management education and support.

5.7 Barriers to diabetes self-management education and support exist at the health system, payer, provider, and patient levels. Efforts to identify and address barriers to diabetes self-management education and support should be prioritized.

5.8 Some barriers to diabetes self-management education and support access may be mitigated through telemedicine approaches.

5.8 Some barriers to diabetes self-management education and support access may be mitigated through telemedicine approaches.

DSMES focuses on supporting patient empowerment by providing people with diabetes the tools to make informed self-management decisions. Diabetes care requires an approach that places the person with diabetes and their family and/or support system at the center of the care model, working in collaboration with health care professionals. Patient-centered care is respectful and responsive to individual preferences, needs, and values. It ensures that patient values guide all decision-making.

Evidence for the Benefits

Studies have found that DSMES is associated with improved diabetes knowledge and self-care behaviors, lower A1C, lower self-reported weight, improved quality of life, reduced all-cause mortality risk, positive coping behaviors, and reduced health care costs. Better outcomes were reported for DSMES interventions that were more than 10 h over the course of 6–12 months, included ongoing support, were culturally and age appropriate, were tailored to individual needs and preferences, and addressed psychosocial issues and incorporated behavioral strategies. Individual and group approaches are effective, with a slight benefit realized by those who engage in both.

Emerging evidence demonstrates the benefit of telemedicine or internet-based DSMES services for diabetes prevention and the management of type 2 diabetes.

Technologies such as mobile apps, simulation tools, digital coaching, and digital self-management interventions can be used to deliver DSMES. These methods provide comparable or even improved outcomes compared with traditional in-person care. Greater A1C reductions are demonstrated with increased patient engagement, although data from trials is preliminary in nature and quite heterogeneous.
Technology-enabled diabetes self-management solutions improve A1C most effectively when there is two-way communication between the patient and the health care team, individualized feedback, use of patient-generated health data, and education (40). Incorporating a systematic approach for technology assessment, adoption, and integration into the care plan may help ensure equity in access and standardized application of technology-enabled solutions (8,50-53).

Current research supports diabetes care and education specialists including nurses, dietitians, and pharmacists as providers of DSMES who may also tailor curriculum to the person’s needs (54–56). Members of the DSMES team should have specialized clinical knowledge in diabetes and behavior change principles. In addition, a diabetes care and education specialist needs to be knowledgeable about technology-enabled services and may serve as a technology champion within their practice (50). Certification as a diabetes care and education specialist (see www.cbdcne.org/) and/or board certification in advanced diabetes management (see www.diabeteseducator.org/education/certification/bc_adm) demonstrates an individual’s specialized training in and understanding of diabetes management and support (13), and engagement with qualified providers has been shown to improve disease-related outcomes. Additionally, there is growing evidence for the role of community health workers (57,58), as well as peer (57–62) and lay leaders (63), in providing ongoing support.

Evidence suggests people with diabetes who completed more than 10 h of DSMES over the course of 6–12 months and those who participated on an ongoing basis had significant reductions in mortality (24) and A1C (decrease of 0.57%) (20) compared with those who spent less time with a diabetes care and education specialist. Given individual needs and access to resources, a variety of culturally adapted DSMES programs need to be offered in a variety of settings. Use of technology to facilitate access to DSMES services, support self-management decisions, and decrease therapeutic inertia suggests that these approaches need broader adoption.

DSMES is associated with an increased use of primary care and preventive services (26,52,64) and less frequent use of acute care and inpatient hospital services (22). Patients who participate in DSMES are more likely to follow best practice treatment recommendations, particularly among the Medicare population, and have lower Medicare and insurance claim costs (27,64). Despite these benefits, reports indicate that only 5–7% of individuals eligible for DSMES through Medicare or a private insurance plan actually receive it (65,66). Barriers to DSMES exist at the health system, payer, provider, and patient levels. This low participation may be due to lack of referral or other identified barriers such as logistical issues (accessibility, timing, costs) and the lack of a perceived benefit (66). Health system, programmatic, and payer barriers include lack of administrative leadership support, limited numbers of DSMES providers, not having referral to DSMES services effectively embedded in the health system service structure, and limited reimbursement rates (67). Thus, in addition to educating referring providers about the benefits of DSMES and the critical times to refer, efforts need to be made to identify and address all of the various potential barriers (2). Alternative and innovative models of DSMES delivery (47) need to be explored and evaluated, including the integration of technology-enabled diabetes and cardiometabolic health services (8,50).

Reimbursement
Medicare reimburses DSMES when that service meets the national standards (2,13) and is recognized by the American Diabetes Association (ADA) through the Education Recognition Program (https://professional.diabetes.org/diabetes-education) or Association of Diabetes Care & Education Specialists. DSMES is also covered by most health insurance plans. Ongoing support has been shown to be instrumental for improving outcomes when it is implemented after the completion of education services. DSMES is frequently reimbursed when performed in person. However, although DSMES can also be provided via phone calls and telehealth, these remote versions may not always be reimbursed. Some barriers to DSMES access may be mitigated through teledmedicine approaches.

Changes in reimbursement policies that increase DSMES access and utilization will result in a positive impact to beneficiaries’ clinical outcomes, quality of life, health care utilization, and costs (68–70). During the time of the coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) pandemic, reimbursement policies have changed (professional.diabetes.org/content-page/dsmes-and-mnt-during-covid-19-national-pandemic), and these changes may provide a new reimbursement paradigm for future provision of DSMES through telehealth channels.

MEDICAL NUTRITION THERAPY

Please refer to the ADA consensus report “Nutrition Therapy for Adults With Diabetes or Prediabetes: A Consensus Report” for more information on nutrition therapy (56). For many individuals with diabetes, the most challenging part of the treatment plan is determining what to eat. There is not a “one-size-fits-all” eating pattern for individuals with diabetes, and meal planning should be individualized. Nutrition therapy plays an integral role in overall diabetes management, and each person with diabetes should be actively engaged in education, self-management, and treatment planning with his or her health care team, including the collaborative development of an individualized eating plan (56,71). All providers should refer people with diabetes for individualized MNT provided by a registered dietitian nutritionist (RD/RDN) who is knowledgeable and skilled in providing diabetes-specific MNT (72) at diagnosis and as needed throughout the lifespan, similar to DSMES. MNT delivered by an RD/RDN is associated with A1C absolute decreases of 1.0–1.9% for people with type 1 diabetes (73) and 0.3–2.0% for people with type 2 diabetes (73). See Table 5.1 for specific nutrition recommendations. Because of the progressive nature of type 2 diabetes, behavior modification alone may not be adequate to maintain euglycemia over time. However, after medication is initiated, nutrition therapy continues to be an important component, and RD/RDNs providing MNT in diabetes care should assess and monitor medication changes in relation to the nutrition care plan (56,71).
### Table 5.1—Medical nutrition therapy recommendations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Effectiveness of nutrition therapy         | 5.9 An individualized medical nutrition therapy program as needed to achieve treatment goals, provided by a registered dietitian nutritionist (RD/RDN), preferably one who has comprehensive knowledge and experience in diabetes care, is recommended for all people with type 1 or type 2 diabetes, prediabetes, and gestational diabetes mellitus.  
5.10 Because diabetes medical nutrition therapy can result in cost savings B and improved outcomes (e.g., A1C reduction, reduced weight, decrease in cholesterol) A, medical nutrition therapy should be adequately reimbursed by insurance and other payers. E |
| Energy balance                             | 5.11 For all patients with overweight or obesity, behavioral modification to achieve and maintain a minimum weight loss of 5% is recommended. A |
| Eating patterns and macronutrient         | 5.12 There is no ideal macronutrient pattern for people with diabetes; meal plans should be individualized while keeping total calorie and metabolic goals in mind. E  
5.13 A variety of eating patterns can be considered for the management of type 2 diabetes and to prevent diabetes in individuals with prediabetes. B  
5.14 Reducing overall carbohydrate intake for individuals with diabetes has demonstrated the most evidence for improving glycemia and may be applied in a variety of eating patterns that meet individual needs and preferences. B |
| Carbohydrates                              | 5.15 Carbohydrate intake should emphasize nutrient-dense carbohydrate sources that are high in fiber (at least 14 g fiber per 1,000 kcal) and minimally processed. Eating plans should emphasize nonstarchy vegetables, fruits, and whole grains, as well as dairy products, with minimal added sugars. B  
5.16 People with diabetes and those at risk are advised to replace sugar-sweetened beverages (including fruit juices) with water as much as possible in order to control glycemia and weight and reduce their risk for cardiovascular disease and fatty liver B and should minimize the consumption of foods with added sugar that have the capacity to displace healthier, more nutrient-dense food choices. A  
5.17 When using a flexible insulin therapy program, education on the glycemic impact of carbohydrate A, fat, and protein B should be tailored to an individual's needs and preferences and used to optimize mealtime insulin dosing. |
| Protein                                    | 5.19 In individuals with type 2 diabetes, ingested protein appears to increase insulin response without increasing plasma glucose concentrations. Therefore, carbohydrate sources high in protein should be avoided when trying to treat or prevent hypoglycemia. B |
| Dietary fat                                 | 5.20 An eating plan emphasizing elements of a Mediterranean-style eating pattern rich in monounsaturated and polyunsaturated fats may be considered to improve glucose metabolism and lower cardiovascular disease risk. B  
5.21 Eating foods rich in long-chain n-3 fatty acids, such as fatty fish (EPA and DHA) and nuts and seeds (ALA), is recommended to prevent or treat cardiovascular disease. B |
| Micronutrients and herbal supplements      | 5.22 There is no clear evidence that dietary supplementation with vitamins, minerals (such as chromium and vitamin D), herbs, or spices (such as cinnamon or aloe vera) can improve outcomes in people with diabetes who do not have underlying deficiencies, and they are not generally recommended for glycemic control. C |
| Alcohol                                    | 5.23 Adults with diabetes who drink alcohol should do so in moderation (no more than one drink per day for adult women and no more than two drinks per day for adult men). C  
5.24 Educating people with diabetes about the signs, symptoms, and self-management of delayed hypoglycemia after drinking alcohol, especially when using insulin or insulin secretagogues, is recommended. The importance of glucose monitoring after drinking alcoholic beverages to reduce hypoglycemia risk should be emphasized. B |
| Sodium                                     | 5.25 Sodium consumption should be limited to <2,300 mg/day. B |
| Nonnutritive sweeteners                    | 5.26 The use of nonnutritive sweeteners as a replacement for sugar-sweetened products may reduce overall calorie and carbohydrate intake as long as there is not a compensatory increase of energy intake from other sources. Overall, people are encouraged to decrease both sweetened and nonnutritive-sweetened beverages, with an emphasis on water intake. B |
Goals of Nutrition Therapy for Adults With Diabetes

1. To promote and support healthful eating patterns, emphasizing a variety of nutrient-dense foods in appropriate portion sizes, to improve overall health and:
   - achieve and maintain body weight goals
   - attain individualized glycemic, blood pressure, and lipid goals
   - delay or prevent the complications of diabetes
2. To address individual nutrition needs based on personal and cultural preferences, health literacy and numeracy, access to healthful foods, willingness and ability to make behavioral changes, and existing barriers to change
3. To maintain the pleasure of eating by providing nonjudgmental messages about food choices while limiting food choices only when indicated by scientific evidence
4. To provide an individual with diabetes the practical tools for developing healthy eating patterns rather than focusing on individual macronutrients, micronutrients, or single foods

Weight Management
Management and reduction of weight is important for people with type 1 diabetes, type 2 diabetes, or prediabetes with overweight or obesity. To support weight loss and improve A1C, cardiovascular disease (CVD) risk factors, and well-being in adults with overweight/obesity and prediabetes or diabetes, MNT and DSMES services should include an individualized eating plan in a format that results in an energy deficit in combination with enhanced physical activity (56). Lifestyle intervention programs should be intensive and have frequent follow-up to achieve significant reductions in excess body weight and improve clinical indicators. There is strong and consistent evidence that modest, sustained weight loss can delay the progression from prediabetes to type 2 diabetes (73–75) (see Section 3, “Prevention or Delay of Type 2 Diabetes and Associated Comorbidities,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S003) and is beneficial for the management of type 2 diabetes (see Section 8, “Obesity and Weight Management for the Prevention and Treatment of Type 2 Diabetes,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S008).

In prediabetes, the weight loss goal is 7–10% for preventing progression to type 2 diabetes (76). In conjunction with support for healthy lifestyle behaviors, medication-assisted weight loss can be considered for people at risk for type 2 diabetes when needed to achieve and sustain 7–10% weight loss (77,78) (see Section 8, “Obesity and Weight Management for the Prevention and Treatment of Type 2 Diabetes,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S008). People with prediabetes at a healthy weight should also be considered for behavioral interventions to help establish routine aerobic and resistance exercise (76,79,80), as well as to establish healthy eating patterns. Services delivered by practitioners familiar with diabetes and its management, such as an RD/RDN, have been found to be effective (72).

For many individuals with overweight and obesity with type 2 diabetes, 5% weight loss is needed to achieve beneficial outcomes in glycemic control, lipids, and blood pressure (81). It should be noted, however, that the clinical benefits of weight loss are progressive, and more intensive weight loss goals (i.e., 15%) may be appropriate to maximize benefit depending on need, feasibility, and safety (82,83). In select individuals with type 2 diabetes, an overall healthy eating plan that results in energy deficit in conjunction with weight loss medications and/or metabolic surgery should be considered to help achieve weight loss and maintenance goals, lower A1C, and reduce CVD risk (77,84,85). Overweight and obesity are also increasingly prevalent in people with type 1 diabetes and present clinical challenges regarding diabetes treatment and CVD risk factors (86,87). Sustained weight loss can be challenging (81,88) but has long-term benefits; maintaining weight loss for 5 years is associated with sustained improvements in A1C and lipid levels (89). MNT guidance from an RD/RDN with expertise in diabetes and weight management, throughout the course of a structured weight loss plan, is strongly recommended.

Along with routine medical management visits, people with diabetes and prediabetes should be screened during DSMES and MNT encounters for a history of dieting and past or current disordered eating behaviors. Nutrition therapy should be individualized to help address maladaptive eating behavior (e.g., purging) or compensatory changes in medical regimen (e.g., overtreatment of hypoglycemic episodes, reduction in medication dosing to reduce hunger) (56) (see DISORDERED EATING BEHAVIOR below). Disordered eating and/or eating disorders can increase challenges for weight and diabetes management. For example, caloric restriction may be essential for glycemic control and weight maintenance, but rigid meal plans may be contraindicated for individuals who are at increased risk of clinically significant maladaptive eating behaviors (90). If clinically significant eating disorders are identified during screening with diabete-specific questionnaires, individuals should be referred to a mental health professional as needed (1).

Studies have demonstrated that a variety of eating plans, varying in macronutrient composition, can be used effectively and safely in the short term (1–2 years) to achieve weight loss in people with diabetes. These plans include structured low-calorie meal plans with meal replacements (82,89,91), a Mediterranean-style eating pattern (92), and low-carbohydrate meal plans with additional support (93,94). However, no single approach has been proven to be consistently superior (56,95–97), and more data are needed to identify and validate those meal plans that are optimal with respect to long-term outcomes and patient acceptability. The importance of providing guidance on an individualized meal plan containing nutrient-dense foods, such as vegetables, fruits, legumes, dairy, lean sources of protein (including plant-based sources as well as lean meats, fish, and poultry), nuts, seeds, and whole grains, cannot be over emphasized (96), as well as guidance on achieving the desired energy deficit (98–101). Any approach to meal planning should be individualized considering the health status, personal preferences, and ability of the person with diabetes to sustain the recommendations in the plan.

Eating Patterns and Meal Planning
Evidence suggests that there is not an ideal percentage of calories from carbohydrate, protein, and fat for people with diabetes. Therefore, macronutrient distribution should be based on an individualized assessment of current eating patterns, preferences, and metabolic goals. Dietary
guidance should emphasize the importance of a healthy dietary pattern as a whole rather than focusing on individual nutrients, foods, or food groups, given that individuals rarely eat foods in isolation. Personal preferences (e.g., tradition, culture, religion, health beliefs and goals, economics) as well as metabolic goals need to be considered when working with individuals to determine the best eating pattern for them (56, 73,102). Members of the health care team should complement MNT by providing evidence-based guidance that helps people with diabetes make healthy food choices that meet their individualized needs and improve overall health. A variety of eating patterns are acceptable for the management of diabetes (56,103–105). Until the evidence surrounding comparative benefits of different eating patterns in specific individuals strengthens, health care providers should focus on the key factors that are common among the patterns: 1) emphasize nonstarchy vegetables, 2) minimize added sugars and refined grains, and 3) choose whole foods over highly processed foods to the extent possible (56). An individualized eating pattern also considers the individual’s health status, food and numeracy skills, resources, food preferences, and health goals. Referral to an RD/RDN is essential to assess the overall nutrition status of, and to work collaboratively with, the patient to create a personalized meal plan that coordinates and aligns with the overall treatment plan, including physical activity and medication use. The Mediterranean style (102,106–108), low-carbohydrate (109–111), and vegetarian or plant-based (107,108,112,113) eating patterns are all examples of healthful eating patterns that have shown positive results in research for individuals with type 2 diabetes, but individualized meal planning should focus on personal preferences, needs, and goals. There is currently inadequate research in type 1 diabetes to support one eating pattern over another.

For individuals with type 2 diabetes not meeting glycemic targets or for whom reducing glucose-lowering drugs is a priority, reducing overall carbohydrate intake with a low- or very-low-carbohydrate eating pattern is a viable option (109–111). As research studies on low-carbohydrate eating plans generally indicate challenges with long-term sustainability (114), it is important to reassess and individualize meal plan guidance regularly for those interested in this approach. Most individuals with diabetes report a moderate intake of carbohydrate (44–46% of total calories) (103). Efforts to modify habitual eating patterns are often unsuccessful in the long term; people generally go back to their usual macronutrient distribution (103). Thus, the recommended approach is to individualize meal plans with a macronutrient distribution that is more consistent with personal preference and usual intake to increase the likelihood for long-term maintenance.

An RCT found that two meal planning approaches were effective in helping achieve improved A1C, particularly for individuals with an A1C between 7% and 10% (115). The diabetes plate method is a commonly used visual approach for providing basic meal planning guidance. This simple graphic (featuring a 9-inch plate) shows how to portion foods (1/2 of the plate for nonstarchy vegetables, 1/4 of the plate for protein, and 1/4 of the plate for carbohydrates). Carbohydrate counting is a more advanced skill that helps plan for and track how much carbohydrate is consumed at meals and snacks. Meal planning approaches should be customized to the individual, including their numeracy (115) and food literacy level. Food literacy generally describes proficiency in food-related knowledge and skills that ultimately impact health, although specific definitions vary across initiatives (116,117).

**Carbohydrates**

Studies examining the ideal amount of carbohydrate intake for people with diabetes are inconclusive, although monitoring carbohydrate intake and considering the blood glucose response to dietary carbohydrate are key for improving postprandial glucose management (118, 119). The literature concerning glycemic index and glycemic load in individuals with diabetes is complex, often with varying definitions of low and high glycemic index foods (120,121). The glycemic index ranks carbohydrate foods on their postprandial glycemic response, and glycemic load takes into account both the glycemic index of foods and the amount of carbohydrate eaten. Studies have found mixed results regarding the effect of glycemic index and glycemic load on fasting glucose levels and A1C, with one systematic review finding no significant impact on A1C (122), while two others demonstrated A1C reductions of 0.15% (120) to 0.5% (123).

Reducing overall carbohydrate intake for individuals with diabetes has demonstrated evidence for improving glycemia and may be applied in a variety of eating patterns that meet individual needs and preferences (56). For people with type 2 diabetes, low-carbohydrate and very-low-carbohydrate eating patterns, in particular, have been found to reduce A1C and the need for antihyperglycemic medications (56,102,114,124–126). Systematic reviews and meta-analyses of RCTs found carbohydrate-restricted eating patterns, particularly those considered low-carbohydrate (<26% total energy), were effective in reducing A1C in the short term (<6 months), with less difference in eating patterns beyond 1 year (97,98,109,110,125). Part of the challenge in interpreting low-carbohydrate research has been due to the wide range of definitions for a low-carbohydrate eating plan (111,123). Weight reduction was also a goal in many low-carbohydrate studies, which further complicates evaluating the distinct contribution of the eating pattern (41,93,97,127). As research studies on low-carbohydrate eating plans generally indicate challenges with long-term sustainability (114), it is important to reassess and individualize meal plan guidance regularly for those interested in this approach. Providers should maintain consistent medical oversight and recognize that insulin and other diabetes medications may need to be adjusted to prevent hypoglycemia; and blood pressure will need to be monitored. In addition, very-low-carbohydrate eating plans are not currently recommended for women who are pregnant or lactating, children, people who have renal disease, or people with or at risk for disordered eating, and these plans should be used with caution in those taking sodium–glucose cotransporter 2 inhibitors because of the potential risk of ketoacidosis (128,129).

Regardless of amount of carbohydrate in the meal plan, focus should be placed on high-quality, nutrient-dense carbohydrate sources that are high in fiber and minimally processed. Both children and adults with diabetes are encouraged to minimize intake of refined carbohydrates.
with added sugars, fat, and sodium and instead focus on carbohydrates from vegetables, legumes, fruits, dairy (milk and yogurt), and whole grains. People with diabetes and those at risk for diabetes are encouraged to consume a minimum of 14 g of fiber/1,000 kcal, with at least half of grain consumption being whole, intact grains, according to the Dietary Guidelines for Americans (130). Regular intake of sufficient dietary fiber is associated with lower all-cause mortality in people with diabetes (131,132), and prospective cohort studies have found dietary fiber intake is inversely associated with risk of type 2 diabetes (133–135). The consumption of sugar-sweetened beverages and processed food products with high amounts of refined grains and added sugars is strongly discouraged (130,136–138), as these have the capacity to displace healthier, more nutrient-dense food choices.

Individuals with type 1 or type 2 diabetes taking insulin at mealtime should be offered intensive and ongoing education on the need to couple insulin administration with carbohydrate intake. For people whose meal schedule or carbohydrate consumption is variable, regular education to increase understanding of the relationship between carbohydrate intake and insulin needs is important. In addition, education on using insulin-to-carbohydrate ratios for meal planning can assist individuals with effectively modifying insulin dosing from meal to meal to improve glycemic management (103,118,139–142). When consuming a mixed meal that contains carbohydrates and is high in fat and/or protein, insulin dosing should not be based solely on carbohydrate counting (56). Studies have shown that dietary fat and protein can impact early and delayed postprandial glycemia (143–146), and it appears to have a dose-dependent response (147–149). Results from high-fat, high-protein meal studies highlight the need for additional insulin to cover these meals; however, more studies are needed to determine the optimal insulin dose and delivery strategy. The results from these studies also point to individual differences in postprandial glycemic response; therefore, a cautious approach to increasing insulin doses for high-fat and/or high-protein mixed meals is recommended to address delayed hyperglycemia that may occur 3 h or more after eating (56). If using an insulin pump, a split bolus feature (part of the bolus delivered immediately, the remainder over a programmed duration of time) may provide better insulin coverage for high-fat and/or high-protein mixed meals (144,150).

The effectiveness of insulin dosing decisions should be confirmed with a structured approach to blood glucose monitoring or continuous glucose monitoring to evaluate individual responses and guide insulin dose adjustments. Checking glucose 3 h after eating may help to determine if additional insulin adjustments are required (i.e., increasing or stopping bolus) (144,150,151). Refining insulin doses to account for high-fat and/or protein meals requires determination of anticipated nutrient intake to calculate the mealtime dose. Food literacy, numeracy, interest, and capability should be evaluated (56). For individuals on a fixed daily insulin schedule, meal planning should emphasize a relatively fixed carbohydrate consumption pattern with respect to both time and amount, while considering insulin action. Attention to resultant hunger and satiety cues will also help with nutrient modifications throughout the day (56,152).

**Protein**

There is no evidence that adjusting the daily level of protein intake (typically 1–1.5 g/kg body wt/day or 15–20% total calories) will improve health, and research is inconclusive regarding the ideal amount of dietary protein to optimize either glycemic management or CVD risk (121,153). Therefore, protein intake goals should be individualized based on current eating patterns. Some research has found successful management of type 2 diabetes with meal plans including slightly higher levels of protein (20–30%), which may contribute to increased satiety (154).

Historically, low-protein eating plans were advised for individuals with diabetic kidney disease (DKD) (with albuminuria and/or reduced estimated glomerular filtration rate); however, new evidence does not suggest that people with DKD need to restrict protein to less than the generally recommended protein intake (56). Reducing the amount of dietary protein below the recommended daily allowance of 0.8 g/kg is not recommended because it does not alter glycemic measures, cardiovascular risk measures, or the rate at which glomerular filtration rate declines and may increase risk for malnutrition (155,156).

In individuals with type 2 diabetes, protein intake may enhance or increase the insulin response to dietary carbohydrates (157). Therefore, use of carbohydrate sources high in protein (such as milk and nuts) to treat or prevent hypoglycemia should be avoided due to the potential concurrent rise in endogenous insulin. Providers should counsel patients to treat hypoglycemia with pure glucose (i.e., glucose tablets) or carbohydrate-containing foods at the hypoglycemia alert value of <70 mg/dL. See Section 6, “Glycemic Targets” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-0006), for more information.

**Fats**

The ideal amount of dietary fat for individuals with diabetes is controversial. New evidence suggests that there is not an ideal percentage of calories from fat for people with or at risk for diabetes and that macronutrient distribution should be individualized according to the patient’s eating patterns, preferences, and metabolic goals (56). The type of fats consumed is more important than total amount of fat when looking at metabolic goals and CVD risk, and it is recommended that the percentage of total calories from saturated fats should be limited (92,130,158–160). Multiple RCTs including patients with type 2 diabetes have reported that a Mediterranean-style eating pattern (92,161–166), rich in polyunsaturated and monounsaturated fats, can improve both glycemic management and blood lipids. Evidence does not conclusively support recommending n-3 (eicosapentaenoic acid [EPA] and docosahexaenoic acid [DHA]) supplements for all people with diabetes for the prevention or treatment of cardiovascular events (56,167,168). In individuals with type 2 diabetes, two systematic reviews with n-3 and n-6 fatty acids concluded that the dietary supplements did not improve glycemic management (121,169). In the ASCEND trial (A Study of Cardiovascular Events in Diabetes), when compared with placebo, supplementation with n-3 fatty acids at the dose of 1 g/day did not lead to cardiovascular benefit in people with diabetes.
without evidence of CVD (170). However, results from the Reduction of Cardiovascular Events With Icosapent Ethyl-Intervention Trial (REDUCE-IT) did find that supplementation with 4 g/day of pure EPA significantly lowered the risk of adverse cardiovascular events. This trial of 8,179 participants, in which over 50% had diabetes, found a 5% absolute reduction in cardiovascular events for individuals with established atherosclerotic CVD taking a preexisting statin with residual hypertriglyceridermia (135–499 mg/dL) (171). See Section 10, “Cardiovascular Disease and Risk Management” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S010), for more information. People with diabetes should be advised to follow the guidelines for the general population for the recommended intakes of saturated fat, dietary cholesterol, and trans fat (130). Trans fats should be avoided. In addition, as saturated fats are progressively decreased in the diet, they should be replaced with unsaturated fats and not with refined carbohydrates (165).

Sodium
As for the general population, people with diabetes are advised to limit their sodium consumption to <2,300 mg/day (56). Restriction to <1,500 mg, even for those with hypertension, is generally not recommended (172–174). Sodium recommendations should take into account palatability, availability, affordability, and the difficulty of achieving low-sodium recommendations in a nutritionally adequate diet (175).

Micronutrients and Supplements
There continues to be no clear evidence of benefit from herbal or nonherbal (i.e., vitamin or mineral) supplementation for people with diabetes without underlying deficiencies (56). Metformin is associated with vitamin B12 deficiency per a report from the Diabetes Prevention Program Outcomes Study (DPPOS), suggesting that periodic testing of vitamin B12 levels should be considered in patients taking metformin, particularly in those with anemia or peripheral neuropathy (176). Routine supplementation with antioxidants, such as vitamins E and C and carotene, is not advised due to lack of evidence of efficacy and concern related to long-term safety. In addition, there is insufficient evidence to support the routine use of herbal supplements and micronutrients, such as cinnamon (177), curcumin, vitamin D (178), aloe vera, or chromium, to improve glycemia in people with diabetes (56,179).

Although the Vitamin D and Type 2 Diabetes (D2d) prospective RCT showed no significant benefit of vitamin D versus placebo on the progression to type 2 diabetes in individuals at high risk (180), post hoc analyses and meta-analyses suggest a potential benefit in specific populations (180–183). Further research is needed to define patient characteristics and clinical indicators where vitamin D supplementation may be of benefit.

For special populations, including pregnant or lactating women, older adults, vegetarians, and people following very-low-calorie or low-carbohydrate diets, a multivitamin may be necessary.

Alcohol
Moderate alcohol intake does not have major detrimental effects on long-term blood glucose management in people with diabetes. Risks associated with alcohol consumption include hypoglycemia and/or delayed hypoglycemia (particularly for those using insulin or insulin secretagogue therapies), weight gain, and hyperglycemia (for those consuming excessive amounts) (56,179). People with diabetes should be educated about these risks and encouraged to monitor blood glucose frequently after drinking alcohol to minimize such risks. People with diabetes can follow the same guidelines as those without diabetes if they choose to drink. For women, no more than one drink per day, and for men, no more than two drinks per day is recommended (one drink is equal to a 12-oz beer, a 5-oz glass of wine, or 1.5 oz of distilled spirits).

Nonnutritive Sweeteners
The U.S. Food and Drug Administration has approved many nonnutritive sweeteners for consumption by the general public, including people with diabetes (56,184). For some people with diabetes who are accustomed to regularly consuming sugar-sweetened products, nonnutritive sweeteners (containing few or no calories) may be an acceptable substitute for nutritive sweeteners (those containing calories, such as sugar, honey, and agave syrup) when consumed in moderation (185,186). Nonnutritive sweeteners do not appear to have a significant effect on glycemic management (103,187,188), but they can reduce overall calorie and carbohydrate intake (103,185) as long as individuals are not compensating with additional calories from other food sources (56,189). There is mixed evidence from systematic reviews and meta-analyses for nonnutritive sweetener use with regard to weight management, with some finding benefit in weight loss (190–192), while other research suggests an association with weight gain (193). The addition of nonnutritive sweeteners to diets poses no benefit for weight loss or reduced weight gain without energy restriction (194). Low-calorie or nonnutritive-sweetened beverages may serve as a short-term replacement strategy; however, people with diabetes should be encouraged to decrease both sweetened and nonnutritive-sweetened beverages, with an emphasis on water intake (186). Additionally, some research has found that higher nonnutritive-sweetened beverage and sugar-sweetened beverage consumption may be associated with the development of type 2 diabetes, although substantial heterogeneity makes interpreting the results difficult (195–198).
Physical activity is a general term that includes all movement that increases energy use and is an important part of the diabetes management plan. Exercise is a more specific form of physical activity that is structured and designed to improve physical fitness. Both physical activity and exercise are important. Exercise has been shown to improve blood glucose control, reduce cardiovascular risk factors, contribute to weight loss, and improve well-being (199). Physical activity is as important for those with type 1 diabetes as it is for the general population, but its specific role in the prevention of diabetes complications and the management of blood glucose is not as clear as it is for those with type 2 diabetes. A recent study suggested that the percentage of people with diabetes who achieved the recommended exercise level per week (150 min) varied by race. Objective measurement by accelerometer showed that 44.2%, 42.6%, and 65.1% of Whites, African Americans, and Hispanics, respectively, met the threshold (200). It is important for diabetes care management teams to understand the difficulty that many patients have reaching recommended treatment targets and to identify individualized approaches to improve goal achievement.

Moderate to high volumes of aerobic activity are associated with substantially lower cardiovascular and overall mortality risks in both type 1 and type 2 diabetes (201). A recent prospective observational study of adults with type 1 diabetes suggested that higher amounts of physical activity led to reduced cardiovascular mortality after a mean follow-up time of 11.4 years for patients with and without chronic kidney disease (202). Additionally, structured exercise interventions of at least 8 weeks’ duration have been shown to lower A1C by an average of 0.66% in people with type 2 diabetes, even without a significant change in BMI (203). There are also considerable data for the health benefits (e.g., increased cardiovascular fitness, greater muscle strength, improved insulin sensitivity, etc.) of regular exercise for those with type 1 diabetes (204). A recent study suggested that exercise training in type 1 diabetes may also improve several important markers such as triglyceride level, LDL, waist circumference, and body mass (205). In adults with type 2 diabetes, higher levels of exercise intensity are associated with greater improvements in A1C and in cardiopulmonary fitness (206); sustained improvements in cardiopulmonary fitness and weight loss have also been associated with a lower risk of heart failure (207). Other benefits include slowing the decline in mobility among overweight patients with diabetes (208). The ADA position statement “Physical Activity/Exercise and Diabetes” reviews the evidence for the benefits of exercise in people with type 1 and type 2 diabetes and offers specific recommendations (209). Increased physical activity (soccer training) has also been shown to be beneficial for improving overall fitness in Latino men with obesity, demonstrating feasible methods to increase physical activity in an often hard-to-engage population (210). Physical activity and exercise should be recommended and prescribed to all individuals who are at risk for or with diabetes as part of management of glycemia and overall health. Specific recommendations and precautions will vary by the type of diabetes, age, activity done, and presence of diabetes-related health complications. Recommendations should be tailored to meet the specific needs of each individual (209).

Exercise and Children

All children, including children with diabetes or prediabetes, should be encouraged to engage in regular physical activity. Children should engage in at least 60 min of moderate to vigorous aerobic activity every day, with muscle- and bone-strengthening activities at least 3 days per week (211). In general, youth with type 1 diabetes benefit from being physically active, and an active lifestyle should be recommended to all (212). Youth with type 1 diabetes who engage in more physical activity may have better health outcomes and health-related quality of life (213,214).

Frequency and Type of Physical Activity

People with diabetes should perform aerobic and resistance exercise regularly (209). Aerobic activity bouts should ideally last at least 10 min, with the goal of ~30 min/day or more most days of the week for adults with type 2 diabetes. Daily exercise, or at least not allowing more than 2 days to elapse between exercise sessions, is recommended to decrease insulin resistance, regardless of diabetes type (215,216). A study in adults with type 1 diabetes found a dose-response inverse relationship between self-reported bouts of physical activity per week and A1C, BMI, hypertension, dyslipidemia, and diabetes-related complications such as hypoglycemia, diabetic ketoacidosis, retinopathy, and microalbuminuria (217). Over time, activities should progress in intensity, frequency, and/or duration to at least 150 min/week of moderate-intensity exercise. Adults able to run at 6 miles/h (9.7 km/h) for at least 25 min can benefit significantly from shorter-intensity activity (75 min/week) (209). Many adults, including most with type 2 diabetes, may be unable or unwilling to participate in such intense exercise and should engage in moderate exercise for the recommended duration. Adults with diabetes should engage in 2–3 sessions/week of resistance exercise on nonconsecutive days (218). Although heavier resistance training with free weights and weight
Flexibility and balance exercises may be effective in reducing A1C levels (224). Leisure-time physical activity was more effective in reducing A1C levels (224). A systematic review and meta-analysis found higher frequency of regular leisure-time physical activity was more effective in reducing A1C levels (224). A wide range of activities, including yoga, tai chi, and other types, can have significant impacts on A1C, flexibility, muscle strength, and balance (199,225–227). Flexibility and balance exercises may be particularly important in older adults with diabetes to maintain range of motion, strength, and balance (209).

### Physical Activity and Glycemic Control

Clinical trials have provided strong evidence for the A1C-lowering value of resistance training in older adults with type 2 diabetes (228) and for an additive benefit of combined aerobic and resistance exercise in adults with type 2 diabetes (229). If not contraindicated, patients with type 2 diabetes should be encouraged to do at least two weekly sessions of resistance exercise (exercise with free weights or weight machines), with each session consisting of at least one set (group of consecutive repetitive exercise motions) of five or more different resistance exercises involving the large muscle groups (228).

For type 1 diabetes, although exercise in general is associated with improvement in disease status, care needs to be taken in titrating exercise with respect to glycemic management. Each individual with type 1 diabetes has a variable glycemic response to exercise. This variability should be taken into consideration when recommending the type and duration of exercise for a given individual (204).

Women with preexisting diabetes, particularly type 2 diabetes, and those at risk for or presenting with gestational diabetes mellitus should be advised to engage in regular moderate physical activity prior to and during their pregnancies as tolerated (209).

#### Pre-exercise Evaluation

As discussed more fully in Section 10, “Cardiovascular Disease and Risk Management” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S010), the best protocol for assessing asymptomatic patients with diabetes for coronary artery disease remains unclear. The ADA consensus report “Screening for Coronary Artery Disease in Patients With Diabetes” (230) concluded that routine testing is not recommended. However, providers should perform a careful history, assess cardiovascular risk factors, and be aware of the atypical presentation of coronary artery disease, such as recent patient-reported or tested decrease in exercise tolerance, in patients with diabetes. Certainly, high-risk patients should be encouraged to start with short periods of low-intensity exercise and slowly increase the intensity and duration as tolerated. Providers should assess patients for conditions that might contraindicate certain types of exercise or predispose to injury, such as uncontrolled hypertension, untreated proliferative retinopathy, autonomic neuropathy, peripheral neuropathy, and a history of foot ulcers or Charcot foot. The patient’s age and previous physical activity level should be considered when customizing the exercise regimen to the individual’s needs. Those with complications may need a more thorough evaluation prior to starting an exercise program (204,231).

#### Hypoglycemia

In individuals taking insulin and/or insulin secretagogues, physical activity may cause hypoglycemia if the medication dose or carbohydrate consumption is not adjusted for the exercise bout and post-bout impact on glucose. Individuals on these therapies may need to ingest some added carbohydrate if pre-exercise glucose levels are <90 mg/dL (5.0 mmol/L), depending on whether they are able to lower insulin doses during the workout (such as with an insulin pump or reduced pre-exercise insulin dosage), the time of day exercise is done, and the intensity and duration of the activity (204,231). In some patients, hypoglycemia after exercise may occur and last for several hours due to increased insulin sensitivity. Hypoglycemia is less common in patients with diabetes who are not treated with insulin or insulin secretagogues, and no routine preventive measures for hypoglycemia are usually advised in these cases. Intense activities may actually raise blood glucose levels instead of lowering them, especially if pre-exercise glucose levels are elevated (204). Because of the variation in glycemic response to exercise bouts, patients need to be educated to check blood glucose levels before and after periods of exercise and about the potential prolonged effects (depending on intensity and duration) (see the section DIABETES SELF-MANAGEMENT EDUCATION AND SUPPORT above).

#### Exercise in the Presence of Microvascular Complications

See Section 11, “Chronic Kidney Disease and Risk Management” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S011), and Section 12, “Retinopathy, Neuropathy, and Foot Care” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S012), for more information on these long-term complications.

#### Retinopathy

If proliferative diabetic retinopathy or severe nonproliferative diabetic retinopathy is present, then vigorous-intensity aerobic or resistance exercise may be contraindicated because of the risk of triggering vitreous hemorrhage or retinal detachment (232). Consultation with an ophthalmologist prior to engaging in an intense exercise regimen may be appropriate.
Peripheral Neuropathy
Decreased pain sensation and a higher pain threshold in the extremities can result in an increased risk of skin breakdown, infection, and Charcot joint destruction with some forms of exercise. Therefore, a thorough assessment should be done to ensure that neuropathy does not alter kinesthetic or proprioceptive sensation during physical activity, particularly in those with more severe neuropathy. Studies have shown that moderate-intensity walking may not lead to an increased risk of foot ulcers or ulceration in those with peripheral neuropathy who use proper footwear (233). In addition, 150 min/week of moderate exercise was reported to improve outcomes in patients with prediabetic neuropathy (234). All individuals with peripheral neuropathy should wear proper footwear and examine their feet daily to detect lesions early. Anyone with a foot injury or open sore should be restricted to non-weight-bearing activities.

Autonomic Neuropathy
Autonomic neuropathy can increase the risk of exercise-induced injury or adverse events through decreased cardiac responsiveness to exercise, postural hypotension, impaired thermoregulation, impaired night vision due to impaired papillary reaction, and greater susceptibility to hypoglycemia (235). Cardiovascular autonomic neuropathy is also an independent risk factor for cardiovascular death and silent myocardial ischemia (236). Therefore, individuals with diabetic autonomic neuropathy should wear proper footwear and examine their feet daily to detect lesions early. Anyone with a foot injury or open sore should be restricted to non-weight-bearing activities.

Diabetic Kidney Disease
Physical activity can acutely increase urinary albumin excretion. However, there is no evidence that vigorous-intensity exercise accelerates the rate of progression of DKD, and there appears to be no need for specific exercise restrictions for people with DKD in general (232).

SMOKING CESSATION: TOBACCO AND E-CIGARETTES

**Recommendations**

5.33 Advise all patients not to use cigarettes and other tobacco products or e-cigarettes. A

5.34 After identification of tobacco or e-cigarette use, include smoking cessation counseling and other forms of treatment as a routine component of diabetes care. A

5.35 Address smoking cessation as part of diabetes education programs for those in need. B

Results from epidemiologic, case-control, and cohort studies provide convincing evidence to support the causal link between cigarette smoking and health risks (237). Recent data show tobacco use is higher among adults with chronic conditions (238) as well as in adolescents and young adults with diabetes (239). People with diabetes who smoke (and people with diabetes exposed to second-hand smoke) have a heightened risk of CVD, premature death, microvascular complications, and worse glycemic control when compared with those who do not smoke (240–242). Smoking may have a role in the development of type 2 diabetes (243–245).

The routine and thorough assessment of tobacco use is essential to prevent smoking or encourage cessation. Numerous large randomized clinical trials have demonstrated the efficacy and cost-effectiveness of brief counseling in smoking cessation, including the use of telephone quit lines, in reducing tobacco use. Pharmacologic therapy to assist with smoking cessation in people with diabetes has been shown to be effective (246), and for the patient motivated to quit, the addition of pharmacologic therapy to counseling is more effective than either treatment alone (247). Special considerations should include assessment of level of nicotine dependence, which is associated with difficulty in quitting and relapse (248). Although some people may gain weight in the period shortly after smoking cessation (249), recent research has demonstrated that this weight gain does not diminish the substantial CVD benefit realized from smoking cessation (250). One study in people who smoke who had newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes found that smoking cessation was associated with amelioration of metabolic parameters and reduced blood pressure and albuminuria at 1 year (251).

In recent years, e-cigarettes have gained public awareness and popularity because of perceptions that e-cigarette use is less harmful than regular cigarette smoking (252,253). However, in light of recent Centers for Disease Control and Prevention evidence (254) of deaths related to e-cigarette use, no individuals should be advised to use e-cigarettes, either as a way to stop smoking tobacco or as a recreational drug.

Diabetes education programs offer potential to systematically reach and engage individuals with diabetes in smoking cessation efforts. A cluster randomized trial found statistically significant increases in quit rates and long-term abstinence rates (>6 months) when smoking cessation interventions were offered through diabetes education clinics, regardless of motivation to quit at baseline (255).

**PSYCHOSOCIAL ISSUES**

**Recommendations**

5.36 Psychosocial care should be integrated with a collaborative, patient-centered approach and provided to all people with diabetes, with the goals of optimizing health outcomes and health-related quality of life. A

5.37 Psychosocial screening and follow-up may include, but are not limited to, attitudes about diabetes, expectations for medical management and outcomes, affect or mood, general and diabetes-related quality of life, available resources (financial, social, and emotional), and psychiatric history. E

5.38 Providers should consider assessment for symptoms of diabetes distress, depression, anxiety, disordered eating, and cognitive capacities using age-appropriate standardized and validated tools at the initial visit, at periodic intervals, and when there is a change in disease, treatment, or life circumstance. Including caregivers and family members in this assessment is recommended. B

5.39 Consider screening older adults (aged ≥65 years) with diabetes for cognitive impairment and
Please refer to the ADA position statement “Psychosocial Care for People With Diabetes” for a list of assessment tools and additional details (1).

Complex environmental, social, behavioral, and emotional factors, known as psychosocial factors, influence living with diabetes, both type 1 and type 2, and achieving satisfactory medical outcomes and psychological well-being. Thus, individuals with diabetes and their families are challenged with complex, multifaceted issues when integrating diabetes care into daily life (142).

Emotional well-being is an important part of diabetes care and self-management. Psychological and social problems can impair the individual’s (13,256–260) or family’s (259) ability to carry out diabetes care tasks and therefore potentially compromise health status. There are opportunities for the clinician to routinely assess psychosocial status in a timely and efficient manner for referral to appropriate services (261,262). A systematic review and meta-analysis showed that psychosocial interventions modestly but significantly improved A1C (standardized mean difference –0.29%) and mental health outcomes (263). There was a limited association between the effects on A1C and mental health, and no intervention characteristics predicted benefit on both outcomes. However, cost analyses have shown that behavioral health interventions are both effective and cost-efficient approaches to the prevention of diabetes (264).

**Screening**

Key opportunities for psychosocial screening occur at diabetes diagnosis, during regularly scheduled management visits, during hospitalizations, with new onset of complications, during significant transitions in care such as from pediatric to adult care teams (265), or when problems with achieving A1C goals, quality of life, or self-management are identified (2). Patients are likely to exhibit psychological vulnerability at diagnosis, when their medical status changes (e.g., end of the honeymoon period), when the need for intensified treatment is evident, and when complications are discovered. Significant changes in life circumstances, often called social determinants of health, are known to considerably affect a person’s ability to self-manage their condition. Thus, screening for social determinants of health (e.g., loss of employment, birth of a child, or other family-based stresses) should also be incorporated into routine care (266).

Providers can start with informal verbal inquiries, for example, by asking whether there have been persistent changes in mood during the past 2 weeks or since the patient’s last visit and whether the person can identify a triggering event or change in circumstances. Providers should also ask whether there are new or different barriers to treatment and self-management, such as feeling overwhelmed or stressed by having diabetes (see the section Diabetic Distress below), changes in finances, or competing medical demands (e.g., the diagnosis of a comorbid condition). In circumstances where individuals other than the patient are significantly involved in diabetes management, these issues should be explored with nonmedical care providers (265). Standardized and validated tools for psychosocial monitoring and assessment can also be used by providers (1), with positive findings leading to referral to a mental health provider specializing in diabetes for comprehensive evaluation, diagnosis, and treatment.

**Diabetes Distress**

**Recommendation**

**5.40 Routinely monitor people with diabetes for diabetes distress, particularly when treatment targets are not met and/or at the onset of diabetes complications.**

Diabetes distress is very common and is distinct from other psychological disorders (259,267,268). Diabetes distress refers to significant negative psychological reactions related to emotional burdens and worries specific to an individual’s experience in having to manage a severe, complicated, and demanding chronic disease such as diabetes (267–269). The constant behavioral demands of diabetes self-management (medication dosing, frequency, and titration; monitoring of blood glucose, food intake, eating patterns, and physical activity) and the potential or actuality of disease progression are directly associated with reports of diabetes distress (267). The prevalence of diabetes distress is reported to be 18–45% with an incidence of 38–48% over 18 months in people with type 2 diabetes (269). In the second Diabetes Attitudes, Wishes and Needs (DAWN-2) study, significant diabetes distress was reported by 45% of the participants, but only 24% reported that their healthcare teams asked them how diabetes affected their lives (259). High levels of diabetes distress significantly impact medication-taking behaviors and are linked to higher A1C, lower self-efficacy, and poorer dietary and exercise behaviors (5,267,269). DSMEs has been shown to reduce diabetes distress (5). It may be helpful to provide counseling regarding expected diabetes-related versus generalized psychological distress, both at diagnosis and when disease state or treatment changes occur (270).

An RCT tested the effects of participation in a standardized 8-week mindful self-compassion program versus a control group among patients with type 1 and type 2 diabetes. Mindful self-compassion training increased self-compassion, reduced depression and diabetes distress, and improved A1C in the intervention group (271). An RCT of cognitive behavioral and social problem-solving approaches compared with diabetes education (272) in teens (aged 14–18 years) showed that diabetes distress and depressive symptoms were significantly reduced for up to 3 years postintervention. Neither glycemic control nor self-management behaviors were improved over time. These recent studies support that a combination of approaches is needed to address distress, depression, and metabolic status.

Diabetes distress should be routinely monitored (273) using person-based diabetes-specific validated measures (1). If diabetes distress is identified, the person should be referred for specific diabetes education to address areas of diabetes self-care causing the patient distress and impacting clinical management. Diabetes distress is associated with anxiety, depression, and reduced health-related quality of life (274). People whose self-care remains impaired...
after tailored diabetes education should be referred by their care team to a behavioral health provider for evaluation and treatment.

Other psychosocial issues known to affect self-management and health outcomes include attitudes about the illness, expectations for medical management and outcomes, available resources (financial, social, and emotional) (275), and psychiatric history.

Referral to a Mental Health Specialist

Indications for referral to a mental health specialist familiar with diabetes management may include positive screening for overall stress related to work-life balance, diabetes distress, diabetes management difficulties, depression, anxiety, disordered eating, and cognitive dysfunction (see Table 5.2 for a complete list). It is preferable to incorporate psychosocial assessment and treatment into routine care rather than waiting for a specific problem or deterioration in metabolic or psychological status to occur (34,259). Providers should identify behavioral and mental health providers, ideally those who are knowledgeable about diabetes treatment and the psychosocial aspects of diabetes, to whom they can refer patients. The ADA provides a list of mental health providers who have received additional education in diabetes at the ADA Mental Health Provider Directory (professional.diabetes.org/mhp_listing).

Ideally, psychosocial care providers should be embedded in diabetes care settings. Although the provider may not feel qualified to treat psychological problems (276), optimizing the patient-provider relationship as a foundation may increase the likelihood of the patient accepting referral for other services. Collaborative care interventions and a team approach have demonstrated efficacy in diabetes self-management, outcomes of depression, and psychosocial functioning (5,6).

Psychosocial/Emotional Distress

Clinically significant psychopathologic diagnoses are considerably more prevalent in people with diabetes than in those without (277,278). Symptoms, both clinical and subclinical, that interfere with the person’s ability to carry out daily diabetes self-management tasks must be addressed. In addition to impacting a person’s ability to carry out self-management, and the association of mental health diagnosis with poorer short-term glycemic stability, symptoms of emotional distress are associated with mortality risk (277,279). Providers should consider an assessment of symptoms of depression, anxiety, disordered eating, and cognitive capacities using appropriate standardized/validated tools at the initial visit, at periodic intervals when patient distress is suspected, and when there is a change in health, treatment, or life circumstance. Inclusion of caregivers and family members in this assessment is recommended. Diabetes distress is addressed as an independent condition (see the section DIABETES DISTRESS above), as this state is very common and expected and is distinct from the psychological disorders discussed below (1). A list of age-appropriate screening and evaluation measures is provided in the ADA position statement “Psychosocial Care for People with Diabetes” (1).

Anxiety Disorders

Recommendations

5.41 Consider screening for anxiety in people exhibiting anxiety or worries regarding diabetes complications, insulin administration, and taking of medications, as well as fear of hypoglycemia and/or hypoglycemia unawareness that interferes with self-management behaviors, and in those who express fear, dread, or irrational thoughts and/or show anxiety symptoms such as avoidance behaviors, excessive repetitive behaviors, or social withdrawal. Refer for treatment if anxiety is present. B

5.42 People with hypoglycemia unawareness, which can co-occur with fear of hypoglycemia, should be treated using blood glucose awareness training (or other evidence-based intervention) to help re-establish awareness of symptoms of hypoglycemia and reduce fear of hypoglycemia. A

Anxiety symptoms and diagnosable disorders (e.g., generalized anxiety disorder, body dysmorphic disorder, obsessive-compulsive disorder, specific phobias, and posttraumatic stress disorder) are common in people with diabetes (280). The Behavioral Risk Factor Surveillance System (BRFSS) estimated the lifetime prevalence of generalized anxiety disorder to be 19.5% in people with either type 1 or type 2 diabetes (281). Common diabetes-specific concerns include fears related to hypoglycemia (282,283), not meeting blood glucose targets (280), and insulin injections or infusion (284). Onset of complications presents another critical point in the disease course when anxiety can occur (1). People with diabetes who exhibit excessive diabetes self-management behaviors well beyond what is prescribed or needed to achieve glycemic targets may be experiencing symptoms of obsessive-compulsive disorder (285).

General anxiety is a predictor of injection-related anxiety and associated with fear of hypoglycemia (283,286). Fear of hypoglycemia and hypoglycemia unawareness often co-occur. Interventions aimed at treating one often benefit both (287). Fear of hypoglycemia may explain avoidance of behaviors associated with lowering glucose such as increasing insulin doses or frequency of monitoring. If fear of hypoglycemia is identified and a person does not have symptoms of hypoglycemia, a structured program of blood glucose awareness training delivered in routine clinical practice can improve A1C, reduce the rate of severe hypoglycemia, and restore hypoglycemia awareness (288,289). If not available within the practice setting, a structured program targeting both fear of hypoglycemia and unawareness should be sought out and implemented by a qualified behavioral practitioner (287,289–291).

Depression

Recommendations

5.43 Providers should consider annual screening of all patients with diabetes, especially those with a self-reported history of depression, for depressive symptoms with age-appropriate depression screening measures, recognizing that further evaluation will be necessary for individuals who have a positive screen. B

5.44 Beginning at diagnosis of complications or when there are
Table 5.2—Situations that warrant referral of a person with diabetes to a mental health provider for evaluation and treatment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Situations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Self-care remains impaired in a person with diabetes distress after tailored diabetes education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• A positive screen on a validated screening tool for depressive symptoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• The presence of symptoms or suspicions of disordered eating behavior, an eating disorder, or disrupted patterns of eating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Intentional omission of insulin or oral medication to cause weight loss is identified</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• A positive screen for anxiety or fear of hypoglycemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• A serious mental illness is suspected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• In youth and families with behavioral self-care difficulties, repeated hospitalizations for diabetic ketoacidosis, or significant distress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• A positive screening for cognitive impairment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Declining or impaired ability to perform diabetes self-care behaviors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Before undergoing bariatric or metabolic surgery and after surgery, if assessment reveals an ongoing need for adjustment support</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

History of depression, current depression, and antidepressant medication use are risk factors for the development of type 2 diabetes, especially if the individual has other risk factors such as obesity and family history of type 2 diabetes (292–294). Elevated depressive symptoms and depressive disorders affect one in four patients with type 1 or type 2 diabetes (258). Thus, routine screening for depressive symptoms is indicated in this high-risk population, including people with type 1 or type 2 diabetes, gestational diabetes mellitus, and postpartum diabetes. Regardless of diabetes type, women have significantly higher rates of depression than men (295).

Routine monitoring with age-appropriate validated measures (1) can help to identify if referral is warranted (296). Adult patients with a history of depressive symptoms need ongoing monitoring of depression recurrence within the context of routine care (292). Integrating mental and physical health care can improve outcomes. When a patient is in psychological therapy (talk or cognitive behavioral therapy), the mental health provider should be incorporated into the diabetes treatment team (297). As with DSMES, person-centered collaborative care approaches have been shown to improve both depression and medical outcomes (297). Depressive symptoms may also be a manifestation of reduced quality of life secondary to disease burden (also see Diabetes Distress) and resultant changes in resource allocation impacting the person and their family. When depressive symptoms are identified, it is important to query origins both diabetes-specific and due to other life circumstances (274,298).

Various RCTs have shown improvements in diabetes and related health outcomes when depression is simultaneously treated (297,299,300). It is important to note that medical regimen should also be monitored in response to reduction in depressive symptoms. People may agree to or adopt previously refused treatment strategies (improving ability to follow recommended treatment behaviors), which may include increased physical activity and intensification of regimen behaviors and monitoring, resulting in changed glucose profiles.

Disordered Eating Behavior

**Recommendations**

5.46 Providers should consider re-evaluating the treatment regimen of people with diabetes who present with symptoms of disordered eating behavior, an eating disorder, or disrupted patterns of eating. B

5.47 Consider screening for disordered or disrupted eating using validated screening measures when hyperglycemia and weight loss are unexplained based on self-reported behaviors related to medication dosing, meal plan, and physical activity. In addition, a review of the medical regimen is recommended to identify potential treatment-related effects on hunger/caloric intake. B

Estimated prevalence of disordered eating behavior and diagnosable eating disorders in people with diabetes varies (301–303). For people with type 1 diabetes, insulin omission causing glycosuria in order to lose weight is the most commonly reported disordered eating behavior (304,305); in people with type 2 diabetes, bingeing (excessive food intake with an accompanying sense of loss of control) is most commonly reported. For people with type 2 diabetes treated with insulin, intentional omission is also frequently reported (306). People with diabetes and diagnosable eating disorders have high rates of comorbid psychiatric disorders (307). People with type 1 diabetes and eating disorders have high rates of diabetes distress and fear of hypoglycemia (308).

When evaluating symptoms of disordered or disrupted eating (when the individual exhibits eating behaviors that appear maladaptive but are not volitional, such as binging caused by loss of satiety cues), etiology and motivation for the behavior should be evaluated (303,309). Mixed intervention results point to the need for treatment of eating disorders and disordered eating behavior in the context of the disease
and its treatment. More rigorous methods to identify underlying mechanisms of action that drive change in eating and treatment behaviors, as well as associated mental distress, are needed (310). Adjunctive medication such as glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonists (311) may help individuals not only to meet glycemic targets but also to regulate hunger and food intake, thus having the potential to reduce uncontrollable hunger and bulimic symptoms. Caution should be taken in labeling individuals with diabetes as having a diagnosable psychiatric disorder, i.e., an eating disorder, when disordered or disrupted eating patterns are found to be associated with the disease and its treatment. In other words, patterns of maladaptive food intake that appear to have a psychological origin may be driven by physiologic disruption in hunger and satiety cues, metabolic perturbations, and/or secondary distress because of the individual’s inability to control their hunger and satiety (303,309).

Serious Mental Illness

**Recommendations**

5.48 Incorporate active monitoring of diabetes self-care activities into treatment goals for people with diabetes and serious mental illness. B

5.49 In people who are prescribed atypical antipsychotic medications, screen for prediabetes and diabetes 4 months after medication initiation and at least annually thereafter. B

5.50 If a second-generation antipsychotic medication is prescribed for adolescents or adults with diabetes, changes in weight, glycemic control, and cholesterol levels should be carefully monitored and the treatment regimen should be reassessed. C

Studies of individuals with serious mental illness, particularly schizophrenia and other thought disorders, show significantly increased rates of type 2 diabetes (312). People with schizophrenia should be monitored for type 2 diabetes because of the known comorbidity. Disordered thinking and judgment can be expected to make it difficult to engage in behavior that reduces risk factors for type 2 diabetes, such as restrained eating for weight management. Further, people with serious mental health disorders and diabetes frequently experience moderate psychological distress, suggesting pervasive intrusion of mental health issues into daily functioning (313). Coordinated management of diabetes or prediabetes and serious mental illness is recommended to achieve diabetes treatment targets. In addition, those taking second-generation (atypical) antipsychotics, such as olanzapine, require greater monitoring because of an increase in risk of type 2 diabetes associated with this medication (314–316). Because of this increased risk, people should be screened for prediabetes or diabetes 4 months after medication initiation and at least annually thereafter. Serious mental illness is often associated with the inability to evaluate and utilize information to make judgments about treatment options. When a person has an established diagnosis of a mental illness that impacts judgment, activities of daily living, and ability to establish a collaborative relationship with care providers, it is wise to include a nonmedical caretaker in decision-making regarding the medical regimen. This person can help improve the patient’s ability to follow the agreed-upon regimen through both monitoring and caretaking functions (317).

Cognitive Capacity/Impairment

**Recommendations**

5.51 Cognitive capacity should be monitored throughout the life span for all individuals with diabetes, particularly in those who have documented cognitive or behavioral self-management behavior (317).

5.52 If cognitive capacity changes or appears to be suboptimal for provider-patient decision-making and/or behavioral self-management, referral for a formal assessment should be considered. E

Cognitive capacity is generally defined as attention, memory, logic and reasoning, and auditory and visual processing, all of which are involved in diabetes self-management behavior (318). Having diabetes over decades—type 1 and type 2—has been shown to be associated with cognitive decline (319–321). Declines have been shown to impact executive function and information processing speed; they are not consistent between people, and evidence is lacking regarding a known course of decline (322). Diagnosis of dementia is also more prevalent in the population of individuals with diabetes, both type 1 and type 2 (323). Thus, monitoring of cognitive capacity of individuals is recommended, particularly regarding their ability to self-monitor and make judgments about their symptoms, physical status, and needed alterations to their self-management behaviors, all of which are mediated by executive function (323). As with other disorders affecting mental capacity (e.g., major psychiatric disorders), the key issue is whether the person can enter into a collaboration with the care team to achieve optimal metabolic outcomes and prevent complications, both short and long term (313). When this ability is shown to be altered, declining, or absent, a lay care provider should be introduced into the care team who serves in the capacities of day-to-day monitoring as well as a liaison with the rest of the care team (1). Cognitive capacity also contributes to ability to benefit from diabetes education and may indicate the need for alternative teaching approaches as well as remote monitoring. Youth will need second-party monitoring (e.g., parents and adult caregivers) until they are developmentally able to evaluate necessary information for self-management decisions and to inform resultant behavior changes.

Episodes of severe hypoglycemia are independently associated with decline, as well as the more immediate symptoms of mental confusion (324). Early-onset type 1 diabetes has been shown to be associated with potential deficits in intellectual abilities, especially in the context of repeated episodes of severe hypoglycemia (325). (See Section 14, “Children and Adolescents,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S014, for information on early-onset diabetes and cognitive abilities and the effects of severe hypoglycemia on children’s cognitive and academic performance.) Thus, for myriad reasons, cognitive capacity should be
movality on clinical and behavioral outcomes in urban African Americans with type 2 diabetes: a randomized trial. Diabetes Care 2016;39: 2149–2157
40. Greenwood DA, Gee P M, Fatkin KJ, Peeples M. A systematic review of reviews evaluating technology-enabled diabetes self-management
47. Liang K, Xie Q, Nie J, Deng J. Study on the effect of education for insulin injection in diabetic patients with new simulation tools. Medicine (Baltimore) 2021;100:e25542
107. DAFNE Study Group. Training in flexible, intensive insulin management to enable dietary freedom in people with type 1 diabetes: dose adjustment for normal eating (DAFNE) randomised controlled trial. BMJ 2002;325:746
118. DAFNE Study Group. Training in flexible, intensive insulin management to enable dietary freedom in people with type 1 diabetes: dose adjustment for normal eating (DAFNE) randomised controlled trial. BMJ 2002;325:746
122. Vega-López S, Venn BJ, Slavin JL. Relevance of the glycemic index and glycemic load for body...
weight, diabetes, and cardiovascular disease. 

Nutrients 2018;10:E1361


135. Paterson MA, Smart CEM, Lopez PE, et al. Effects of carbohydrate counting on glucose control and quality of life over 24 weeks in adult patients with type 1 diabetes on continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion: a randomized, prospective clinical trial (GIOCAR). Diabetes Care 2011;34:945–950


147. Smith TA, Smart CE, Howley PP, Lopez PE, King BR. For a high fat, high protein breakfast, preprandial administration of 125% of the insulin dose improves postprandial glycemic excursions in people with type 1 diabetes using multiple daily injections: a cross-over trial. Diabet Med 2021;38:e14513


151. Campbell MD, Walter M, King D, et al. Carbohydrate counting at meal time followed by a small secondary postprandial bolus injection at 3 hours prevents late hyperglycaemia, without hypoglycaemia, after a high-carbohydrate, high-fat meal in type 1 diabetes. Diabetes Care 2016;39: e141–e142


197. Daher MI, Matta JM, Abdul Nour AM. Non-nutritive sweeteners and type 2 diabetes: should we ring the bell? Diabetes Res Clin Pract 2019;155:107786
251. Voulgaris C, Katsilambros N, Tentolouris N. Smoking cessation predicts amelioration of...
microalbuminuria in newly diagnosed type 2 diabetes mellitus: a 1-year prospective study. Metabolism 2011;60:1456–1464


6. Glycemic Targets: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2022

The American Diabetes Association (ADA) “Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes” includes the ADA’s current clinical practice recommendations and is intended to provide the components of diabetes care, general treatment goals and guidelines, and tools to evaluate quality of care. Members of the ADA Professional Practice Committee, a multidisciplinary expert committee (http://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SPPC), are responsible for updating the Standards of Care annually, or more frequently as warranted. For a detailed description of ADA standards, statements, and reports, as well as the evidence-grading system for ADA’s clinical practice recommendations, please refer to the Standards of Care Introduction (http://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SINT). Readers who wish to comment on the Standards of Care are invited to do so at professional.diabetes.org/SOC.

ASSESSMENT OF GLYCEMIC CONTROL

Glycemic control is assessed by the A1C measurement, continuous glucose monitoring (CGM) using either time in range (TIR) and/or glucose management indicator (GMI), and blood glucose monitoring (BGM). A1C is the metric used to date in clinical trials demonstrating the benefits of improved glycemic control. Individual glucose monitoring (discussed in detail in Section 7, “Diabetes Technology,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S007) is a useful tool for diabetes self-management, which includes meals, exercise, and medication adjustment, particularly in individuals taking insulin. CGM serves an increasingly important role in the management of the effectiveness and safety of treatment in many patients with type 1 diabetes and in selected patients with type 2 diabetes. Individuals on a variety of insulin regimens can benefit from CGM with improved glucose control, decreased hypoglycemia, and enhanced self-efficacy (Section 7, “Diabetes Technology,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S007) (1).

Glycemic Assessment

**Recommendations**

6.1 Assess glycemic status (A1C or other glycemic measurement such as time in range or glucose management indicator) at least two times a year in patients who are meeting treatment goals (and who have stable glycemic control).

6.2 Assess glycemic status at least quarterly and as needed in patients whose therapy has recently changed and/or who are not meeting glycemic goals.

A1C reflects average glycemia over approximately 3 months. The performance of the test is generally excellent for National Glycohemoglobin Standardization Program (NGSP)-certified assays (see www.ngsp.org). The test is the primary tool for assessing
glossary control and has a strong predictive value for diabetes complications (2–4). Thus, A1C testing should be performed routinely in all patients with diabetes at initial assessment and as part of continuing care. Measurement approximately every 3 months determines whether patients’ glycemic targets have been reached and maintained. A 14-day CGM assessment of TIR and GMI can serve as a surrogate for A1C for use in clinical management (5–9). The frequency of A1C testing should depend on the clinical situation, the treatment regimen, and the clinician’s judgment. The use of point-of-care A1C testing or CGM-derived TIR and GMI may provide an opportunity for more timely treatment changes during encounters between patients and providers. People with type 2 diabetes with stable glycemia well within target may do well with A1C testing or other glucose assessment only twice per year. Unstable or intensively managed patients or people not at goal with treatment adjustments may require testing more frequently (every 3 months with interim assessments as needed for safety) (10). CGM parameters can be tracked in the clinic or via telemedicine to optimize diabetes management.

A1C Limitations
The A1C test is an indirect measure of average glycemia and, as such, is subject to limitations. As with any laboratory test, there is variability in the measurement of A1C. Although A1C variability is lower on an intrapatient basis than that of blood glucose measurements, clinicians should exercise judgment when using A1C as the sole basis for assessing glycemic control, particularly if the result is close to the threshold that might prompt a change in medication therapy. For example, conditions that affect red blood cell turnover (hemolytic and other anemias, glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, recent blood transfusion, use of drugs that stimulate erythropoiesis, end-stage kidney disease, and pregnancy) may result in discrepancies between the A1C result and the patient’s true mean glycemia. Hemoglobin variants must be considered, particularly when the A1C result does not correlate with the patient’s CGM or BGM levels. However, most assays in use in the U.S. are accurate in individuals who are heterozygous for the most common variants (see www.ngsp.org/interf.asp). Other measures of average glycemia such as fructosamine and 1,5-anhydroglucitol are available, but their translation into average glucose levels and their prognostic significance are not as clear as for A1C and CGM. Though some variability in the relationship between average glucose levels and A1C exists among different individuals, in general the association between mean glucose and A1C within an individual correlates over time (11).

A1C does not provide a measure of glycemic variability or hypoglycemia. For patients prone to glycemic variability, especially patients with type 1 diabetes or type 2 diabetes with severe insulin deficiency, glycemic control is best evaluated by the combination of results from BGM/CGM and A1C. Discordant results between BGM/CGM and A1C can be the result of the conditions outlined above or glycemic variability, with BGM missing the extremes.

Table 6.1—Estimated average glucose (eAG)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A1C (%)</th>
<th>mg/dL*</th>
<th>mmol/L</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>97 (76–120)</td>
<td>5.4 (4.2–6.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>126 (100–152)</td>
<td>7.0 (5.5–8.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>154 (123–185)</td>
<td>8.6 (6.8–10.3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>183 (147–217)</td>
<td>10.2 (8.1–12.1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>212 (170–249)</td>
<td>11.8 (9.4–13.9)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>240 (193–282)</td>
<td>13.4 (10.7–15.7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>269 (217–314)</td>
<td>14.9 (12.0–17.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>298 (240–347)</td>
<td>16.5 (13.3–19.3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Data in parentheses are 95% CI. A calculator for converting A1C results into eAG, in either mg/dL or mmol/L, is available at professional.diabetes.org/eAG. *These estimates are based on ADAG data of ~2,700 glucose measurements over 3 months per A1C measurement in 507 adults with type 1, type 2, or no diabetes. The correlation between A1C and average glucose was 0.92 (12,13). Adapted from Nathan et al. (12).

Correlation Between BGM and A1C
Table 6.1 shows the correlation between A1C levels and mean glucose levels based on the international A1C-Derived Average Glucose (ADAG) study, which assessed the correlation between A1C and frequent BGM and CGM in 507 adults (83% non-Hispanic White) with type 1, type 2, and no diabetes (12), and an empirical study of the average blood glucose levels at premeal, postmeal, and bedtime associated with specified A1C levels using data from the ADAG trial (13). The American Diabetes Association (ADA) and the American Association for Clinical Chemistry have determined that the correlation ($r = 0.92$) in the ADAG trial is strong enough to justify reporting both the A1C result and the estimated average glucose (eAG) result when a clinician orders the A1C test. Clinicians should note that the mean plasma glucose numbers in Table 6.1 are based on ~2,700 readings per A1C in the ADAG trial. In a recent report, mean glucose measured with CGM versus central laboratory–measured A1C in 387 participants in three randomized trials demonstrated that A1C may underestimate or overestimate mean glucose in individuals (11). Thus, as suggested, a patient’s BGM or CGM profile has considerable potential for optimizing his or her glycemic management (12).

A1C Differences in Ethnic Populations and Children
In the ADAG study, there were no significant differences among racial and ethnic groups in the regression lines between A1C and mean glucose, although the study was underpowered to detect a difference and there was a trend toward a difference between the African and African American and the non-Hispanic White cohorts, with higher A1C values observed in Africans and African Americans compared with non-Hispanic Whites for a given mean glucose. Other studies have also demonstrated higher A1C levels in African Americans than in Whites at a given mean glucose concentration (14,15). In contrast, a recent report in Afro-Caribbeans found lower A1C relative to glucose values (16). Taken together, A1C and glucose parameters are essential for the optimal assessment of glycemic status.

A1C assays are available that do not demonstrate a statistically significant difference in individuals with hemoglobin variants. Other assays have statistically significant interference, but the difference is not clinically significant. Use of an assay with such
Table 6.2—Standardized CGM metrics for clinical care

| 1. Number of days CGM device is worn (recommend 14 days) |
| 2. Percentage of time CGM device is active (recommend 70% of data from 14 days) |
| 3. Mean glucose |
| 4. Glucose management indicator |
| 5. Glycemic variability (%CV) target ≤36%* |
| 6. TAR: % of readings and time >250 mg/dL (>13.9 mmol/L) Level 2 hyperglycemia |
| 7. TIR: % of readings and time 181–250 mg/dL (10.1–13.9 mmol/L) Level 1 hyperglycemia |
| 8. TIR: % of readings and time 70–180 mg/dL (3.9–10.0 mmol/L) In range |
| 9. TIR: % of readings and time 54–69 mg/dL (3.0–3.8 mmol/L) Level 1 hypoglycemia |
| 10. TIR: % of readings and time <54 mg/dL (<3.0 mmol/L) Level 2 hypoglycemia |

CGM, continuous glucose monitoring; CV, coefficient of variation; TAR, time above target; TIR, time in range. *Some studies suggest that lower %CV targets (<33%) provide additional protection against hypoglycemia for those receiving insulin or sulfonylureas. Adapted from Battelino et al. (34).

Glucose Assessment by Continuous Glucose Monitoring

**Recommendations**

6.3 Standardized, single-page glucose reports from continuous glucose monitoring (CGM) devices with visual cues, such as the ambulatory glucose profile, should be considered as a standard summary for all CGM devices.

6.4 Time in range is associated with the risk of microvascular complications and can be used for assessment of glycemic control. Additionally, time below target and time above target are useful parameters for the evaluation of the treatment regimen (Table 6.2).

CGM is rapidly improving diabetes management. As stated in the recommendations, time in range (TIR) is a useful metric of glycemic control and glucose patterns, and it correlates well with A1C in most studies (23–28). New data support the premise that increased TIR correlates with the risk of complications. The studies supporting this assertion are reviewed in more detail in Section 7, “Diabetes Technology” (http://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S007); they include cross-sectional data and cohort studies (29–31) demonstrating TIR as an acceptable end point for clinical trials moving forward and that it can be used for assessment of glycemic control. Additionally, time below target (<70 and <54 mg/dL [3.9 and 3.0 mmol/L]) and time above target (>180 mg/dL [10.0 mmol/L]) are useful parameters for insulin dose adjustments and reevaluation of the treatment regimen.

For many people with diabetes, glucose monitoring is key for achieving glycemic targets. Major clinical trials of insulin-treated patients have included BGM as part of multifactorial interventions to demonstrate the benefit of intensive glycemic control on diabetes complications (32). BGM is thus an integral component of effective therapy of patients taking insulin. In recent years, CGM is now a standard method for glucose monitoring for most adults with type 1 diabetes (33). Both approaches to glucose monitoring allow patients to evaluate individual responses to therapy and assess whether glycemic targets are being safely achieved. The international consensus on TIR provides guidance on standardized CGM metrics (see Table 6.2) and considerations for clinical interpretation and care (34). To make these metrics more actionable, standardized reports with visual cues, such as the ambulatory glucose profile (see Fig. 6.1), are recommended (34) and may help the patient and the provider better interpret the data to guide treatment decisions (23,26). BGM and CGM can be useful to guide medical nutrition therapy and physical activity, prevent hypoglycemia, and aid medication management. While A1C is currently the primary measure to guide glucose management and a valuable risk marker for developing diabetes complications, the CGM metrics TIR (with time below range and time above range) and GMI provide the insights for a more personalized diabetes management plan. The incorporation of these metrics into clinical practice is in evolution, and remote access to these data can be critical for telemedicine. A rapid optimization and harmonization of CGM terminology and remote access is occurring to meet patient and provider needs (35–37). The patient’s specific needs and goals should dictate BGM frequency and timing and consideration of CGM use. Please refer to Section 7, “Diabetes Technology” (http://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SPPC), for a more complete discussion of the use of BGM and CGM.

statistically significant interference may explain a report that for any level of mean glycemia, African Americans heterozygous for the common hemoglobin variant HbS had lower A1C by about 0.3 percentage points when compared with those without the trait (17,18). Another genetic variant, X-linked glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase G202A, carried by 11% of African Americans, was associated with a decrease in A1C of about 0.8% in hemizygous men and 0.7% in homozygous women compared with those without the trait (19).

A small study comparing A1C to CGM data in children with type 1 diabetes found a highly statistically significant correlation between A1C and mean blood glucose, although the correlation ($r = 0.7$) was significantly lower than in the ADAG trial (20). Whether there are clinically meaningful differences in how A1C relates to average glucose in children or in different ethnicities is an area for further study (14,21,22). Until further evidence is available, it seems prudent to establish A1C goals in these populations with consideration of individualized CGM, BGM, and A1C results. Limitations in perfect alignment between glycemic measurements do not interfere with the usefulness of BGM/CGM for insulin dose adjustments.
**AGP Report: Continuous Glucose Monitoring**

**Time in Ranges**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Range</th>
<th>Goal</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Very High</td>
<td>&lt;5%</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>&lt;25%</td>
<td>24%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target</td>
<td>&gt;70%</td>
<td>46%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low</td>
<td>&lt;1%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very Low</td>
<td>&lt;4%</td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Each 5% increase is clinically beneficial.

**Glucose Metrics**

- **Average Glucose**: 175 mg/dL (Goal: <154 mg/dL)
- **Glucose Management Indicator (GMI)**: 7.5% (Goal: <7%)
- **Glucose Variability**: 45.5% (Goal: ≤36%)

**Test Patient**

- **DOB**: Jan 1, 1970
- **14 Days**: August 8–August 21, 2021
- **Time CGM Active**: 100%

**Ambulatory Glucose Profile (AGP)**

AGP is a summary of glucose values from the report period, with median (50%) and other percentiles shown as if they occurred in a single day.

**Daily Glucose Profiles**

Each daily profile represents a midnight-to-midnight period.

---

Figure 6.1—Key points included in standard ambulatory glucose profile (AGP) report. Reprinted from Holt et al. (33).
With the advent of new technology, CGM has evolved rapidly in both accuracy and affordability. As such, many patients have these data available to assist with self-management and their providers’ assessment of glycemic status. Reports can be generated from CGM that will allow the provider and person with diabetes to determine TIR, calculate GMI, and assess hypoglycemia, hyperglycemia, and glycemic variability. As discussed in a recent consensus document, a report formatted as shown in Figure 6.1 can be generated (34). Published data suggest a strong correlation between TIR and A1C, with a goal of 70% TIR aligning with an A1C of ~7% in two prospective studies (8,25). Note the goals of therapy next to each metric in Figure 6.1 (e.g., low, <4%; very low, <1%) as values to guide changes in therapy.

GLYCEMIC GOALS

For glycemic goals in older adults, please refer to Section 13, “Older Adults” (http://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S013). For glycemic goals in children, please refer to Section 14, “Children and Adolescents” (http://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S014). For glycemic goals in pregnant women, please refer to Section 15, “Management of Diabetes in Pregnancy” (http://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S015). Overall, regardless of the population being served, it is critical for the glycemic targets to be woven into the overall patient-centered strategy. For example, in a very young child, safety and simplicity may outweigh the need for perfect control in the short run. Simplification may decrease parental anxiety and build trust and confidence, which could support further strengthening of glycemic targets and self-efficacy. Similarly, in healthy older adults, there is no empirical need to loosen control. However, the provider needs to work with an individual and should consider adjusting targets or simplifying the regimen if this change is needed to improve safety and adherence.

Recommendations

**6.5a** An A1C goal for many non-pregnant adults is time in range of >70% with time below range <4% and time <54 mg/dL <1% (Fig. 6.1 and Table 6.2). B

**6.6** On the basis of provider judgment and patient preference, achievement of lower A1C levels than the goal of 7% may be acceptable and even beneficial if it can be achieved safely without significant hypoglycemia or other adverse effects of treatment. B

**6.7** Less stringent A1C goals (such as <8% [64 mmol/mol]) may be appropriate for patients with limited life expectancy or where the harms of treatment are greater than the benefits. B

**6.8** Reassess glycemic targets based on the individualized criteria in Figure 6.2. E

A1C and Microvascular Complications

Hyperglycemia defines diabetes, and glycemic control is fundamental to diabetes management. The Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT) (32), a prospective randomized controlled trial of intensive (mean A1C about 7% [53 mmol/mol]) versus standard (mean A1C about 9% [75 mmol/mol]) glycemic control in patients with type 1 diabetes, showed definitively that better glycemic control is associated with 50–76% reductions in rates of development and progression of microvascular (retinopathy, nephropathy, and diabetic kidney disease) complications. Follow-up of the DCCT cohorts in the Epidemiology of Diabetes Interventions and Complications (EDIC) study (38,39) demonstrated persistence of these microvascular benefits over two decades despite the fact that the glycemic separation between the treatment groups diminished and disappeared during follow-up.

The Kumamoto Study (40) and UK Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS) (41,42) confirmed that intensive glycemic control significantly decreased rates of microvascular complications in patients with short-duration type 2 diabetes. Long-term follow-up of the UKPDS cohorts showed enduring effects of early glycemic control on most microvascular complications (43).

Therefore, achieving A1C targets of <7% [53 mmol/mol] has been shown to reduce microvascular complications of type 1 and type 2 diabetes when instituted early in the course of disease (2,44). Epidemiologic analyses of the DCCT (32) and UKPDS (45) demonstrate a curvilinear relationship between A1C and microvascular complications. Such analyses suggest that, on a population level, the greatest number of complications will be averted by taking patients from very poor control to fair/good control. These analyses also suggest that further lowering of A1C from 7% to 6% [53 mmol/mol to 42 mmol/mol] is associated with further reduction in the risk of microvascular complications, although the absolute risk reductions become much smaller. The implication of these findings is that there is no need to deintensify therapy for an individual with an A1C between 6% and 7% in the setting of low hypoglycemia risk with a long life expectancy. There are now newer agents that do not cause hypoglycemia, making it possible to maintain glucose control without the risk of hypoglycemia (see Section 9, “Pharmacologic Approaches to Glycemic Treatment,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S009).

Given the substantially increased risk of hypoglycemia in type 1 diabetes and with polypharmacy in type 2 diabetes, the risks of lower glycemic targets may outweigh the potential benefits on microvascular complications. Three landmark trials (Action to Control Cardiovascular Risk in Diabetes [ACCORD], Action in Diabetes and Vascular Disease: Preterax and Diamicron MR Controlled Evaluation [ADVANCE], and Veterans Affairs Diabetes Trial [VADT]) were conducted to test the effects of near normalization of blood glucose on cardiovascular outcomes in individuals with long-standing type 2 diabetes and either known cardiovascular disease (CVD) or high cardiovascular risk. These trials showed that lower A1C levels were associated with reduced onset or progression of some microvascular complications (46–48).

The concerning mortality findings in the ACCORD trial discussed below and the relatively intense efforts required to achieve near euglycemia should also be considered when setting glycemic
targets for individuals with long-standing diabetes, such as those populations studied in ACCORD, ADVANCE, and VADT. Findings from these studies suggest caution is needed in treating diabetics to near-normal A1C goals in people with long-standing type 2 diabetes with or at significant risk of CVD. These landmark studies need to be considered with an important caveat; glucagon-like peptide 1 (GLP-1) receptor agonists and sodium–glucose cotransporter 2 (SGLT2) inhibitors were not approved at the time of these trials. As such, these agents with established cardiovascular and renal benefits appear to be safe and beneficial in this group of individuals at high risk for cardiorenal complications. Prospective randomized clinical trials examining these agents for cardiovascular safety were not designed to test higher versus lower A1C; therefore, beyond post hoc analysis of these trials, we do not have evidence that it is the glucose lowering by these agents that confers the CVD and renal benefit (49). As such, on the basis of physician judgment and patient preferences, select patients, especially those with little comorbidities and a long life expectancy, may benefit from adopting more intensive glycemic targets if they can achieve them safely and without hypoglycemia or significant therapeutic burden.

**A1C and Cardiovascular Disease Outcomes**

**Cardiovascular Disease and Type 1 Diabetes**

CVD is a more common cause of death than microvascular complications in populations with diabetes. There is evidence for a cardiovascular benefit of intensive glycemic control after long-term follow-up of cohorts treated early in the course of type 1 diabetes. In the DCCT, there was a trend toward lower risk of CVD events with intensive control. In the 9-year post-DCCT follow-up of the EDIC cohort, participants previously randomized to the intensive arm had a significant 57% reduction in the risk of nonfatal myocardial infarction (MI), stroke, or cardiovascular death compared with those previously randomized to the standard arm (50). The benefit of intensive glycemic control in this cohort with type 1 diabetes has been shown to persist for several decades (51) and to be associated with a modest reduction in all-cause mortality (52).

**Cardiovascular Disease and Type 2 Diabetes**

In type 2 diabetes, there is evidence that more intensive treatment of glycemia in newly diagnosed patients may reduce long-term CVD rates. In addition, data from the Swedish National Diabetes Registry (53) and the Joint Asia Diabetes Evaluation (JADE) demonstrate greater proportions of people with diabetes being diagnosed at <40 years of age and a demonstrably increased burden of heart disease and years of life lost in people diagnosed at a younger age (54–57). Thus, to prevent both microvascular and macrovascular complications of diabetes, there is a major call to overcome therapeutic inertia and treat to target for an individual patient (57,58). During the UKPDS, there was a 16% reduction in CVD events (combined fatal or nonfatal MI and sudden death) in the intensive glycemic control arm that did not reach statistical significance (P = 0.052), and there was no suggestion of benefit on other CVD outcomes (e.g., stroke). Similar to the DCCT/EDIC, after 10 years of observational follow-up, those originally randomized to intensive glycemic control had significant long-term reductions in MI (15% with sulfonylurea or insulin as initial pharmacotherapy, 33% with metformin as initial pharmacotherapy) and in all-cause mortality (13% and 27%, respectively) (43).

ACCORD, ADVANCE, and VADT suggested no significant reduction in CVD outcomes with intensive glycemic control in participants followed for shorter durations (3.5–5.6 years) and who had more advanced type 2 diabetes and CVD risk than the UKPDS participants. All three trials were conducted in relatively older participants with a longer duration of diabetes (25–34 years) and either CVD or multiple cardiovascular risk factors. The target A1C among intensive-control subjects was <6% (42 mmol/mol) in ACCORD, <6.5% (48 mmol/mol) in ADVANCE, and a 1.5% reduction in A1C compared with control subjects in VADT, with achieved A1C of 6.4% vs. 7.5% (46 mmol/mol vs. 58 mmol/mol) in ACCORD, 6.5% vs. 7.3% (48 mmol/mol vs. 56 mmol/mol) in ADVANCE, and 6.9% vs. 8.4% (52 mmol/mol vs. 68 mmol/mol) in VADT. Details of these studies are reviewed extensively in the joint ADA position statement “Intensive Glycemic Control and the Prevention of Cardiovascular Events: Implications of the ACCORD, ADVANCE, and VADT Trials” (58).

The glycemic control comparison in ACCORD was halted early due to an increased mortality rate in the intensive compared with the standard treatment arm (1.41% vs. 1.14% per year; hazard ratio 1.22 [95% CI 1.01–1.46]), with a similar increase in cardiovascular deaths. Analysis of the ACCORD data did not identify a clear explanation for the excess mortality in the intensive treatment arm (59).

Longer-term follow-up has shown no evidence of cardiovascular benefit, or harm, in the ADVANCE trial (60). The end-stage renal disease rate was lower in the intensive treatment group over follow-up. However, 10-year follow-up of the VADT cohort (61) did demonstrate a reduction in the risk of cardiovascular events (52.7 [control group] vs. 44.1 [intervention group] events per 1,000 person-years) with no benefit in cardiovascular or overall mortality. Heterogeneity of mortality effects across studies was noted, which may reflect differences in glycemic targets, therapeutic approaches, and, importantly, population characteristics (62).

Mortality findings in ACCORD (59) and subgroup analyses of VADT (63) suggest that the potential risks of intensive glycemic control may outweigh its benefits in higher-risk individuals. In all three trials, severe hypoglycemia was significantly more likely in participants who were randomly assigned to the intensive glycemic control arm. Those patients with a long duration of diabetes, a known history of hypoglycemia, advanced atherosclerosis, or advanced age/frailty may benefit from less aggressive targets (64,65).

As discussed further below, severe hypoglycemia is a potent marker of high absolute risk of cardiovascular events and mortality (66). Therefore, providers should be vigilant in preventing hypoglycemia and should not aggressively attempt to achieve near-normal A1C levels in people in whom such targets cannot be safely and reasonably achieved. As discussed in Section 9, "Pharmacologic
Approaches to Glycemic Treatment (http://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S009), addition of specific SGLT2 inhibitors or GLP-1 receptor agonists that have demonstrated CVD benefit is recommended in patients with established CVD, chronic kidney disease, and heart failure. As outlined in more detail in Section 9, “Pharmacologic Approaches to Glycemic Treatment” (http://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S009) and Section 10, “Cardiovascular Disease and Risk Management” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S010), the cardiovascular benefits of SGLT2 inhibitors or GLP-1 receptor agonists are not contingent upon A1C lowering; therefore, initiation can be considered in people with type 2 diabetes and CVD independent of the current A1C or A1C goal or metformin therapy. Based on these considerations, the following two strategies are offered (67):

1. If already on dual therapy or multiple glucose-lowering therapies and not on an SGLT2 inhibitor or GLP-1 receptor agonist, consider switching to one of these agents with proven cardiovascular benefit.

2. Introduce SGLT2 inhibitors or GLP-1 receptor agonists in people with CVD at A1C goal (independent of metformin) for cardiovascular benefit, independent of baseline A1C or individualized A1C target.

Setting and Modifying A1C Goals
Numerous factors must be considered when setting glycemic targets. The ADA proposes general targets appropriate for many people but emphasizes the importance of individualization based on key patient characteristics. Glycemic targets must be individualized in the context of shared decision-making to address individual needs and preferences and consider characteristics that influence risks and benefits of therapy; this approach will optimize engagement and self-efficacy.

The factors to consider in individualizing goals are depicted in Fig. 6.2. This figure is not designed to be applied rigidly but to be used as a broad construct to guide clinical decision-making (68) and engage people with type 1 and type 2 diabetes in shared decision-making. More aggressive targets may be recommended if they can be achieved safely and with an acceptable burden of therapy and if life expectancy is sufficient to reap the benefits of stringent targets. Less stringent targets (A1C up to 8% [64 mmol/mol]) may be recommended if the patient’s life expectancy is such that the benefits of an intensive goal may not be realized, or if the risks and burdens outweigh the potential benefits. Severe or frequent hypoglycemia is an absolute indication for the modification of treatment regimens, including setting higher glycemic goals.

Diabetes is a chronic disease that progresses over decades. Thus, a goal that might be appropriate for an individual early in the course of their diabetes may change over time. Newly diagnosed patients and/or those without comorbidities that limit life expectancy may benefit from intensive control proven to prevent microvascular complications. Both DCCT/EDIC and UKPDS demonstrated metabolic memory, or a legacy effect, in which a finite period of intensive control yielded benefits that extended for decades after that control ended. Thus, a finite period of intensive control to near-normal A1C may yield enduring benefits even if control is subsequently deintensified as patient characteristics change. Over time, comorbidities may emerge, decreasing life expectancy and thereby decreasing the potential to reap benefits from intensive control. Also, with longer disease duration, diabetes may become more difficult to control, with increasing risks and burdens of therapy. Thus, A1C targets should be reevaluated over time to balance the risks and benefits as patient factors change.

Recommended glycemic targets for many nonpregnant adults are shown in Table 6.3. The recommendations include blood glucose levels that appear to correlate with achievement of an A1C of <7% (53 mmol/mol). Pregnancy recommendations are discussed in more detail in Section 15, “Management of Diabetes in Pregnancy” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S015).

The issue of preprandial versus postprandial BGM targets is complex (69). Elevated postchallenge (2-h oral glucose tolerance test) glucose values have been associated with increased cardiovascular risk independent of fasting plasma glucose in some epidemiologic studies, whereas intervention trials have not
shown postprandial glucose to be a cardiovascular risk factor independent of A1C. In people with diabetes, surrogate measures of vascular pathology, such as endothelial dysfunction, are negatively affected by postprandial hyperglycemia. It is clear that postprandial hyperglycemia, like preprandial hyperglycemia, contributes to elevated A1C levels, with its relative contribution being greater at A1C levels that are closer to 7% (53 mmol/mol). However, outcome studies have shown A1C to be the primary predictor of complications, and landmark trials of glycemic control such as the DCCT and UKPDS relied overwhelmingly on preprandial BGM. Additionally, a randomized controlled trial in patients with known CVD found no CVD benefit of insulin regimens targeting postprandial glucose compared with those targeting preprandial glucose (70). Therefore, it is reasonable to check postprandial glucose in individuals who have premeal glucose values within target but A1C values above target. In addition, when intensifying insulin therapy, measuring postprandial plasma glucose 1–2 h after the start of a meal (using BGM or CGM) and using treatments aimed at reducing postprandial plasma glucose values to <180 mg/dL (10.0 mmol/L) may help to lower A1C.

An analysis of data from 470 participants in the ADAG study (237 with type 1 diabetes and 147 with type 2 diabetes) found that the glucose ranges highlighted in Table 6.1 are adequate to meet targets and decrease hypoglycemia (13,71). These findings support that premeal glucose targets may be relaxed without undermining overall glycemic control as measured by A1C. These data prompted the revision in the ADA-recommended premeal glucose target to 80–130 mg/dL (4.4–7.2 mmol/L) but did not affect the definition of hypoglycemia.

**HYPOGLYCEMIA**

**Table 6.3—Summary of glycemic recommendations for many nonpregnant adults with diabetes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A1C</th>
<th>&lt;7.0% (53 mmol/mol)*#</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preprandial capillary plasma glucose</td>
<td>80–130 mg/dL* (4.4–7.2 mmol/L)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peak postprandial capillary plasma glucose†</td>
<td>&lt;180 mg/dL* (10.0 mmol/L)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*More or less stringent glycemic goals may be appropriate for individual patients. CGM may be used to assess glycemic target as noted in Recommendation 6.5b and Fig. 6.1. Goals should be individualized based on duration of diabetes, age/life expectancy, comorbid conditions, known CVD or advanced microvascular complications, hypoglycemia unawareness, and individual patient considerations (as per Fig. 6.2). †Postprandial glucose may be targeted if A1C goals are not met despite reaching preprandial glucose goals. Postprandial glucose measurements should be made 1–2 h after the beginning of the meal, generally peak levels in patients with diabetes.

Table 6.3—Summary of glycemic recommendations for many nonpregnant adults with diabetes

Hypoglycemia is the major limiting factor in the glycemic management of type 1 and type 2 diabetes. Recommendations regarding the classification of hypoglycemia are outlined in Table 6.4 (72–77). Level 1 hypoglycemia is defined as a measurable glucose concentration <70 mg/dL (3.9 mmol/L) but ≥54 mg/dL (3.0 mmol/L). A blood glucose concentration of 70 mg/dL (3.9 mmol/L) has been recognized as a threshold for neuroendocrine responses to falling glucose in people without diabetes. Because many people with diabetes demonstrate impaired counterregulatory responses to hypoglycemia and/or experience hypoglycemia unawareness, a measured glucose level <70 mg/dL (3.9 mmol/L) is considered clinically important (independent of the severity of acute hypoglycemic symptoms). Level 2 hypoglycemia (defined as a blood glucose concentration <54 mg/dL [3.0 mmol/L]) is the threshold at which neuroglycopenic symptoms begin to occur and requires immediate action to resolve the hypoglycemic event. If a patient has level 2 hypoglycemia without adrenergic or neuroglycopenic symptoms, they likely have hypoglycemia unawareness (discussed further below). This clinical scenario warrants investigation and review of the medical regimen (78–82). Lastly, level 3 hypoglycemia is defined as a severe event characterized by altered mental and/or physical functioning that requires assistance from another person for recovery.
Symptoms of hypoglycemia include, but are not limited to, shakiness, irritability, confusion, tachycardia, and hunger. Hypoglycemia may be inconvenient or frightening to patients with diabetes. Level 3 hypoglycemia may be recognized or unrecognized and can progress to loss of consciousness, seizure, coma, or death. Hypoglycemia is reversed by administration of rapid-acting glucose or glucagon. Hypoglycemia can cause acute harm to the person with diabetes or others, especially if it causes falls, motor vehicle accidents, or other injury. Recurrent level 2 hypoglycemia and/or level 3 hypoglycemia is an urgent medical issue and requires intervention with medical regimen adjustment, behavioral intervention, and, in some cases, use of technology to assist with hypoglycemia prevention and identification (73, 82–85). A large cohort study suggested that among older adults with type 2 diabetes, a history of level 3 hypoglycemia was associated with greater risk of dementia (86). Conversely, in a substudy of the ACCORD trial, cognitive impairment at baseline or decline in cognitive function during the trial was significantly associated with subsequent episodes of level 3 hypoglycemia (87). Evidence from DCCT/EDIC, which involved adolescents and younger adults with type 1 diabetes, found no association between frequency of level 3 hypoglycemia and cognitive decline (88).

Studies of rates of level 3 hypoglycemia that rely on claims data for hospitalization, emergency department visits, and ambulance use substantially underestimate rates of level 3 hypoglycemia (89) yet reveal a high burden of hypoglycemia in adults over 60 years of age in the community (90). African Americans are at substantially increased risk of level 3 hypoglycemia (90, 91). In addition to age and race, other important risk factors found in a community-based epidemiologic cohort of older Black and White adults with type 2 diabetes include insulin use, poor or moderate versus good glycemic control, albuminuria, and poor cognitive function (90). Level 3 hypoglycemia was associated with mortality in participants in both the standard and the intensive glycemia arms of the ACCORD trial, but the relationships between hypoglycemia, achieved A1C, and treatment intensity were not straightforward. An association of level 3 hypoglycemia with mortality was also found in the ADVANCE trial (92). An association between self-reported level 3 hypoglycemia and 5-year mortality has also been reported in clinical practice (93). Glucose variability is also associated with an increased risk for hypoglycemia (94).

Young children with type 1 diabetes and the elderly, including those with type 1 and type 2 diabetes (86, 95), are noted as particularly vulnerable to hypoglycemia because of their reduced ability to recognize hypoglycemic symptoms and effectively communicate their needs. Individualized glucose targets, patient education, dietary intervention (e.g., bedtime snack to prevent overnight hypoglycemia when specifically needed to treat low blood glucose), exercise management, medication adjustment, glucose monitoring, and routine clinical surveillance may improve patient outcomes (96). CGM with automated low glucose suspend and hybrid closed-loop systems have been shown to be effective in reducing hypoglycemia in type 1 diabetes (97). For patients with type 1 diabetes with level 3 hypoglycemia and hypoglycemia unawareness that persists despite medical treatment, human islet transplantation may be an option, but the approach remains experimental (98, 99).

In 2015, the ADA changed its preprandial glycemic target from 70–130 mg/dL (3.9–7.2 mmol/L) to 80–130 mg/dL (4.4–7.2 mmol/L). This change reflects the results of the ADAG study, which demonstrated that higher glycemic targets corresponded to A1C goals (13). An additional goal of raising the lower range of the glycemic target was to limit overtreatment and provide a safety margin in patients titrating glucose-lowering drugs such as insulin to glycemic targets.

### Hypoglycemia Treatment

Providers should continue to counsel patients to treat hypoglycemia with fast-acting carbohydrates at the hypoglycemia alert value of 70 mg/dL (3.9 mmol/L) or less. This should be reviewed at each patient visit. Hypoglycemia treatment requires ingestion of glucose- or carbohydrate-containing foods (100–102). The acute glycemic response correlates better with the glucose content of food than with the carbohydrate content of food. Pure glucose is the preferred treatment, but any form of carbohydrate that contains glucose will raise blood glucose. Added fat may retard and then prolong the acute glycemic response. In type 2 diabetes, ingested protein may increase insulin response without increasing plasma glucose concentrations (103). Therefore, carbohydrate sources high in protein should not be used to treat or prevent hypoglycemia. Ongoing insulin activity or insulin secretagogues may lead to recurrent hypoglycemia unless more food is ingested after recovery. Once the glucose returns to normal, the individual should be counseled to eat a meal or snack to prevent recurrent hypoglycemia.

### Glucagon

The use of glucagon is indicated for the treatment of hypoglycemia in people unable or unwilling to consume carbohydrates by mouth. Those in close contact with, or having custodial care of, people with hypoglycemia-prone diabetes (family members, roommates, school personnel, childcare providers, correctional institution staff, or coworkers) should be instructed on the use of glucagon, including where the glucagon product is kept and when and how to administer it. An individual does not need to be a health care professional to safely administer glucagon. In addition to traditional glucagon injection powder that requires reconstitution prior to injection, intranasal glucagon and ready-to-inject glucagon

| Table 6.4—Classification of hypoglycemia |
| Glycemic criteria/description |
| Level 1 | Glucose <70 mg/dL (3.9 mmol/L) and ≥54 mg/dL (3.0 mmol/L) |
| Level 2 | Glucose <54 mg/dL (3.0 mmol/L) |
| Level 3 | A severe event characterized by altered mental and/or physical status requiring assistance for treatment of hypoglycemia |

Reprinted from Agiostratidou et al. (72).
preparations for subcutaneous injection are available. Care should be taken to ensure that glucagon products are not expired.

**Hypoglycemia Prevention**

Hypoglycemia prevention is a critical component of diabetes management. BGM and, for some patients, CGM are essential tools to assess therapy and detect incipient hypoglycemia. Patients should understand situations that increase their risk of hypoglycemia, such as when fasting for laboratory tests or procedures, when meals are delayed, and after the consumption of alcohol, during and after intense exercise, and during sleep. Hypoglycemia may increase the risk of harm to self or others, such as when driving. Teaching people with diabetes to balance insulin use and carbohydrate intake and exercise are necessary, but these strategies are not always sufficient for prevention (82,104–106). Formal training programs to increase awareness of hypoglycemia and to develop strategies to decrease hypoglycemia have been developed, including the Blood Glucose Awareness Training Programme, Dose Adjusted for Normal Eating (DAFNE), and DAFNEplus. Conversely, some individuals with type 1 diabetes and hypoglycemia who have a fear of hypoglycemia are resistant to relaxation of glycemic targets (78,80).

Regardless of the factors contributing to hypoglycemia and hypoglycemia unawareness, this represents an urgent medical issue requiring intervention. In type 1 diabetes and severely insulin-deficient type 2 diabetes, hypoglycemia unawareness (or hypoglycemia-associated autonomic failure) can severely compromise stringent diabetes control and quality of life. This syndrome is characterized by deficient counterregulatory hormone release, especially in older adults, and a diminished autonomic response, which are both risk factors for and caused by hypoglycemia. A corollary to this “vicious cycle” is that several weeks of avoidance of hypoglycemia has been demonstrated to improve counterregulation and hypoglycemia awareness in many patients (107). Hence, patients with one or more episodes of clinically significant hypoglycemia may benefit from at least short-term relaxation of glycemic targets and availability of glucagon (108). Any person with recurrent hypoglycemia or hypoglycemia unawareness should have their glucose management regimen adjusted.

**Use of CGM Technology in Hypoglycemia Prevention**

With the advent of CGM and CGM-assisted pump therapy, there has been a promise of alarm-based prevention of hypoglycemia (109,110). To date, there have been a number of randomized controlled trials in adults with type 1 diabetes and studies in adults and children with type 1 diabetes using real-time CGM (see Section 7, “Diabetes Technology,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S007). These studies had differing A1C at entry and differing primary end points and thus must be interpreted carefully. Real-time CGM studies can be divided into studies with elevated A1C with the primary end point of A1C reduction and studies with A1C near target with the primary end point of reduction in hypoglycemia (100,110–125). In people with type 1 and type 2 diabetes with A1C above target, CGM improved A1C between 0.3% and 0.6%. For studies targeting hypoglycemia, most studies demonstrated a significant reduction in time spent between 54 and 70 mg/dL. A recent report in people with type 1 diabetes over the age of 60 years revealed a small but statistically significant decrease in hypoglycemia (126). No study to date has reported a decrease in level 3 hypoglycemia. In a single study using intermittently scanned CGM, adults with type 1 diabetes with A1C near goal and impaired awareness of hypoglycemia demonstrated no change in A1C and decreased level 2 hypoglycemia (116). For people with type 2 diabetes, studies examining the impact of CGM on hypoglycemic events are limited; a recent meta-analysis does not reflect a significant impact on hypoglycemic events in type 2 diabetes (127), whereas improvements in A1C were observed in most studies (127–133). Overall, real-time CGM appears to be a useful tool for decreasing time spent in a hypoglycemic range in people with impaired awareness. For type 2 diabetes, other strategies to assist patients with insulin dosing can improve A1C with minimal hypoglycemia (134,135).

**INTERCURRENT ILLNESS**

For further information on management of patients with hyperglycemia in the hospital, see Section 16, “Diabetes Care in the Hospital” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S016).

Stressful events (e.g., illness, trauma, surgery, etc.) may worsen glycemic control and precipitate diabetic ketoacidosis or nonketotic hyperglycemic hyperosmolar state, life-threatening conditions that require immediate medical care to prevent complications and death. Any condition leading to deterioration in glycemic control necessitates more frequent monitoring of blood glucose; ketosis-prone patients also require urine or blood ketone monitoring. If accompanied by ketosis, vomiting, or alteration in the level of consciousness, marked hyperglycemia requires temporary adjustment of the treatment regimen and immediate interaction with the diabetes care team. The patient treated with noninsulin therapies or medical nutrition therapy alone may require insulin. Adequate fluid and caloric intake must be ensured. Infection or dehydration are more likely to necessitate hospitalization of individuals with diabetes versus those without diabetes.

A physician with expertise in diabetes management should treat the hospitalized patient. For further information on the management of diabetic ketoacidosis and the nonketotic hyperglycemic hyperosmolar state, please refer to the ADA consensus report “Hyperglycemic Crises in Adult Patients With Diabetes” (135).

**References**


4. Little RR, Rohlfing CL; National Glycohemoglobin Standardization Program (NGSP) Steering Committee. Status of hemoglobin A1c measurement and goals for improvement: from
83. Harris SM, Joyce H, Miller A, Connor C, Amiel SA, Mulher H. The attitude of healthcare
professionals plays an important role in the uptake of diabetes self-management education: analysis of the Barriers to Uptake of Type 1 Diabetes Education (BUD1E) study survey. Diabet Med 2018;35:1189–1196
84. Choudhary P, Amiel SA. Hypoglycaemia in type 1 diabetes: technological treatments, their limitations and the place of psychology. Diabetologia 2018;61:761–769
105. Farrell CM, McCormrin RJ. Clinical approaches to treat impaired awareness of hypoglycaemia. Ther Adv Endocrinol Metab 2012;201208112000248
124. Battelino T, Phillip M, Bratina N, Nimri R, Oskarsson P, Bolinder J. Effect of continuous...
glucose monitoring on hypoglycemia in type 1 diabetes. Diabetes Care 2011;34:795–800
7. Diabetes Technology: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2022

Diabetes Care 2022;45(Suppl. 1):S97–S112 | https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S007

The American Diabetes Association (ADA) “Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes” includes the ADA’s current clinical practice recommendations and is intended to provide the components of diabetes care, general treatment goals and guidelines, and tools to evaluate quality of care. Members of the ADA Professional Practice Committee, a multidisciplinary expert committee (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SPPC), are responsible for updating the Standards of Care annually, or more frequently as warranted. For a detailed description of ADA standards, statements, and reports, as well as the evidence-grading system for ADA’s clinical practice recommendations, please refer to the Standards of Care Introduction (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SINT). Readers who wish to comment on the Standards of Care are invited to do so at professional.diabetes.org/SOC.

Diabetes technology is the term used to describe the hardware, devices, and software that people with diabetes use to help manage their condition, from lifestyle to blood glucose levels. Historically, diabetes technology has been divided into two main categories: insulin administered by syringe, pen, or pump (also called continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion [CSII]), and blood glucose as assessed by blood glucose monitoring (BGM) or continuous glucose monitoring (CGM). More recently, diabetes technology has expanded to include hybrid devices that both monitor glucose and deliver insulin, some automatically, as well as software that serves as a medical device, providing diabetes self-management support. Diabetes technology, when coupled with education and follow-up, can improve the lives and health of people with diabetes; however, the complexity and rapid change of the diabetes technology landscape can also be a barrier to patient and provider implementation.

GENERAL DEVICE PRINCIPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommendations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7.1 The type(s) and selection of devices should be individualized based on a person’s specific needs, desires, skill level, and availability of devices. In the setting of an individual whose diabetes is partially or wholly managed by someone else (e.g., a young child or a person with cognitive impairment), the caregiver’s skills and desires are integral to the decision-making process.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2 When prescribing a device, ensure that people with diabetes/caregivers receive initial and ongoing education and training, either in-person or remotely, and regular evaluation of technique, results, and their ability</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2021 by the American Diabetes Association. Readers may use this article as long as the work is properly cited, the use is educational and not for profit, and the work is not altered. More information is available at https://diabetesjournals.org/journals/pages/license.
Major clinical trials of insulin-treated patients have included BGM as part of multifactorial interventions to demonstrate the benefit of intensive glycemic control on diabetes complications (5). BGM is thus an integral component of effective therapy of patients taking insulin. In recent years, CGM has emerged as a method for the assessment of glucose levels (discussed below). Glucose monitoring allows patients to evaluate their individual response to therapy and assess whether glycemic targets are being safely achieved. Integrating results into diabetes management can be a useful tool for guiding medical nutrition therapy and physical activity, preventing hypoglycemia, or adjusting medications (particularly prandial insulin doses). The patient’s specific needs and goals should dictate BGM frequency and timing or the consideration of CGM use. As recommended by the device manufacturers and/or automated insulin delivery (AID) systems or continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion (CSII) may be considered. Interruption of insulin delivery for diabetes care at school, including training materials and a DMMP template, can be found online at www.diabetes.org/safeatschool.

**Initiation of Device Use**

Use of CGM devices should be considered from the outset of the diagnosis of diabetes that requires insulin management (2,3). This allows for close tracking of glucose levels with adjustments in insulin dosing and lifestyle modifications and removes the burden of frequent BGM. In appropriate individuals, early use of automated insulin delivery (AID) systems or continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion (CSII) may be considered. Interruption of access to CGM is associated with a worsening of outcomes (4); therefore, it is important for individuals on CGM to have consistent access to devices.

**Use in Schools**

Instructions for device use should be outlined in the student’s diabetes medical management plan (DMMP). A back-up plan should be included in the DMMP for potential device failure (e.g., BGM and/or injected insulin). School nurses and designees should complete training to stay up to date on diabetes technologies prescribed for use in the school setting. Updated resources to support diabetes care at school, including training materials and a DMMP template, can be found online at www.diabetes.org/safeatschool.

**Initiation of Continuous Glucose Monitoring**

Students must be supported at school in the use of diabetes technology including continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion, connected insulin pens, and automated insulin delivery systems as prescribed by their diabetes care team. E

**Education and Training**

In general, no device used in diabetes management works optimally without education, training, and follow-up. There are multiple resources for online tutorials and training videos as well as written material on the use of devices. Patients vary in terms of comfort level with technology, and some prefer in-person training and support. Patients with more education regarding device use have better outcomes (1); therefore, the need for additional education should be periodically assessed, particularly if outcomes are not being met.

**Use of CGM devices should be considered from the outset of the diagnosis of diabetes that requires insulin management (2,3).**

**Recommendations**

| 7.6 | People with diabetes should be provided with blood glucose monitoring devices as indicated by their circumstances, preferences, and treatment. People using continuous glucose monitoring devices must have access to blood glucose monitoring at all times. A |
| 7.7 | People who are on insulin using blood glucose monitoring should be encouraged to check when appropriate based on their insulin regimen. This may include checking when fasting, prior to meals and snacks, at bedtime, prior to exercise, when low blood glucose is suspected, after treating low blood glucose levels until they are normoglycemic, and prior to and while performing critical tasks such as driving. B |
| 7.8 | Providers should be aware of the differences in accuracy among blood glucose meters—only U.S. Food and Drug Administration–approved meters with proven accuracy should be used, with unexpired strips purchased from a pharmacy or licensed distributor. E |
| 7.9 | Although blood glucose monitoring in individuals on noninsulin therapies has not consistently shown clinically significant reductions in A1C, it may be helpful when altering diet, physical activity, and/or medications (particularly medications that can cause hypoglycemia) in conjunction with a treatment adjustment program. E |
| 7.10 | Health care providers should be aware of medications and other factors, such as high-dose vitamin C and hypoxemia, that can interfere with glucose meter accuracy and provide clinical management as indicated. E |
manufacturers and the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), patients using CGM must have access to BGM testing for multiple reasons, including whenever there is suspicion that the CGM is inaccurate, while waiting for warm-up, for calibration (some sensors) or if a warning message appears, and in any clinical setting where glucose levels are changing rapidly (>2 mg/dL/min), which could cause a discrepancy between CGM and blood glucose.

**Meter Standards**

Glucose meters meeting FDA guidance for meter accuracy provide the most reliable data for diabetes management. There are several current standards for accuracy of blood glucose monitors, but the two most used are those of the International Organization for Standardization (ISO) (ISO 15197:2013) and the FDA. The current ISO and FDA standards are compared in Table 7.1. In Europe, currently marketed monitors must meet current ISO standards. In the U.S., currently marketed monitors must meet the standard under which they were approved, which may not be the current standard. Moreover, the monitoring of current accuracy is left to the manufacturer and not routinely checked by an independent source.

Patients assume their glucose monitor is accurate because it is FDA cleared, but often that is not the case. There is substantial variation in the accuracy of widely used BGM systems (6,7). The Diabetes Technology Society Blood Glucose Monitoring System Surveillance Program provides information on the performance of devices used for BGM (www.diabetestechology.org/surveillance/). In one analysis, only 6 of the top 18 glucose meters met the accuracy standard (8). There are single-meter studies in which benefits have been found with individual meter systems, but few studies have compared meters in a head-to-head manner. Certain meter system characteristics, such as the use of lancing devices that are less painful (9) and the ability to reapply blood to a strip with an insufficient initial sample, may also be beneficial to patients (10) and may make BGM less burdensome for patients to perform.

**Counterfeit Strips**

Patients should be advised against purchasing or reselling preowned or second-hand test strips, as these may give incorrect results. Only unopened and unexpired vials of glucose test strips should be used to ensure BGM accuracy.

**Optimizing Blood Glucose Monitoring Device Use**

Optimal use of BGM devices requires proper review and interpretation of data, by both the patient and the provider, to ensure that data are used in an effective and timely manner. In patients with type 1 diabetes, there is a correlation between greater BGM frequency and lower A1C (11). Among patients who check their blood glucose at least once daily, many report taking no action when results are high or low (12). Some meters now provide advice to the user in real time when monitoring glucose levels (13), whereas others can be used as a part of integrated health platforms (14). Patients should be taught how to use BGM data to adjust food intake, exercise, or pharmacologic therapy to achieve specific goals. The ongoing need for and frequency of BGM should be reevaluated at each routine visit to ensure its effective use (12,15,16).

**Patients on Intensive Insulin Regimens**

BGM is especially important for insulin-treated patients to monitor for and prevent hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia. Most patients using intensive insulin regimens (multiple daily injections [MDI] or insulin pump therapy) should be encouraged to assess glucose levels using BGM (and/or CGM) prior to meals and snacks, at bedtime, occasionally postprandially, prior to exercise, when they suspect low blood glucose, after treating low blood glucose until they are normoglycemic, and prior to and while performing critical tasks such as driving. For many patients using BGM this requires checking up to 6–10 times daily, although individual needs may vary. A database study of almost 27,000 children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes showed that, after adjustment for multiple confounders, increased daily frequency of BGM was significantly associated with lower A1C (−0.2% per additional check per day) and with fewer acute complications (17).

**Patients Using Basal Insulin and/or Oral Agents**

The evidence is insufficient regarding when to prescribe BGM and how often monitoring is needed for insulin-treated patients who do not use intensive insulin regimens, such as those with type 2 diabetes using basal insulin with or without oral agents. However, for patients using basal insulin, assessing fasting glucose with BGM to inform dose adjustments to achieve blood glucose targets results in lower A1C (18,19).

---

**Table 7.1—Comparison of ISO 15197:2013 and FDA blood glucose meter accuracy standards**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting</th>
<th>FDA (224,225)</th>
<th>ISO 15197:2013 (226)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Home use</td>
<td>95% within 15% for all BG in the usable BG range†</td>
<td>95% within 15% for BG ≥100 mg/dL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>99% within 20% for all BG in the usable BG range†</td>
<td>95% within 15 mg/dL for BG &lt;100 mg/dL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>99% in A or B region of consensus error grid‡</td>
<td>99% in A or B region of consensus error grid‡</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

BG: blood glucose; FDA, U.S. Food and Drug Administration; ISO, International Organization for Standardization. To convert mg/dL to mmol/L, see endmemo.com/medical/unitconvert/Glucose.php. †The range of blood glucose values for which the meter has been proven accurate and will provide readings (other than low, high, or error). ‡Values outside of the “clinically acceptable” A and B regions are considered “outlier” readings and may be dangerous to use for therapeutic decisions (228).
In people with type 2 diabetes not using insulin, routine glucose monitoring may be of limited additional clinical benefit. By itself, even when combined with education, it has shown limited improvement in outcomes (20–23). However, for some individuals, glucose monitoring can provide insight into the impact of diet, physical activity, and medication management on glucose levels. Glucose monitoring may also be useful in assessing hypoglycemia, glucose levels during intercurrent illness, or discrepancies between measured A1C and glucose levels when there is concern an A1C result may not be reliable in specific individuals. It may be useful when coupled with a treatment adjustment program. In a year-long study of insulin-naive patients with suboptimal initial glycemic stability, a group trained in structured BGM (a paper tool was used at least quarterly to collect and interpret seven-point BGM profiles taken on 3 consecutive days) reduced their A1C by 0.3% more than the control group (24). A trial of once-daily BGM that included enhanced patient feedback through messaging found no clinically or statistically significant change in A1C at 1 year (23). Meta-analyses have suggested that BGM can reduce A1C by 0.25–0.3% at 6 months (25–27), but the effect was attenuated at 12 months in one analysis (25). Reductions in A1C were greater (−0.3%) in trials where structured BGM data were used to adjust medications, but A1C was not changed significantly without such structured diabetes therapy adjustment (27). A key consideration is that performing BGM alone does not lower blood glucose levels. To be useful, the information must be integrated into clinical self-management plans.

**Glucose Meter Inaccuracy**

Although many meters function well under a variety of circumstances, providers and people with diabetes need to be aware of factors that can impair meter accuracy. A meter reading that seems discordant with clinical reality needs to be retested or tested in a laboratory. Providers in intensive care unit settings need to be particularly aware of the potential for abnormal meter readings, and laboratory-based values should be used if there is any doubt. Some meters give error messages if meter readings are likely to be false (28).

**Oxygen.** Currently available glucose monitors utilize an enzymatic reaction linked to an electrochemical reaction, either glucose oxidase or glucose dehydrogenase (29). Glucose oxidase monitors are sensitive to the oxygen available and should only be used with capillary blood in patients with normal oxygen saturation. Higher oxygen tensions (i.e., arterial blood or oxygen therapy) may result in false low glucose readings, and low oxygen tensions (i.e., high altitude, hypoxia, or venous blood readings) may lead to false high glucose readings. Glucose dehydrogenase–based monitors are not sensitive to oxygen.

**Temperature.** Because the reaction is sensitive to temperature, all monitors have an acceptable temperature range (29). Most will show an error if the temperature is unacceptable, but a few will provide a reading and a message indicating that the value may be incorrect.

**Interfering Substances.** There are a few physiologic and pharmacologic factors that interfere with glucose readings. Most interfere only with glucose oxidase systems (29). They are listed in Table 7.2.

### CONTINUOUS GLUCOSE MONITORING DEVICES

See Table 7.3 for definitions of types of CGM devices.

**Recommendations**

7.11 Real-time continuous glucose monitoring A or intermittently scanned continuous glucose monitoring B should be offered for diabetes management in adults with diabetes on multiple daily injections or continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion who are capable of using devices safely (either by themselves or with a caregiver). The choice of device should be made based on patient circumstances, desires, and needs.

7.12 Real-time continuous glucose monitoring A or intermittently scanned continuous glucose monitoring C can be used for diabetes management in adults with diabetes on basal insulin who are capable of using devices safely (either by themselves or with a caregiver). The choice of device should be made based on patient circumstances, desires, and needs.

7.13 Real-time continuous glucose monitoring B or intermittently scanned continuous glucose monitoring E should be offered for diabetes management in youth with type 1 diabetes on multiple daily injections or continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion who are capable of using the device safely (either by themselves or with a caregiver). The choice of device should be made based on patient circumstances, desires, and needs.

7.14 Real-time continuous glucose monitoring or intermittently scanned continuous glucose monitoring should be offered for diabetes management in youth with type 2 diabetes on multiple daily injections or continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion who are capable of using devices safely (either by themselves or with a caregiver). The choice of device should be made based on patient circumstances, desires, and needs.

7.15 Real-time continuous glucose monitoring or intermittently scanned continuous glucose monitoring should be offered for diabetes management in adults with diabetes on multiple daily injections or continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion who are capable of using devices safely (either by themselves or with a caregiver). The choice of device should be made based on patient circumstances, desires, and needs.

7.16 When used as an adjunct to pre- and postprandial blood glucose monitoring, continuous glucose monitoring can help to achieve A1C targets in diabetes and pregnancy.

7.17 Periodic use of real-time or intermittently scanned continuous glucose monitoring...
or use of professional continuous glucose monitoring can be helpful for diabetes management in circumstances where continuous use of continuous glucose monitoring is not appropriate, desired, or available. C

7.18 Skin reactions, either due to irritation or allergy, should be assessed and addressed to aid in successful use of devices. E

Continuous glucose monitoring (CGM) measures interstitial glucose (which correlates well with plasma glucose, although at times it can lag if glucose levels are rising or falling rapidly). There are two basic types of CGM devices: those that are owned by the user, unblinded, and intended for frequent/continued use, including real-time CGM (rtCGM) and intermittently scanned CGM (isCGM); and professional CGM devices that are owned and applied in the clinic, which provide data that are blinded or unblinded for a discrete period of time. Table 7.3 provides the definitions for the types of CGM devices. For people with type 1 diabetes using CGM, frequency of sensor use was an important predictor of A1C lowering for all age-groups (30,31). Frequency of swiping with isCGM devices was also correlated with improved outcomes (32–35).

Some real-time systems require calibration by the user, which varies in frequency depending on the device. Additionally, some CGM systems are called “adjunctive,” meaning the user should perform BGM for making treatment decisions. Devices that do not have this requirement, outside of certain clinical situations (see BLOOD GLUCOSE MONITORING above), are called “nonadjunctive” (36–38).

One specific isCGM device (FreeStyle Libre 2 [no generic form available]) and one specific rtCGM device (Dexcom G6 [no generic form available]) have been designated as integrated CGM (iCGM) devices (39). This is a higher standard, set by the FDA, so these devices can be reliably integrated with other digitally connected devices, including automated insulin-dosing systems.

The first version of isCGM did not provide alerts or alarms. Currently published literature does not include studies that used isCGM with alarms, which became available in June 2020 in the U.S. Therefore, the discussion that follows is based on the use of the earlier devices.

**Table 7.2—Interfering substances for glucose readings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Glucose oxidase monitors</th>
<th>Glucose dehydrogenase monitors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Uric acid</td>
<td>Icodextrin (used in peritoneal dialysis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galactose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xylose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acetaminophen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-DOPA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ascorbic acid</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 7.3—Continuous glucose monitoring devices**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of CGM</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rtCGM</td>
<td>CGM systems that measure and store glucose levels continuously and without prompting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isCGM with and without alarms</td>
<td>CGM systems that measure glucose levels continuously but require scanning for storage of glucose values</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Professional CGM</td>
<td>CGM devices that are placed on the patient in the provider’s office (or with remote instruction) and worn for a discrete period of time (generally 7–14 days). Data may be blinded or visible to the person wearing the device. The data are used to assess glycemic patterns and trends. These devices are not fully owned by the patient—they are clinic-based devices, as opposed to the patient-owned rtCGM/isCGM devices.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CGM, continuous glucose monitoring; isCGM, intermittently scanned CGM; rtCGM, real-time CGM.
analyses of registry and population data (67,68). In individuals with type 1 diabetes using isCGM, most (35,67,69), but not all (70), studies have shown improvement in A1C levels. Reductions in acute diabetes complications, such as diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) and episodes of severe hypoglycemia, have been seen (35,70). Some retrospective/observational data are available on adults with type 2 diabetes on MDI (71), basal insulin (72), and basal insulin or nonsulin therapies (73) showing improvement in A1C levels. In a retrospective study of adults with type 2 diabetes taking insulin, a reduction in acute diabetes-related events and all-cause hospitalizations was seen (74). Results of patient-reported outcomes varied, but where measured, patients had an increase in treatment satisfaction when comparing isCGM with BGM.

In an observational study in youth with type 1 diabetes, a slight increase in A1C and weight was seen, but the device was associated with a high rate of user satisfaction (68).

Retrospective data from rtCGM use in a Veterans Affairs population (75) with type 1 and type 2 diabetes treated with insulin show that use of real-time rtCGM significantly lowered A1C and reduced rates of emergency department visits or hospitalizations for hypoglycemia, but did not significantly lower overall rates of emergency department visits, hospitalizations, or hyperglycemia.

**Real-time Continuous Glucose Monitoring Compared With Intermittently Scanned Continuous Glucose Monitoring**

In adults with type 1 diabetes, three RCTs have been done comparing isCGM and rtCGM (76–78). In two of the studies, the primary outcome was a reduction in time spent in hypoglycemia, and rtCGM showed benefit compared with isCGM (76,77). In the other study, the primary outcome was improved time in range (TIR), and rtCGM also showed benefit compared with isCGM (78). A retrospective analysis also showed improvement in TIR comparing rtCGM with isCGM (79).

**Data Analysis**

The abundance of data provided by CGM offers opportunities to analyze patient data more granularly than previously possible, providing additional information to aid in achieving glycemic targets. A variety of metrics have been proposed (80) and are discussed in Section 6, “Glycemic Targets” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S006). CGM is essential for creating an ambulatory glucose profile and providing data on TIR, percentage of time spent above and below range, and variability (81).

**Real-time Continuous Glucose Monitoring Device Use in Pregnancy**

One well-designed RCT showed a reduction in A1C levels in adult women with type 1 diabetes on MDI or CSII who were pregnant and using rtCGM in addition to standard care, including optimization of pre- and postprandial glucose targets (82). This study demonstrated the value of rtCGM in pregnancy complicated by type 1 diabetes by showing a mild improvement in A1C without an increase in hypoglycemia as well as reductions in large-for-gestational-age births, length of stay, and neonatal hypoglycemia (82). An observational cohort study that evaluated the glycemic variables reported using rtCGM found that lower mean glucose, lower standard deviation, and a higher percentage of time in target range were associated with lower risk of large-for-gestational-age births and other adverse neonatal outcomes (83). Use of the rtCGM-reported mean glucose is superior to use of estimated A1C, glucose management indicator, and other calculations to estimate A1C given the changes to A1C that occur in pregnancy (84). Two studies employing intermittent use of rtCGM showed no difference in neonatal outcomes in women with type 1 diabetes (85) or gestational diabetes mellitus (86).

**Use of Professional and Intermittent Continuous Glucose Monitoring**

Professional CGM devices, which provide retrospective data, either blinded or unblinded, for analysis, can be used to identify patterns of hypo- and hyperglycemia (87,88). Professional CGM can be helpful to evaluate patients when either rtCGM or isCGM is not available to the patient or the patient prefers a blinded analysis or a shorter experience with unblinded data. It can be particularly useful to evaluate periods of hypoglycemia in patients on agents that can cause hypoglycemia in order to make medication dose adjustments. It can also be useful to evaluate patients for periods of hyperglycemia.

There are some data showing benefit of intermittent use of CGM (rtCGM or isCGM) in individuals with type 2 diabetes on noninsulin and/or basal insulin therapies (59,89). In these RCTs, patients with type 2 diabetes not on intensive insulin regimens used CGM intermittently compared with patients randomized to BGM. Both early (59) and late improvements in A1C were found (59,89).

Use of professional or intermittent CGM should always be coupled with analysis and interpretation for the patient, along with education as needed to adjust medication and change lifestyle behaviors (90–92).

**INSULIN DELIVERY**

**Insulin Syringes and Pens**

**Recommendations**

7.19 For people with diabetes who require insulin, insulin pens are preferred in most cases, but insulin syringes may be used for insulin delivery with consideration of patient/caregiver preference, insulin type and dosing regimen, cost, and self-management capabilities. C

7.20 Insulin pens or insulin injection aids should be considered for people with dexterity issues or vision impairment to facilitate the administration of accurate insulin doses. C

7.21 Connected insulin pens can be helpful for diabetes
Injecting insulin with a syringe or pen (106–122) is the insulin delivery method used by most people with diabetes (113,123), although inhaled insulin is also available. Others use insulin pumps or AID devices (see section on those topics below). For patients with diabetes who use insulin, insulin syringes and pens are both able to deliver insulin safely and effectively for the achievement of glycemic targets. When choosing among delivery systems, patient preferences, cost, insulin type and dosing regimen, and self-management capabilities should be considered. Trials with insulin pens generally show equivalence or small improvements in glycemic outcomes when compared with use of a vial and syringe. Many individuals with diabetes prefer using a pen due to its simplicity and convenience. It is important to note that while many insulin types are available for purchase as either pens or vials, others may only be available in one form or the other and there may be significant cost differences between pens and vials (see Table 9.4 for a list of insulin product costs with dosage forms). Insulin pens may allow people with vision impairment or dexterity issues to dose insulin accurately (124–126), while insulin injection aids are also available to help with these issues. (For a helpful list of injection aids, see main.diabetes.org/dorg/pdfs/2018-18cg-injection-aids.pdf). Inhaled insulin can be useful in people who have an aversion to injection.

The most common syringe sizes are 1 mL, 0.5 mL, and 0.3 mL, allowing doses of up to 100 units, 50 units, and 30 units of U-100 insulin, respectively. In a few parts of the world, insulin syringes still have U-80 and U-40 markings for older insulin concentrations and veterinary insulin, and U-500 syringes are available for the use of U-500 insulin. Syringes are generally used once but may be reused by the same individual in resource-limited settings with appropriate storage and cleansing (126).

Insulin pens offer added convenience by combining the vial and syringe into a single device. Insulin pens, allowing push-button injections, come as disposable pens with prefilled cartridges or reusable insulin pens with replaceable insulin cartridges. Pens vary with respect to dosing increment and minimal dose, which can range from half-unit doses to 2-unit dose increments. U-500 pens come in 5-unit dose increments. Some reusable pens include a memory function, which can recall dose amounts and timing. Connected insulin pens (CIPs) are insulin pens with the capacity to record and/or transmit insulin dose data. They were previously known as “smart pens.” Some CIPs can be programmed to calculate insulin doses and provide downloadable data reports. These pens are useful to assist patient insulin dosing in real time as well as for allowing clinicians to retrospectively review the insulin doses that were given and make insulin dose adjustments (127).

Needle thickness (gauge) and length is another consideration. Needle gauges range from 22 to 33, with higher gauge indicating a thinner needle. A thicker needle can give a dose of insulin more quickly, while a thinner needle may cause less pain. Needle length ranges from 4 to 12.7 mm, with some evidence suggesting shorter needles may lower the risk of intramuscular injection. When reused, needles may be duller and thus injection more painful. Proper insulin injection technique is a requisite for obtaining the full benefits of insulin therapy. Concerns with technique and use of the proper technique are outlined in Section 9, “Pharmacologic Approaches to Glycemic Treatment” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S009).

Bolus calculators have been developed to aid in dosing decisions (128–132). These systems are subject to FDA approval to ensure safety in terms of dosing recommendations. People who are interested in using these systems should be encouraged to use those that are FDA approved. Provider input and education can be helpful for setting the initial dosing calculations with ongoing follow-up for adjustments as needed.

### Insulin Pumps and Automated Insulin Delivery Systems

#### Recommendations

7.23 Automated insulin delivery systems should be offered or diabetes management to youth and adults with type 1 diabetes A and other types of insulin-deficient diabetes E who are capable of using the device safely (either by themselves or with a caregiver). The choice of device should be made based on patient circumstances, desires, and needs.

7.24 Insulin pump therapy alone with or without sensor-augmented low glucose suspend should be offered for diabetes management to youth and adults on multiple daily injections with type 1 diabetes A or other types of insulin-deficient diabetes E who are capable of using the device safely (either by themselves or with a caregiver) and are not able to use/interested in an automated insulin delivery system. The choice of device should be made based on patient circumstances, desires, and needs.

7.25 Insulin pump therapy can be offered for diabetes management to youth and adults on multiple daily injections with type 2 diabetes who are capable of using the device safely (either by themselves or with a caregiver). The choice of device should be made based on patient circumstances, desires, and needs.

7.26 Individuals with diabetes who have been successfully using continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion should have continued access across third-party payers.

#### Insulin Pumps

CSII, or insulin pumps, have been available in the U.S. for over 40 years. These devices deliver rapid-acting insulin throughout the day to help manage blood glucose levels. Most insulin
pumps use tubing to deliver insulin through a cannula, while a few attach directly to the skin, without tubing. AID systems, discussed below, are preferred over nonautomated pumps and MDI in people with type 1 diabetes.

Most studies comparing MDI with CSII have been relatively small and of short duration. However, a systematic review and meta-analysis concluded that pump therapy has modest advantages for lowering A1C (−0.30% [95% CI −0.58 to −0.02]) and for reducing severe hypoglycemia rates in children and adults (133). There is no consensus to guide choosing which form of insulin administration is best for a given patient, and research to guide this decision-making is needed (134). Thus, the choice of MDI or an insulin pump is often based upon the individual characteristics of the patient and which is most likely to benefit them. Newer systems, such as sensor-augmented pumps and AID systems, are discussed below.

Adoption of pump therapy in the U.S. shows geographical variations, which may be related to provider preference or center characteristics (135,136) and socioeconomic status, as pump therapy is more common in individuals of higher socioeconomic status as reflected by race/ethnicity, private health insurance, family income, and education (135,136).

Given the additional barriers to optimal diabetes care observed in disadvantaged groups (137), addressing the differences in access to insulin pumps and other diabetes technology may contribute to fewer health disparities.

Pump therapy can be successfully started at the time of diagnosis (138,139). Practical aspects of pump therapy initiation include assessment of patient and family readiness, if applicable (although there is no consensus on which factors to consider in adults [140] or pediatric patients), selection of pump type and initial pump settings, patient/family education on potential pump complications (e.g., DKA with infusion set failure), transition from MDI, and introduction of advanced pump settings (e.g., temporary basal rates, extended/square dual wave bolus).

Older individuals with type 1 diabetes benefit from ongoing insulin pump therapy. There are no data to suggest that measurement of C-peptide levels or antibodies predicts success with insulin pump therapy (141,142). Additionally, frequency of follow-up does not influence outcomes. Access to insulin pump therapy should be allowed or continued in older adults as it is in younger people.

Complications of the pump can be caused by issues with infusion sets (dislodgement, occlusion), which place patients at risk for ketosis and DKA and thus must be recognized and managed early (143). Other pump skin issues included lipohypertrophy or, less frequently, lipoatrophy (144,145), and pump site infection (146). Discontinuation of pump therapy is relatively uncommon today; the frequency has decreased over the past few decades, and its causes have changed (146,147). Current reasons for attrition are problems with cost or wearability, dislike for the pump, suboptimal glycemic control, or mood disorders (e.g., anxiety or depression) (148).

Insulin Pumps in Youth
The safety of insulin pumps in youth has been established for over 15 years (149). Studying the effectiveness of CSII in lowering A1C has been challenging because of the potential selection bias of observational studies. Participants on CSII may have a higher socioeconomic status that may facilitate better glycemic control (150) versus MDI. In addition, the fast pace of development of new insulins and technologies quickly renders comparisons obsolete. However, RCTs comparing CSII and MDI with insulin analogs demonstrate a modest improvement in A1C in participants on CSII (151,152). Observational studies, registry data, and meta-analysis have also suggested an improvement of glycemic control in participants on CSII (153–155). Although hypoglycemia was a major adverse effect of intensified insulin regimen in the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT) (156), data suggest that CSII may reduce the rates of severe hypoglycemia compared with MDI (155,157–159).

There is also evidence that CSII may reduce DKA risk (155,160) and diabetes complications, particularly retinopathy and peripheral neuropathy in youth, compared with MDI (161). Finally, treatment satisfaction and quality-of-life measures improved on CSII compared with MDI (162,163). Therefore, CSII can be used safely and effectively in youth with type 1 diabetes to assist with achieving targeted glycemic control while reducing the risk of hypoglycemia and DKA, improving quality of life, and preventing long-term complications. Based on patient-provider shared decision-making, insulin pumps may be considered in all pediatric patients with type 1 diabetes. In particular, pump therapy may be the preferred mode of insulin delivery for children under 7 years of age (164). Because of a paucity of data in adolescents and youth with type 2 diabetes, there is insufficient evidence to make recommendations.

Common barriers to pump therapy adoption in children and adolescents are concerns regarding the physical interference of the device, discomfort with the idea of having a device on the body, therapeutic effectiveness, and financial burden (153,165).

Automated Insulin Delivery Systems
AID systems increase and decrease insulin delivery based on sensor-derived glucose levels to approximate physiologic insulin delivery. These systems consist of three components: an insulin pump, a continuous glucose sensor, and an algorithm that determines insulin delivery. While insulin delivery in closed-loop systems eventually may be truly automated, currently used hybrid closed-loop systems require entry of carbohydrates consumed, and adjustments for exercise must be announced. Multiple studies, using a variety of systems with varying algorithms, pump, and sensors, have been performed in adults and children (166–175). Evidence suggests AID systems may reduce A1C levels and improve TIR (176–180). They may also lower the risk of exercise-related hypoglycemia (181) and may have psychosocial benefits (182–184). Use of AID systems depends on patient preference and selection of patients (and/or caregivers) who are capable of safely and effectively using the devices.

Sensor-Augmented Pumps
Sensor-augmented pumps that suspend insulin when glucose is low or predicted to go low within the next 30 min have been approved by the FDA. The Automation to Simulate Pancreatic Insulin
Response (ASPIRE) trial of 247 patients with type 1 diabetes and documented nocturnal hypoglycemia showed that sensor-augmented insulin pump therapy with a low glucose suspend function significantly reduced nocturnal hypoglycemia over 3 months without increasing A1C levels (50). In a different sensor-augmented pump, predictive low glucose suspend reduced time spent with glucose <70 mg/dL from 3.6% at baseline to 2.6% (3.2% with sensor-augmented pump therapy without predictive low glucose suspend) without rebound hyperglycemia during a 6-week randomized crossover trial (185). These devices may offer the opportunity to reduce hypoglycemia for those with a history of nocturnal hypoglycemia. Additional studies have been performed, in adults and children, showing the benefits of this technology (186–188).

**Insulin Pumps in Patients With Type 2 and Other Types of Diabetes**

Traditional insulin pumps can be considered for the treatment of people with type 2 diabetes who are on MDI as well as those who have other types of diabetes resulting in insulin deficiency, for instance, those who have had a pancreatectomy and/or individuals with cystic fibrosis (189–193). Similar to data on insulin pump use in people with type 1 diabetes, reductions in A1C levels are not consistently seen in individuals with type 2 diabetes when compared with MDI, although this has been seen in some studies (191,194). Use of insulin pumps in insulin-requiring patients with any type of diabetes may improve patient satisfaction and simplify therapy (142,189).

For patients judged to be clinically insulin deficient who are treated with an intensive insulin regimen, the presence or absence of measurable C-peptide levels does not correlate with response to therapy (142). Another pump option in people with type 2 diabetes is a dispos-able patchlike device, which provides a continuous, subcutaneous infusion of rapid-acting insulin (basal) as well as 2-unit increments of bolus insulin at the press of a button (190,192,195,196). Use of an insulin pump as a means for insulin delivery is an individual choice for people with diabetes and should be considered an option in patients who are capable of safely using the device.

### Do-It-Yourself Closed-Loop Systems

**Recommendation 7.27** Individual patients may be using systems not approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, such as do-it-yourself closed-loop systems and others; providers cannot prescribe these systems but should assist in diabetes management to ensure patient safety. E

Some people with type 1 diabetes have been using “do-it-yourself” (DIY) systems that combine a pump and an rtCGM with a controller and an algorithm designed to automate insulin delivery (197–200). These systems are not approved by the FDA, although there are efforts underway to obtain regulatory approval for them. The information on how to set up and manage these systems is freely available on the internet, and there are internet groups where people inform each other as to how to set up and use them. Although these systems cannot be prescribed by providers, it is important to keep patients safe if they are using these methods for automated insulin delivery. Part of this entails making sure people have a “backup plan” in case of pump failure. Additionally, in most DIY systems, insulin doses are adjusted based on the pump settings for basal rates, carbohydrate ratios, correction doses, and insulin activity. Therefore, these settings can be evaluated and changed based on the patient’s insulin requirements.

### Digital Health Technology

**Recommendation 7.28** Systems that combine technology and online coaching can be beneficial in treating prediabetes and diabetes for some individuals. B

Increasingly, people are turning to the internet for advice, coaching, connection, and health care. Diabetes, in part because it is both common and numeric, lends itself to the development of apps and online programs. Recommendations for developing and implementing a digital diabetes clinic have been published (201). The FDA approves and monitors clinically validated, digital, usually online, health technologies intended to treat a medical or psychological condition; these are known as digital therapeutics or “digiceuticals” (202). Other applications, such as those that assist in displaying or storing data, encourage a healthy lifestyle or provide limited clinical data support. Therefore, it is possible to find apps that have been fully reviewed and approved and others designed and promoted by people with relatively little skill or knowledge in the clinical treatment of diabetes.

An area of particular importance is that of online privacy and security. There are established cloud-based data collection programs, such as Tidepool, Glooko, and others, that have been developed with appropriate data security features and are compliant with the U.S. Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996. These programs can be useful for monitoring patients, both by the patients themselves as well as their health care team (203). Consumers should read the policy regarding data privacy and sharing before entering data into an application and learn how they can control the way their data will be used (some programs offer the ability to share more or less information, such as being part of a registry or data repository or not).

There are many online programs that offer lifestyle counseling to aid with weight loss and increase physical activity (204). Many of these include a health coach and can create small groups of similar patients in social networks. There are programs that aim to treat prediabetes and prevent progression to diabetes, often following the model of the Diabetes Prevention Program (205,206). Others assist in improving diabetes outcomes by remotely monitoring patient clinical data (for instance, wireless monitoring of glucose levels, weight, or blood pressure) and providing feedback and coaching (207–212). There are text messaging approaches that tie into a variety of different types of lifestyle and treatment programs, which vary in terms of their effectiveness (213,214). For many of these interventions, there are limited RCT data and long-term follow-up is lacking. However, for an individual patient, opting into one of these programs can be helpful and, for many, is an attractive option.
Inpatient Care

**Recommendation**

7.29 Patients who are in a position to safely use diabetes devices should be allowed to continue using them in an inpatient setting if they are competent to do so (215–218). Patients who are familiar with treating their own glucose levels can often adjust insulin doses more knowledgeably than inpatient staff who do not personally know the patient or their management style. However, this should occur based on the hospital's policies for diabetes management, and there should be supervision to be sure that the individual can adjust their insulin doses in a hospitalized setting where factors such as infection, certain medications, immobility, changes in diet, and other factors can impact insulin sensitivity and the response to insulin.

With the advent of the coronavirus disease 2019 pandemic, the FDA has allowed CGM use in the hospital for patient monitoring (219). This approach has been employed to reduce the use of personal protective equipment and more closely monitor patients, so that medical personnel do not have to go into a patient room solely for the purpose of measuring a glucose level (220–222). Studies are underway to assess the effectiveness of this approach, which may ultimately lead to the routine use of CGM for monitoring hospitalized patients (223,224).

When used in the setting of a clinical trial or when clinical circumstances (such as during a shortage of personal protective equipment) require it, CGM can be used to manage hospitalized patients in conjunction with BGM.

The Future

The pace of development in diabetes technology is extremely rapid. New approaches and tools are available each year. It is hard for research to keep up with these advances because by the time a study is completed, newer versions of the devices are already on the market. The most important component in all of these systems is the patient. Technology selection must be appropriate for the individual. Simply having a device or application does not change outcomes unless the human being engages with it to create positive health benefits. This underscores the need for the health care team to assist the patient in device/program selection and to support its use through ongoing education and training. Expectations must be tempered by reality—we do not yet have technology that completely eliminates the self-care tasks necessary for treating diabetes, but the tools described in this section can make it easier to manage.

**References**

15. Gellad WF, Zhao X, Thorpe CT, Mor MK, Good CB, Fine MJ. Dual use of Department of Veterans Affairs and Medicare benefits and use of test strips in veterans with type 2 diabetes mellitus. JAMA Intern Med 2015;175:26–34
54. Laffel LM, Kanapka LG, Beck RW, et al.; CGM Intervention in Teens and Young Adults with T1D (CITY) Study Group; CDE10. Effect of continuous glucose monitoring on glycemic control in adolescents and young adults with type 1 diabetes: a randomized clinical trial. JAMA 2020;323:2388–2396
55. Strategies to Enhance New CGM Use in Early Childhood (SENCE) Study Group. A randomized clinical trial assessing continuous glucose monitoring (CGM) use with standardized education with or without a family behavioral intervention compared with fingerstick blood glucose monitoring in very young children with type 1 diabetes. Diabetes Care 2021;44:464–472
randomized clinical trial. JAMA 2021;325: 2262–2272
71. Wright EE Jr, Kerr MS, Reyes U, Nabutovsky Y, Miller E. Use of flash continuous glucose monitoring is associated with A1C reduction in people with type 2 diabetes treated with basal insulin or noninsulin therapy. Diabetes Spectr 2021;34:184–189
94. Herman A, de Montjoye L, Baeck M. Adverse cutaneous reaction to diabetic glucose sensors and insulin pumps: irritant contact dermatitis or allergic contact dermatitis? Contact Dermat 2020;83:25–30
102. Orell E, Kamann S, Heinemann L, Reichl F-X, Högg C. The implanted glucose monitoring
system Eversense: an alternative for diabetes patients with isobornyl acrylate allergy. Contact Dermat 2020;82:101–104
139. Berghaeuser MA, Kapellen T, Heidtmann B, Haberland H, Klinkert C; German working group for insulin pump treatment in paediatric patients. Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion in toddlers starting at diagnosis of type 1 diabetes mellitus. A multicenter analysis of 104 patients from 63 centres in Germany and Austria. Pediatr Diabetes 2008;9:590–595
141. Vigersky RA, Huang S, Cordero TL, et al.; Opt2mise Study Group. Improved HbA1c, total daily insulin dose, and treatment satisfaction with insulin pump therapy compared to multiple daily insulin injections in patients with type 2 diabetes irrespective of baseline C-peptide levels. Endocr Pract 2018;24:446–452
184. Weissberg-Benchell J, Hessler D, Polonsky WH, Fisher L. Psychosocial impact of the bionic
204. Chao DY, Lin TM, Ma W-Y. Enhanced self-sufficiency and behavioral changes among patients with diabetes: cloud-based mobile health platform and mobile app service. JMIR Diabetes 2019;4:e11017


8. Obesity and Weight Management for the Prevention and Treatment of Type 2 Diabetes: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2022

Diabetes Care 2022;45(Suppl. 1):S113–S124 | https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S008

The American Diabetes Association (ADA) “Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes” includes the ADA’s current clinical practice recommendations and is intended to provide the components of diabetes care, general treatment goals and guidelines, and tools to evaluate quality of care. Members of the ADA Professional Practice Committee, a multidisciplinary expert committee (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SPPC), are responsible for updating the Standards of Care annually, or more frequently as warranted. For a detailed description of ADA standards, statements, and reports, as well as the evidence-grading system for ADA’s clinical practice recommendations, please refer to the Standards of Care Introduction (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SINT). Readers who wish to comment on the Standards of Care are invited to do so at professional.diabetes.org/SOC.

There is strong and consistent evidence that obesity management can delay the progression from prediabetes to type 2 diabetes (1–5) and is highly beneficial in the treatment of type 2 diabetes (6–17). In patients with type 2 diabetes and overweight or obesity, modest weight loss improves glycemic control and reduces the need for glucose-lowering medications (6–8); and more intensive dietary energy restriction can substantially reduce A1C and fasting glucose and promote sustained diabetes remission through at least 2 years (10,18–22). Metabolic surgery strongly improves glycemic control and often leads to remission of diabetes, improved quality of life, improved cardiovascular outcomes, and reduced mortality. The importance of addressing obesity is further heightened by numerous studies showing that both obesity and diabetes increase risk for more severe coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) infections (23–26).

The goal of this section is to provide evidence-based recommendations for obesity management, including behavioral, pharmacologic, and surgical interventions, in patients with type 2 diabetes. This section focuses on obesity management in adults; further discussion on obesity in older individuals and children can be found in Section 13, “Older Adults” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S013), and Section 14, “Children and Adolescents” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S014), respectively.

ASSESSMENT

Recommendations

8.1 Use person-centered, nonjudgmental language that fosters collaboration between patients and providers, including people-first language (e.g., “person with obesity” rather than “obese person”). E

* A complete list of members of the American Diabetes Association Professional Practice Committee can be found at https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SPPC.


© 2021 by the American Diabetes Association. Readers may use this article as long as the work is properly cited, the use is educational and not for profit, and the work is not altered. More information is available at https://diabetesjournals.org/journals/pages/license.
8.2 Measure height and weight and calculate BMI at annual visits or more frequently. Assess weight trajectory to inform treatment considerations. E

8.3 Based on clinical considerations, such as the presence of comorbid heart failure or significant unexplained weight gain or loss, weight may need to be monitored and evaluated more frequently. B If deterioration of medical status is associated with significant weight gain or loss, inpatient evaluation should be considered, especially focused on associations between medication use, food intake, and glycemic status. E

8.4 Accommodations should be made to provide privacy during weighing. E

A person-centered communication style that uses inclusive and nonjudgmental language and active listening, elicits patient preferences and beliefs, and assesses potential barriers to care should be used to optimize patient health outcomes and health-related quality of life. Use people-first language (e.g., “person with obesity” rather than “obese person”) to avoid defining patients by their condition (27–29).

Height and weight should be measured and used to calculate BMI annually or more frequently when appropriate (19). BMI, calculated as weight in kilograms divided by the square of height in meters (kg/m²), is calculated automatically by most electronic medical records. Use BMI to document weight status (overweight: BMI 25–29.9 kg/m²; obesity class I: BMI 30–34.9 kg/m²; obesity class II: BMI 35–39.9 kg/m²; obesity class III: BMI ≥ 40 kg/m²), but note that misclassification can occur, particularly in very muscular or frail individuals. In some groups; notably Asian and Asian American populations, the BMI cut points to define overweight and obesity are lower than in other populations due to differences in body composition and cardiometabolic risk (Table 8.1) (30,31). Clinical considerations, such as the presence of comorbid heart failure or unexplained weight change, may warrant more frequent weight measurement and evaluation (32,33). If weighing is questioned or refused, the practitioner should be mindful of possible prior stigmatizing experiences and query for concerns, and the value of weight monitoring should be explained as a part of the medical evaluation process that helps to inform treatment decisions (34,35). Accommodations should be made to ensure privacy during weighing, particularly for those patients who report or exhibit a high level of weight-related distress or dissatisfaction. Scales should be situated in a private area or room. Weight should be measured and reported nonjudgmentally. Care should be taken to regard a patient’s weight (and weight changes) and BMI as sensitive health information. In addition to weight and BMI, assessment of weight distribution (including propensity for central/visceral adipose deposition) and weight gain pattern and trajectory can further inform risk stratification and treatment options (36).

Providers should advise patients with overweight or obesity and those with increasing weight trajectories that, in general, higher BMIs increase the risk of diabetes, cardiovascular disease, and all-cause mortality, as well as other adverse health and quality of life outcomes. Providers should assess readiness to engage in behavioral changes for weight loss and jointly determine behavioral and weight loss goals and patient-appropriate intervention strategies (37). Strategies may include dietary changes, physical activity, behavioral counseling, pharmacologic therapy, medical devices, and metabolic surgery (Table 8.1). The latter three strategies may be considered for carefully selected patients as adjuncts to dietary changes, physical activity, and behavioral counseling.

**DIET, PHYSICAL ACTIVITY, AND BEHAVIORAL THERAPY**

**Recommendations**

8.5 Diet, physical activity, and behavioral therapy to achieve and maintain ≥5% weight loss is recommended for most people with type 2 diabetes and overweight or obesity. Additional weight loss usually results in further improvements in control of diabetes and cardiovascular risk. B

8.6 Such interventions should include a high frequency of counseling (≥16 sessions in 6 months) and focus on dietary changes, physical activity, and behavioral strategies to achieve a 500–750 kcal/day energy deficit. A

8.7 An individual’s preferences, motivation, and life circumstances should be considered, along with medical status, when weight loss interventions are recommended. C

8.8 Behavioral changes that create an energy deficit, regardless of macronutrient composition, will result in weight loss. Dietary recommendations should be individualized to the patient’s preferences and nutritional needs. A

8.9 Evaluate systemic, structural, and socioeconomic factors that may impact dietary patterns and food choices, such as food insecurity and hunger, access to healthful food options, cultural circumstances, and social determinants of health. C

8.10 For those who achieve weight loss goals, long-term (≥1 year) weight maintenance programs are recommended when available. Such programs should, at minimum, provide monthly contact and support, recommend ongoing monitoring of body weight (weekly or more frequently) and other self-monitoring strategies, and encourage regular physical activity (200–300 min/week). A

8.11 Short-term dietary intervention using structured, very-low-calorie diets (800–1,000 kcal/day) may be prescribed for carefully selected individuals by trained practitioners in medical settings with close monitoring. Long-term, comprehensive weight maintenance strategies and counseling should be integrated to maintain weight loss. B

8.12 There is no clear evidence that dietary supplements are effective for weight loss. A
Among patients with both type 2 diabetes and overweight or obesity who have inadequate glycemic, blood pressure, and lipid control and/or other obesity-related medical conditions, modest and sustained weight loss improves glycemic control, blood pressure, and lipids and may reduce the need for medications to control these risk factors (6–8,38). Greater weight loss may produce even greater benefits (20,21). For a more detailed discussion of lifestyle management approaches and recommendations see Section 5, “Facilitating Behavior Change and Well-being to Improve Health Outcomes” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S005). For a detailed discussion of nutrition interventions, please also refer to “Nutrition Therapy for Adults With Diabetes or Prediabetes: A Consensus Report” (39).

**Look AHEAD Trial**

Although the Action for Health in Diabetics (Look AHEAD) trial did not show that the intensive lifestyle intervention reduced cardiovascular events in adults with type 2 diabetes and overweight or obesity (40), it did confirm the feasibility of achieving and maintaining long-term weight loss in patients with type 2 diabetes. In the intensive lifestyle intervention group, mean weight loss was 4.7% at 8 years (41). Approximately 50% of intensive lifestyle intervention participants lost and maintained ≥5% of their initial body weight, and 27% lost and maintained ≥10% of their initial body weight at 8 years (41). Participants assigned to the intensive lifestyle group required fewer glucose-, blood pressure-, and lipid-lowering medications than those randomly assigned to standard care. Secondary analyses of the Look AHEAD trial and other large cardiovascular outcome studies document additional benefits of weight loss in patients with type 2 diabetes, including improvements in mobility, physical and sexual function, and health-related quality of life (32). Moreover, several subgroups had improved cardiovascular outcomes, including those who achieved >10% weight loss (42) and those with moderately or poorly controlled diabetes (A1C >6.8%) at baseline (43).

**Behavioral Interventions**

Significant weight loss can be attained with lifestyle programs that achieve a 500–750 kcal/day energy deficit, which in most cases is approximately 1,200–1,500 kcal/day for women and 1,500–1,800 kcal/day for men, adjusted for the individual’s baseline body weight. Clinical benefits typically begin upon achieving 3–5% weight loss (19,44), and the benefits of weight loss are progressive; more intensive weight loss goals (>5%, >7%, >15%, etc.) may be pursued if needed to achieve further health improvements and/or if the patient is more motivated and more intensive goals can be feasibly and safely attained.

Dietary interventions may differ by macronutrient goals and food choices as long as they create the necessary energy deficit to promote weight loss (19,45–47). Use of meal replacement plans prescribed by trained practitioners, with close patient monitoring, can be beneficial. Within the intensive lifestyle intervention group of the Look AHEAD trial, for example, use of a partial meal replacement plan was associated with improvements in diet quality and weight loss (44). The diet choice should be based on the patient’s health status and preferences, including a determination of food availability and other cultural circumstances that could affect dietary patterns (48).

Intensive behavioral interventions should include ≥16 sessions during the initial 6 months and focus on dietary changes, physical activity, and behavioral strategies to achieve an ~500–750 kcal/day energy deficit. Interventions should be provided by trained interventionists in either individual or group sessions (44). Assessing an individual’s motivation level, life circumstances, and willingness to implement behavioral changes to achieve weight loss should be considered along with medical status when weight loss interventions are recommended and initiated (37,49).

Patients with type 2 diabetes and overweight or obesity who have lost weight should be offered long-term (>1 year) comprehensive weight loss maintenance programs that provide at least monthly contact with trained interventionists and focus on ongoing monitoring of body weight (weekly or more frequently) and/or other self-monitoring strategies such as tracking intake, steps, etc.; continued focus on dietary and behavioral changes; and participation in high levels of physical activity (200–300 min/week) (50). Some commercial and proprietary weight loss programs have shown promising weight loss results, though most lack evidence of effectiveness, many do not satisfy guideline recommendations, and some promote unscientific and possibly dangerous practices (51,52).

When provided by trained practitioners in medical settings with ongoing monitoring, short-term (generally up to 3 months) intensive dietary intervention may be prescribed for carefully selected patients, such as those requiring weight loss prior to surgery and those needing greater weight loss and glycemic improvements. When integrated with behavioral support and counseling, structured very-low-calorie diets, typically 800–1,000 kcal/day utilizing high-protein foods and meal replacement products, may increase the pace and/or magnitude of initial weight loss and glycemic improvements compared with standard behavioral interventions (20,21). As weight regain is common,
such interventions should include long-term, comprehensive weight maintenance strategies and counseling to maintain weight loss and behavioral changes (53,54).

Despite widespread marketing and exorbitant claims, there is no clear evidence that dietary supplements (such as herbs and botanicals, high-dose vitamins and minerals, amino acids, enzymes, antioxidants, etc.) are effective for obesity management or weight loss (55–57). Several large systematic reviews show that most trials evaluating dietary supplements for weight loss are of low quality and at high risk for bias. High-quality published studies show little or no weight loss benefits. In contrast, vitamin/mineral (e.g., iron, vitamin B12, vitamin D) supplementation may be indicated in cases of documented deficiency, and protein supplements may be indicated as adjuncts to medically supervised weight loss regimens.

Health disparities adversely affect people who have systematically experienced greater obstacles to health based on their race or ethnicity, socioeconomic status, gender, disability, or other factors. Overwhelming research shows that these disparities may significantly affect health outcomes, including increasing the risk for obesity, diabetes, and diabetes-related complications. Health care providers should evaluate systemic, structural, and socioeconomic factors that may impact food choices, access to healthful foods and dietary patterns; behavioral patterns, such as neighborhood safety and availability of safe outdoor spaces for physical activity; environmental exposures; access to health care; social contexts; and, ultimately, diabetes risk and outcomes. For a detailed discussion of social determinants of health, refer to “Social Determinants of Health: A Scientific Review” (58).

PHARMACOTHERAPY

Recommendations

8.13 When choosing glucose-lowering medications for people with type 2 diabetes and overweight or obesity, consider the medication’s effect on weight. B

8.14 Whenever possible, minimize medications for comorbid conditions that are associated with weight gain. E

8.15 Weight loss medications are effective as adjuncts to diet, physical activity, and behavioral counseling for selected people with type 2 diabetes and BMI \( \geq 27 \, \text{kg/m}^2 \). Potential benefits and risks must be considered. A

8.16 If a patient’s response to weight loss medication is effective (typically defined as \( >5\% \) weight loss after 3 months’ use), further weight loss is likely with continued use. When early response is insufficient (typically \( <5\% \) weight loss after 3 months’ use) or if there are significant safety or tolerability issues, consider discontinuation of the medication and evaluate alternative medications or treatment approaches. A

Glucose-Lowering Therapy

A meta-analysis of 227 randomized controlled trials of glucose-lowering treatments in type 2 diabetes found that A1C changes were not associated with baseline BMI, indicating that people with obesity can benefit from the same types of treatments for diabetes as normal-weight patients (59). As numerous effective medications are available, when considering medication regimens health care providers should consider each medication’s effect on weight. Agents associated with varying degrees of weight loss include metformin, \( \alpha \)-glucosidase inhibitors, sodium–glucose cotransporter 2 inhibitors, glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonists, and amylin mimetics. Dipeptidyl peptidase 4 inhibitors are weight neutral. In contrast, insulin secretagogues, thiazolidinediones, and insulin are often associated with weight gain (see Section 9, “Pharmacologic Approaches to Glycemic Treatment,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S009).

Concomitant Medications

Providers should carefully review the patient’s concomitant medications and, whenever possible, minimize or provide alternatives for medications that promote weight gain. Examples of medications associated with weight gain include antipsychotics (e.g., clozapine, olanzapine, risperidone, etc.), some antidepressants (e.g., tricyclic antidepressants, some selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors, and monoamine oxidase inhibitors), glucocorticoids, injectable progestins, some anticonvulsants (e.g., gabapentin, pregabalin), and possibly sedating antihistamines and anticholinergics (60).

Approved Weight Loss Medications

The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has approved medications for both short-term and long-term weight management as adjuncts to diet, exercise, and behavioral therapy. Nearly all FDA-approved medications for weight loss have been shown to improve glycemic control in patients with type 2 diabetes and delay progression to type 2 diabetes in patients at risk (22). Phentermine and other older adrenergic agents are indicated for short-term (\( \leq 12 \) weeks) treatment (61). Five weight loss medications are FDA approved for long-term use (\( >12 \) weeks) in adult patients with BMI \( \geq 27 \, \text{kg/m}^2 \) with one or more obesity-associated comorbid condition (e.g., type 2 diabetes, hypertension, and/or dyslipidemia) who are motivated to lose weight (22). Medications approved by the FDA for the treatment of obesity, summarized in Table 8.2, include orlistat, phentermine/topiramate ER, naltrexone/bupropion ER, liraglutide 3 mg, and semaglutide 2.4 mg. (In addition, setmelanotide, a melanocortin-4 receptor agonist, is approved for use in cases of rare genetic mutations resulting in severe hyperphagia and extreme obesity, such as leptin receptor deficiency and proopiomelanocortin deficiency.) In principle, medications help improve adherence to dietary recommendations, in most cases by modulating appetite or satiety. Providers should be knowledgeable about the product label and balance the potential benefits of successful weight loss against the potential risks of the medication for each patient. These medications are contraindicated in women who are pregnant or actively trying to conceive and not recommended for use in women who are nursing. Women of reproductive potential should receive counseling regarding the use of reliable methods of contraception. Of note, while weight loss medications are often used in patients with type 1 diabetes, clinical trial data in this population are limited.
Table 8.2—Medications approved by the FDA for the treatment of obesity in adults

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medication name</th>
<th>Typical adult maintenance dose</th>
<th>Average wholesale price (30-day supply) (130)</th>
<th>National Average Drug Acquisition Cost (30-day supply) (131)</th>
<th>1-Year (52- or 56-week) mean weight loss (% loss from baseline)</th>
<th>Treatment arms</th>
<th>Weight loss (% loss from baseline)</th>
<th>Common side effects</th>
<th>Possible safety concerns/considerations (132–136)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Short-term treatment (≤12 weeks)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sympathomimetic amine anorectic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phentermine (137)</td>
<td>8–37.5 mg q.d. *</td>
<td>$5–$44 (37.5 mg dose)</td>
<td>$3 (37.5 mg dose)</td>
<td>15 mg q.d. †</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>Dry mouth, insomnia, dizziness, irritability, increased blood pressure, elevated heart rate</td>
<td>Contraindicated for use in combination with monoamine oxidase inhibitors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phentermine/topiramate ER (138)</td>
<td>7.5 mg/46 mg q.d. $</td>
<td>$223 (7.5 mg/46 mg dose)</td>
<td>$179 (7.5 mg/46 mg dose)</td>
<td>15 mg/92 mg q.d.</td>
<td></td>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>Constipation, paresthesia, insomnia, nasopharyngitis, xerostomia, increased blood pressure</td>
<td>Contraindicated for use in combination with monoamine oxidase inhibitors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naltrexone/bupropion ER (15)</td>
<td>16 mg/180 mg b.i.d.</td>
<td>$364</td>
<td>$291</td>
<td>16 mg/180 mg b.i.d.</td>
<td>PBO</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>Constipation, nausea, headache, xerostomia, insomnia, elevated heart rate and blood pressure</td>
<td>Contraindicated in patients with uncontrolled hypertension and/or seizure disorders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Long-term treatment (&gt;12 weeks)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lipase inhibitor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orlistat (3)</td>
<td>60 mg t.i.d. (OTC)</td>
<td>$41–$82</td>
<td>$41</td>
<td>120 mg t.i.d. †</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>Abdominal pain, flatulence, fecal urgency</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opioid antagonist/antidepressant combination</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naltrexone/bupropion ER (15)</td>
<td>16 mg/180 mg b.i.d.</td>
<td>$364</td>
<td>$291</td>
<td>16 mg/180 mg b.i.d.</td>
<td>PBO</td>
<td>5.0</td>
<td>Constipation, nausea, headache, xerostomia, insomnia, elevated heart rate and blood pressure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Continued on p. S118
Table 8.2—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Medication name</th>
<th>Typical adult maintenance dose</th>
<th>Average wholesale price (30-day supply) (130)</th>
<th>National Average Drug Acquisition Cost (30-day supply) (131)</th>
<th>1-Year (52- or 56-week) mean weight loss (% loss from baseline)</th>
<th>Treatment arms</th>
<th>Weight loss (% loss from baseline)</th>
<th>Common side effects (132–136)</th>
<th>Possible safety concerns/considerations (132–136)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonist</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liraglutide (16)**</td>
<td>3 mg q.d.</td>
<td>$1,619</td>
<td>$1,296</td>
<td>3.0 mg q.d.</td>
<td>1.8 mg q.d.</td>
<td>PBO</td>
<td>6.0</td>
<td>4.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Semaglutide (139)</td>
<td>2.4 mg once weekly</td>
<td>$1,619</td>
<td>$1,302</td>
<td>2.4 mg weekly</td>
<td>PBO</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal side effects (nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, esophageal reflux), injection site reactions, elevated heart rate, hypoglycemia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All medications are contraindicated in women who are or may become pregnant. Women of reproductive potential must be counseled regarding the use of reliable methods of contraception. Select safety and side effect information is provided; for a comprehensive discussion of safety considerations, please refer to the prescribing information for each agent. b.i.d., twice daily; ER, extended release; N/A, not applicable; OTC, over the counter; PBO, placebo; q.d., daily; Rx, prescription; t.i.d., three times daily. *Use lowest effective dose; maximum appropriate dose is 37.5 mg. †Duration of treatment was 28 weeks in a general adult population with obesity. **Agent has demonstrated cardiovascular safety in a dedicated cardiovascular outcome trial (140). ‡Enrolled participants had normal (79%) or impaired (21%) glucose tolerance. §Maximum dose, depending on response, is 15 mg/92 mg q.d. ||Approximately 68% of enrolled participants had type 2 diabetes or impaired glucose tolerance.
Assessing Efficacy and Safety

Upon initiating weight loss medication, assess efficacy and safety at least monthly for the first 3 months and at least quarterly thereafter. Modeling from published clinical trials consistently shows that early responders have improved long-term outcomes (62–64). Unless clinical circumstances (such as poor tolerability) or other considerations (such as financial expense or patient preference) suggest otherwise, those who achieve sufficient early weight loss upon starting a chronic weight loss medication (typically defined as >5% weight loss after 3 months’ use) should continue the medication. When early use appears ineffective (typically <5% weight loss after 3 months’ use), it is unlikely that continued use will improve weight outcomes; as such, it should be recommended to discontinue the medication and consider other treatment options.

MEDICAL DEVICES FOR WEIGHT LOSS

While gastric banding devices have fallen out of favor in recent years, since 2015 several minimally invasive medical devices have been approved by the FDA for short-term weight loss, including implanted gastric balloons, a vagus nerve stimulator, and gastric aspiration therapy (65). Given the current high cost, limited insurance coverage, and paucity of data in people with diabetes, medical devices for weight loss are rarely utilized at this time, and it remains to be seen how they may be used in the future (66).

Recently, an oral hydrogel (Plenity) has been approved for long-term use in those with BMI >25 kg/m² to simulate the space-occupying effect of implantable gastric balloons. Taken with water 30 min before meals, the hydrogel expands to fill a portion of the stomach volume to help decrease food intake during meals. Though average weight loss is relatively small (2–3% greater than placebo), the subgroup of participants with prediabetes or diabetes at baseline had improved weight loss outcomes (8.1% weight loss) compared with the overall treatment (6.4% weight loss) and placebo (4.4% weight loss) groups (67).

---

**METABOLIC SURGERY**

**Recommendations**

8.17 Metabolic surgery should be a recommended option to treat type 2 diabetes in screened surgical candidates with BMI ≥40 kg/m² (BMI ≥37.5 kg/m² in Asian Americans) and in adults with BMI 35.0–39.9 kg/m² (32.5–37.4 kg/m² in Asian Americans) who do not achieve durable weight loss and improvement in comorbidities (including hyperglycemia) with nonsurgical methods. A

8.18 Metabolic surgery may be considered as an option to treat type 2 diabetes in adults with BMI 30.0–34.9 kg/m² (27.5–32.4 kg/m² in Asian Americans) who do not achieve durable weight loss and improvement in comorbidities (including hyperglycemia) with nonsurgical methods. A

8.19 Metabolic surgery should be performed in high-volume centers with multidisciplinary teams knowledgeable about and experienced in the management of obesity, diabetes, and gastrointestinal surgery. E

8.20 People being considered for metabolic surgery should be evaluated for comorbid psychological conditions and social and situational circumstances that have the potential to interfere with surgery outcomes. B

8.21 People who undergo metabolic surgery should receive long-term medical and behavioral support and routine monitoring of micronutrient, nutritional, and metabolic status. B

8.22 If postbariatric hypoglycemia is suspected, clinical evaluation should exclude other potential disorders contributing to hypoglycemia, and management includes education, medical nutrition therapy with a dietitian experienced in postbariatric hypoglycemia, and medication treatment, as needed. A Continuous glucose monitoring should be considered as an important adjunct to improve safety by alerting patients to hypoglycemia, especially for those with severe hypoglycemia or hypoglycemia unawareness. E

8.23 People who undergo metabolic surgery should routinely be evaluated to assess the need for ongoing mental health services to help with the adjustment to medical and psychosocial changes after surgery. C

Surgical procedures for obesity treatment—often referred to interchangeably as bariatric surgery, weight loss surgery, metabolic surgery, or metabolic/bariatric surgery—can promote significant and durable weight loss and improve type 2 diabetes. Given the magnitude and rapidity of improvement of hyperglycemia and glucose homeostasis, these procedures have been suggested as treatments for type 2 diabetes even in the absence of severe obesity and will be referred to here as “metabolic surgery.”

A substantial body of evidence, including data from numerous large cohort studies and randomized controlled (nonblinded) clinical trials, demonstrates that metabolic surgery achieves superior glycemic control and reduction of cardiovascular risk in patients with type 2 diabetes and obesity compared with nonsurgical intervention (17). In addition to improving glycemia, metabolic surgery reduces the incidence of microvascular disease (68), improves quality of life (69–71), decreases cancer risk, and improves cardiovascular disease risk factors and long-term cardiovascular events (72–83). Cohort studies that match surgical and nonsurgical subjects strongly suggest that metabolic surgery reduces all-cause mortality (84,85).

The overwhelming majority of procedures in the U.S. are vertical sleeve gastrectomy (VSG) and Roux-en-Y gastric bypass (RYGB). Both procedures result in an anatomically smaller stomach pouch and often robust changes in enteroendocrine hormones. In VSG, ~80% of the stomach is removed, leaving behind a long, thin sleeve-shaped pouch. RYGB creates a much smaller stomach pouch (roughly the size of a “walnut”), which is then attached to the
distal small intestine, thereby bypassing the duodenum and jejunum. (Fig. 8.1.) Several organizations recommend lowering the BMI criteria for metabolic surgery to 30 kg/m² (27.5 kg/m² for Asian Americans) for people with type 2 diabetes who have not achieved sufficient weight loss and improved comorbidities (including hyperglycemia) with reasonable nonsurgical treatments (86–93). Studies have documented diabetes remission after 1–5 years in 30–63% of patients with RYGB (17,94). Most notably, the Surgical Treatment and Medications Potentially Eradicate Diabetes Efficiently (STAMPEDE) trial, which randomized 150 participants with uncontrolled diabetes to receive either metabolic surgery or medical treatment, found that 29% of those treated with RYGB and 23% treated with VSG achieved A1C of 6.0% or lower after 5 years (95). Available data suggest an erosion of diabetes remission over time (96); at least 35–50% of patients who initially achieve remission of diabetes eventually experience recurrence. Still, the median disease-free period among such individuals following RYGB is 8.3 years (97,98), and the majority of those who undergo surgery maintain substantial improvement of glycemic control from baseline for at least 5–15 years (69,73,74,95,98–101).

Exceedingly few presurgical predictors of success have been identified, but younger age, shorter duration of diabetes (e.g., <8 years) (70), and lesser severity of diabetes (better glycemic control, nonuse of insulin) are associated with higher rates of diabetes remission (70,73,100,102). Greater baseline visceral fat area may also predict improved postoperative outcomes, especially among Asian American patients with type 2 diabetes, who typically have greater visceral fat compared with Caucasians (103).

Although surgery has been shown to improve the metabolic profiles of patients with type 1 diabetes, larger and longer-term studies are needed to determine the role of metabolic surgery in such patients (104).

Whereas metabolic surgery has greater initial costs than nonsurgical obesity treatments, retrospective analyses and modeling studies suggest that surgery may be cost-effective or even cost-saving for individuals with type 2 diabetes. However, these results are largely dependent on assumptions about the long-term effectiveness and safety of the procedures (105,106).

### Potential Risks and Complications

The safety of metabolic surgery has improved significantly with continued refinement of minimally invasive (laparoscopic) approaches, enhanced training and credentialing, and involvement of multidisciplinary teams. Perioperative mortality rates are typically 0.1–0.5%, similar to those of common abdominal procedures such as cholecystectomy or hysterectomy (107–111). Major complications occur in 2–6% of those undergoing metabolic surgery, which compares favorably with the rates for other commonly performed elective operations (111). Postsurgical recovery times and morbidity have also dramatically declined. Minor complications and need for operative reintervention occur in up to 15% (107–116). Empirical data suggest that proficiency of the operating surgeon and surgical team is an important factor for determining mortality, complications, reoperations, and readmissions (117). Accordingly, metabolic surgery should be performed in high-volume centers with multidisciplinary teams experienced in the management of diabetes, obesity, and gastrointestinal surgery.

Beyond the perioperative period, longer-term risks include vitamin and mineral deficiencies, anemia, osteoporosis, dumping syndrome, and severe hypoglycemia (118). Nutritional and micronutrient deficiencies and related complications occur with variable frequency depending on the type of procedure and require routine monitoring of micronutrient and nutritional status and lifelong vitamin/nutritional supplementation (118). Dumping syndrome usually occurs shortly (10–30 min) after a meal and may present with diarrhea, nausea, vomiting, palpitations, and fatigue; hypoglycemia is usually not present at the time of symptoms but in some cases may develop several hours later.

Postbariatric hypoglycemia (PBH) can occur with RYGB, VSG, and other gastrointestinal procedures and may severely impact quality of life (119–121). PBH is driven in part by altered gastric emptying of ingested nutrients, leading to rapid gastrointestinal glucose absorption and excessive postprandial secretion of glucagon-like peptide 1 and other gastrointestinal peptides. As a result, overstimulation of insulin release and a sharp drop in plasma glucose occurs, most commonly 1–3 h after a high-carbohydrate meal. Symptoms range from sweating, tremor, tachycardia, and increased hunger to impaired cognition, loss of consciousness, and seizures. In contrast to dumping syndrome, which often occurs soon after surgery and improves over time, PBH typically presents >1 year postsurgery. Diagnosis is primarily made by a thorough history; detailed records of food intake, physical activity, and symptom patterns; and exclusion of other potential causes (e.g., malnutrition, side effects of medications or supplements, dumping syndrome, insulinoma). Initial management includes patient education to facilitate reduced intake of rapidly digested carbohydrates while ensuring adequate intake of protein and healthy fats.
fats and vitamin/nutrient supplements. When available, patients should be offered medical nutrition therapy with a dietitian experienced in PBH and use of continuous glucose monitoring (ideally real-time continuous glucose monitoring, which can detect dropping glucose levels before severe hypoglycemia occurs), especially for those with hypoglycemia unawareness. Medication treatment, if needed, is primarily aimed at slowing carbohydrate absorption (e.g., acarbose) or reducing glucagon-like peptide 1 and insulin secretion (e.g., diazoxide, octreotide) (122).

People who undergo metabolic surgery may also be at increased risk for substance abuse, worsening or new-onset depression and/or anxiety disorders, and suicidal ideation (118,123–128). Candidates for metabolic surgery should be assessed by a mental health professional with expertise in obesity management prior to consideration for surgery (129). Surgery should be postponed in patients with alcohol or substance use disorders, severe depression, suicidal ideation, or other significant mental health conditions until these conditions have been sufficiently addressed. Individuals with preoperative or new-onset psychopathology should be assessed regularly following surgery to optimize mental health and postoperative outcomes.

References

52. Bloom B, Mehta AK, Clark JM, Gudzune KA. Guideline-concordant weight-loss programs in an urban area are uncommon and difficult to identify through the internet. Obesity (Silver Spring) 2016;24:583–588
66. Kahan S, Saunders KH, Kaplan LM. Com-

complications and obesity-related comorbidities. JAMA 2018;319:291–301
9. Pharmacologic Approaches to Glycemic Treatment: *Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2022*

Diabetes Care 2022;45(Suppl. 1):S125–S143 | https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S009

The American Diabetes Association (ADA) “Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes” includes the ADA’s current clinical practice recommendations and is intended to provide the components of diabetes care, general treatment goals and guidelines, and tools to evaluate quality of care. Members of the ADA Professional Practice Committee, a multidisciplinary expert committee (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SPPC), are responsible for updating the Standards of Care annually, or more frequently as warranted. For a detailed description of ADA standards, statements, and reports, as well as the evidence-grading system for ADA’s clinical practice recommendations, please refer to the Standards of Care Introduction (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SINT). Readers who wish to comment on the Standards of Care are invited to do so at professional.diabetes.org/SOC.

**PHARMACOLOGIC THERAPY FOR ADULTS WITH TYPE 1 DIABETES**

**Recommendations**

9.1 Most individuals with type 1 diabetes should be treated with multiple daily injections of prandial and basal insulin, or continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion. A

9.2 Most individuals with type 1 diabetes should use rapid-acting insulin analogs to reduce hypoglycemia risk. A

9.3 Individuals with type 1 diabetes should receive education on how to match mealtime insulin doses to carbohydrate intake, fat and protein content, and anticipated physical activity. B

**Insulin Therapy**

Because the hallmark of type 1 diabetes is absent or near-absent β-cell function, insulin treatment is essential for individuals with type 1 diabetes. In addition to hyperglycemia, insulinopenia can contribute to other metabolic disturbances like hypertriglyceridemia and ketoacidosis as well as tissue catabolism that can be life threatening. Severe metabolic decompensation can be, and was, mostly prevented with once or twice daily injections for the six or seven decades after the discovery of insulin. However, over the past three decades, evidence has accumulated supporting more intensive insulin replacement, using multiple daily injections of insulin or continuous subcutaneous administration through an insulin pump, as providing the best combination of effectiveness and safety for people with type 1 diabetes. The Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT) demonstrated that intensive \[\text{equation}\]
therapy with multiple daily injections or continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion (CSII) reduced A1C and was associated with improved long-term outcomes (1–3). The study was carried out with short-acting (regular) and intermediate-acting (NPH) human insulins. In this landmark trial, lower A1C with intensive control (7%) led to ~50% reductions in microvascular complications over 6 years of treatment. However, intensive therapy was associated with a higher rate of severe hypoglycemia than conventional treatment (62 compared with 19 episodes per 100 patient-years of therapy). Follow-up of subjects from the DCCT more than 10 years after the active treatment component of the study demonstrated fewer macrovascular as well as fewer microvascular complications in the group that received intensive treatment (2,4).

Insulin replacement regimens typically consist of basal insulin, mealtime insulin, and correction insulin (5). Basal insulin includes NPH insulin, long-acting insulin analogs, and continuous delivery of rapid-acting insulin via an insulin pump. Basal insulin analogs have longer duration of action with flatter, more constant plasma concentrations and activity profiles than NPH insulin; rapid-acting analogs (RAA) have a quicker onset and peak and shorter duration of action than regular human insulin. In people with type 1 diabetes, treatment with analog insulins is associated with less hypoglycemia and weight gain as well as lower A1C compared with human insulins (6–8). More recently, two new injectable insulin formulations with enhanced rapid action profiles have been introduced. Inhaled human insulin has a rapid peak and shortened duration of action compared with RAA and may cause less hypoglycemia and weight gain (9) (see also subsection “Inhaled Insulin” in Pharmacologic Therapy for Adults with Type 2 Diabetes), and faster-acting insulin aspart and insulin lispro-aabc may reduce prandial excursions better than RAA (10–12). In addition, new longer-acting basal analogs (U-300 toglargine or degludec) may confer a lower hypoglycemia risk compared with U-100 glargine in individuals with type 1 diabetes (13,14). Despite the advantages of insulin analogs in individuals with type 1 diabetes, for some individuals the expense and/or intensity of treatment required for their use is prohibitive. There are multiple approaches to insulin treatment, and the central precept in the management of type 1 diabetes is that some form of insulin be given in a planned regimen tailored to the individual to keep them safe and out of diabetic ketoacidosis and to avoid significant hypoglycemia, with every effort made to reach the individual’s glycemic targets.

Most studies comparing multiple daily injections with CSII have been relatively small and of short duration. However, a recent systematic review and meta-analysis concluded that CSII via pump therapy has modest advantages for lowering A1C (−0.30% [95% CI −0.58 to −0.02]) and for reducing severe hypoglycemia rates in children and adults (15). However, there is no consensus to guide the choice of injection or pump therapy in a given individual, and research to guide this decision-making is needed (16). The arrival of continuous glucose monitors (CGM) to clinical practice has proven beneficial in people using insulin therapy. Its use is now considered standard of care for most people with type 1 diabetes (5) (see Section 7, “Diabetes Technology,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S007). Reduction of nocturnal hypoglycemia in individuals with type 1 diabetes using insulin pumps with CGM is improved by automatic suspension of insulin delivery at a preset glucose level (16–18). When choosing among insulin delivery systems, patient preferences, cost, insulin type and dosing regimen, and self-management capabilities should be considered (see Section 7, “Diabetes Technology,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S007).

The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has now approved two hybrid closed-loop pump systems (also called automated insulin delivery [AID] systems). The safety and efficacy of hybrid closed-loop systems has been supported in the literature in adolescents and adults with type 1 diabetes (19,20), and recent evidence suggests that a closed-loop system is superior to sensor-augmented pump therapy for glycemic control and reduction of hypoglycemia over 3 months of comparison in children and adults with type 1 diabetes (21). In the International Diabetes Closed Loop (iDCL) trial, a 6-month trial in people with type 1 diabetes at least 14 years of age, the use of a closed-loop system was associated with a greater percentage of time spent in the target glycemic range, reduced mean glucose and A1C levels, and a lower percentage of time spent in hypoglycemia compared with use of a sensor-augmented pump (22).

Intensive insulin management using a version of CSII and continuous glucose monitoring should be considered in most individuals with type 1 diabetes. AID systems may be considered in individuals with type 1 diabetes who are capable of using the device safely (either by themselves or with a caregiver) in order to improve time in range and reduce A1C and hypoglycemia (22). See Section 7, “Diabetes Technology” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S007), for a full discussion of insulin delivery devices.

In general, individuals with type 1 diabetes require 50% of their daily insulin as basal and 50% as prandial, but this is dependent on a number of factors, including whether the individual consumes lower or higher carbohydrate meals. Total daily insulin requirements can be estimated based on weight, with typical doses ranging from 0.4 to 1.0 units/kg/day. Higher amounts are required during puberty, pregnancy, and medical illness. The American Diabetes Association/JDRF Type 1 Diabetes Sourcebook notes 0.5 units/kg/day as a typical starting dose in individuals with type 1 diabetes who are metabolically stable, with half administered as prandial insulin given to control blood glucose after meals and the other half as basal insulin to control glycemia in the periods between meal absorption (23); this guideline provides detailed information on intensification of therapy to meet individualized needs. In addition, the American Diabetes Association (ADA) position statement “Type 1 Diabetes Management Through the Life Span” provides a thorough overview of type 1 diabetes treatment (24).

Typical multidose regimens for individuals with type 1 diabetes combine prameal use of shorter-acting insulins with a longer-acting formulation. The long-acting basal dose is titrated to regulate overnight, fasting glucose. Postprandial glucose excursions are best controlled by a well-timed injection of
prandial insulin. The optimal time to administer prandial insulin varies, based on the pharmacokinetics of the formulation (regular, RAA, inhaled), the premeal blood glucose level, and carbohydrate consumption. Recommendations for prandial insulin dose administration should therefore be individualized. Physiologic insulin secretion varies with glycemia, meal size, meal composition, and tissue demands for glucose. To approach this variability in people using insulin treatment, strategies have evolved to adjust prandial doses based on predicted needs. Thus, education of patients on how to adjust prandial insulin to account for carbohydrate intake, premeal glucose levels, and anticipated activity can be effective and should be offered to most patients (25,26). For individuals in whom carbohydrate counting is effective, estimates of the fat and protein content of meals can be incorporated into their prandial dosing for added benefit (27) (see Section 5, “Facilitating Behavior Change and Wellbeing to Improve Health Outcomes,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S005).

The 2021 ADA/European Association for the Study of Diabetes (EASD) consensus report on the management of type 1 diabetes in adults summarizes different insulin regimens and glucose monitoring strategies in individuals with type 1 diabetes (Fig. 9.1 and Table 9.1) (5).

**Insulin Injection Technique**
Ensuring that patients and/or caregivers understand correct insulin injection technique is important to optimize glucose control and insulin use safety. Thus, it is important that insulin be delivered into the proper tissue in the correct way. Recommendations have been published elsewhere outlining best practices for insulin injection (28). Proper insulin injection technique includes injecting into appropriate body areas, injection site rotation, appropriate care of injection sites to avoid infection or other complications, and avoidance of intramuscular (IM) insulin delivery.

Exogenously delivered insulin should be injected into subcutaneous tissue, not intramuscularly. Recommended sites for insulin injection include the abdomen, thigh, buttock, and upper arm. Because insulin absorption from IM sites differs according to the activity of the muscle, inadvertent IM injection can lead to unpredictable insulin absorption and variable effects on glucose, with IM injection being associated with frequent and unexplained hypoglycemia in several reports. Risk for IM insulin delivery is increased in younger, leaner patients when injecting into the limbs rather than truncal sites (abdomen and buttocks) and when using longer needles. Recent evidence supports the use of short needles (e.g., 4-mm pen needles) as effective and well tolerated when compared with longer needles, including a study performed in adults with obesity (29).

Injection site rotation is additionally necessary to avoid lipohypertrophy, an accumulation of subcutaneous fat in response to the adipogenic actions of insulin at a site of multiple injections. Lipohypertrophy appears as soft, smooth raised areas several centimeters in breadth and can contribute to erratic insulin absorption, increased glycemic variability, and unexplained hypoglycemic episodes. Patients and/or caregivers should receive education about proper injection site rotation and how to recognize and avoid areas of lipohypertrophy. As noted in Table 4.1, examination of insulin injection sites for the presence of lipohypertrophy, as well as assessment of injection device use and injection technique, are key components of a comprehensive diabetes medical evaluation and treatment plan. Proper insulin injection technique may lead to more effective use of this therapy and, as such, holds the potential for improved clinical outcomes.

**Noninsulin Treatments for Type 1 Diabetes**
Injectable and oral glucose-lowering drugs have been studied for their efficacy as adjuncts to insulin treatment of type 1 diabetes. Pramlintide is based on the naturally occurring β-cell peptide amylin and is approved for use in adults

---

**Table 9.1**
Representative relative attributes of insulin delivery approaches in people with type 1 diabetes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Injected insulin regimens</th>
<th>Flexibility</th>
<th>Lower risk of hypoglycemia</th>
<th>Higher costs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MDI with LAA + RAA or URAA</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less-preferred, alternative injected insulin regimens</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDI with NPH + RAA or URAA</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDI with NPH + short-acting (regular) insulin</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two daily injections with NPH + short-acting (regular) insulin or premixed</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Continuous insulin infusion regimens</th>
<th>Flexibility</th>
<th>Lower risk of hypoglycemia</th>
<th>Higher costs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hybrid closed-loop technology</td>
<td>+++++</td>
<td>+++++</td>
<td>+++++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insulin pump with threshold/predictive low-glucose suspend</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+++++</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insulin pump therapy without automation</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
<td>+++</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 9.1—Choices of insulin regimens in people with type 1 diabetes. Continuous glucose monitoring improves outcomes with injected or infused insulin and is superior to blood glucose monitoring. Inhaled insulin may be used in place of injectable prandial insulin in the U.S. ^1The number of plus signs (+) is an estimate of relative association of the regimen with increased flexibility, lower risk of hypoglycemia, and higher costs between the considered regimens. LAA, long-acting insulin analog; MDI, multiple daily injections; RAA, rapid-acting insulin analog; URAA, ultra-rapid-acting insulin analog. Reprinted from Holt et al. (5).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regimen</th>
<th>Timing and distribution</th>
<th>Advantages</th>
<th>Disadvantages</th>
<th>Adjusting doses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Insulin pump therapy (hybrid closed-loop, low-glucose suspend, CGM-augmented open-loop, BGM-augmented open-loop)</td>
<td>Basal delivery of URAA or RAA; generally 40–60% of TDD. Mealtime and correction: URAA or RAA by bolus based on ICR and/or ISF and target glucose, with pre-meal insulin ~15 min before eating.</td>
<td>Can adjust basal rates for varying insulin sensitivity by time of day, for exercise and for sick days. Flexibility in meal timing and content. Pump can deliver insulin in increments of fractions of units. Potential for integration with CGM for low-glucose suspend or hybrid closed-loop. TIR % highest and TBR % lowest with: hybrid closed-loop &gt; low-glucose suspend &gt; CGM-augmented open-loop &gt; BGM-augmented open-loop.</td>
<td>Most expensive regimen. Must continuously wear one or more devices. Risk of rapid development of ketosis or DKA with interruption of insulin delivery. Potential reactions to adhesives and site infections. Most technically complex approach (harder for people with lower numeracy or literacy skills).</td>
<td>Mealtine insulin: if carbohydrate counting is accurate, change ICR if glucose after meal consistently out of target. Correction insulin: adjust ISF and/or target glucose if correction does not consistently bring glucose into range. Basal rates: adjust based on overnight, fasting, or daytime glucose outside of activity of URAA/RAA bolus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MDI: LAA + flexible doses of URAA or RAA at meals</td>
<td>LAA once daily (insulin detemir or insulin glargine may require twice-daily dosing); generally 50% of TDD. Mealtime and correction: URAA or RAA based on ICR and/or ISF and target glucose.</td>
<td>Can use pens for all components. Flexibility in meal timing and content. Insulin analogs cause less hypoglycemia than human insulins.</td>
<td>At least four daily injections. Most costly insulins. Smallest increment of insulin is 1 unit (0.5 unit with some pens). LAAs may not cover strong dawn phenomenon (rise in glucose in early morning hours) as well as pump therapy.</td>
<td>Mealtine insulin: if carbohydrate counting is accurate, change ICR if glucose after meal consistently out of target. Correction insulin: adjust ISF and/or target glucose if correction does not consistently bring glucose into range. LAAs: based on overnight or fasting glucose or daytime glucose outside of activity time course, or URAA or RAA injections.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regimen</td>
<td>Timing and distribution</td>
<td>Advantages</td>
<td>Disadvantages</td>
<td>Adjusting doses near</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Four injections daily with fixed doses of N and RAA | Pre-breakfast: RAA ~20% of TDD.  
  Pre-lunch: RAA ~10% of TDD.  
  Pre-dinner: RAA ~10% of TDD.  
  Bedtime: N ~50% of TDD. | May be feasible if unable to carbohydrate count.  
  R can be dosed based on ICR and correction.  
  All meals have R coverage.  
  N less expensive than LAAs. | Greater risk of nocturnal hypoglycemia with N.  
  Greater risk of delayed post-meal hypoglycemia with R.  
  Requires relatively consistent mealtimes and carbohydrate intake.  
  R must be injected at least 30 min before meal for better effect. | Pre-breakfast R: based on BGM after breakfast or before lunch.  
  Pre-lunch R: based on BGM after lunch or before dinner.  
  Pre-dinner R: based on BGM after dinner or at bedtime.  
  Evening N: based on fasting or overnight BGM. |
| Four injections daily with fixed doses of N and R | Pre-breakfast: R ~20% of TDD.  
  Pre-lunch: R ~10% of TDD.  
  Pre-dinner: R ~10% of TDD.  
  Bedtime: N ~50% of TDD. | May be feasible if unable to carbohydrate count.  
  All meals have R coverage.  
  Least expensive insulins. | Greater risk of nocturnal hypoglycemia with N.  
  Requires relatively consistent mealtimes and carbohydrate intake.  
  R must be injected at least 30 min before meal for better effect. | Pre-breakfast R: based on BGM after breakfast or before lunch.  
  Pre-lunch R: based on BGM after lunch or before dinner.  
  Pre-dinner R: based on BGM after dinner or at bedtime.  
  Evening N: based on fasting or overnight BGM. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regimens with fewer daily injections</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Three injections daily: N + R or N + RAA | Pre-breakfast: ~40% N + ~15% R or RAA.  
  Pre-dinner: ~15% R or RAA.  
  Bedtime: 30% N. | Morning insulins can be mixed in one syringe.  
  May be appropriate for those who cannot take injections in middle of day.  
  Morning N covers lunch to some extent.  
  Same advantages of RAAs over R.  
  Least (N + R) or less expensive insulins than MDI with analogs. | Greater risk of nocturnal hypoglycemia with N than LAAs.  
  Greater risk of delayed post-meal hypoglycemia with R than RAAs.  
  Requires relatively consistent mealtimes and carbohydrate intake.  
  Coverage of post-lunch glucose often suboptimal.  
  R must be injected at least 30 min before meal for better effect. | Morning N: based on pre-dinner BGM.  
  Morning R: based on pre-dinner BGM.  
  Morning RAA: based on post-breakfast or pre-lunch BGM.  
  Pre-dinner R: based on bedtime BGM.  
  Pre-dinner RAA: based on post-dinner or bedtime BGM.  
  Evening N: based on fasting BGM. |

Continued on p. S130
with type 1 diabetes. Clinical trials have demonstrated a modest reduction in A1C (0.3–0.4%) and modest weight loss (~1 kg) with pramlintide (30–33). Similarly, results have been reported for several agents currently approved only for the treatment of type 2 diabetes. The addition of metformin in adults with type 1 diabetes caused small reductions in body weight and lipid levels but did not improve A1C (34, 35). The largest clinical trials of glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonists (GLP-1 RAs) in type 1 diabetes have been conducted with liraglutide 1.8 mg daily, showing modest A1C reductions (~0.4%), decreases in weight (~5 kg), and reductions in insulin doses (36, 37). Similarly, sodium–glucose cotransporter 2 (SGLT2) inhibitors have been studied in clinical trials in people with type 1 diabetes, showing improvements in A1C, reduced body weight, and improved blood pressure (38–40); however, SGLT2 inhibitor use in type 1 diabetes is associated with an increased rate of diabetic ketoacidosis. The risks and benefits of adjunctive agents continue to be evaluated, with consensus statements providing guidance on patient selection and precautions (41); only pramlintide is approved for treatment of type 1 diabetes.

**SURGICAL TREATMENT FOR TYPE 1 DIABETES**

**Pancreas and Islet Transplantation**

Successful pancreas and islet transplantation can normalize glucose levels and mitigate microvascular complications of type 1 diabetes. However, patients receiving these treatments require lifelong immunosuppression to prevent graft rejection and/or recurrence of autoimmune islet destruction. Given the potential adverse effects of immunosuppressive therapy, pancreas transplantation should be reserved for patients with type 1 diabetes undergoing simultaneous renal transplantation, following renal transplantation, or for those with recurrent ketoacidosis or severe hypoglycemia despite intensive glycemic management (42).

The 2021 ADA/EASD consensus report on the management of type 1 diabetes in adults offers a simplified overview of indications for β-cell replacement therapy in people with type 1 diabetes (Fig. 9.2) (5).
**PHARMACOLOGIC THERAPY FOR ADULTS WITH TYPE 2 DIABETES**

**Recommendations**

9.4a First-line therapy depends on comorbidities, patient-centered treatment factors, and management needs and generally includes metformin and comprehensive lifestyle modification. A

9.4b Other medications (glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonists, sodium–glucose cotransporter 2 inhibitors), with or without metformin based on glycemic needs, are appropriate initial therapy for individuals with type 2 diabetes with or at high risk for atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease, heart failure, and/or chronic kidney disease (Fig. 9.3). A

9.5 Metformin should be continued upon initiation of insulin therapy (unless contraindicated or not tolerated) for ongoing glycemic and metabolic benefits. A

9.6 Early combination therapy can be considered in some patients at treatment initiation to extend the time to treatment failure. A

9.7 The early introduction of insulin should be considered if there is evidence of ongoing catabolism (weight loss), if symptoms of hyperglycemia are present, or when A1C levels (>10% [86 mmol/mol]) or blood glucose levels (>300 mg/dL [16.7 mmol/L]) are very high. E

9.8 A patient-centered approach should guide the choice of pharmacologic agents. Consider the effects on cardiovascular and renal comorbidities, efficacy, hypoglycemia risk, impact on weight, cost and access, risk for side effects, and patient preferences (Table 9.2 and Fig. 9.3). E

9.9 Among individuals with type 2 diabetes who have established atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease or indicators of high cardiovascular risk, established kidney disease, or heart failure, a sodium–glucose cotransporter 2 inhibitor and/or glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonist with demonstrated cardiovascular disease benefit (Fig. 9.3, Table 9.2, Table 10.3B, and Table 10.3C) is recommended as part of the glucose-lowering regimen and comprehensive cardiovascular risk reduction, independent of A1C and in consideration of patient-specific factors (Fig. 9.3) (see Section 10, “Cardiovascular Disease and Risk Management,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S010, for details on cardiovascular risk reduction recommendations). A

9.10 In patients with type 2 diabetes, a glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonist is preferred to insulin when possible. A

9.11 If insulin is used, combination therapy with a glucagon-like
peptide 1 receptor agonist is recommended for greater efficacy and durability of treatment effect. A

9.12 Recommendation for treatment intensification for patients not meeting treatment goals should not be delayed. A

9.13 Medication regimen and medication-taking behavior should be reevaluated at regular intervals (every 3–6 months) and adjusted as needed to incorporate specific factors that impact choice of treatment (Fig. 4.1 and Table 9.2). E

9.14 Clinicians should be aware of the potential for overbasalization with insulin therapy. Clinical signals that may prompt evaluation of overbasalization include basal dose more than ~0.5 IU/kg/day, high bedtime-morning or post-prandial glucose differential, hypoglycemia (aware or unaware), and high glycemic variability. Indication of overbasalization should prompt reevaluation to further individualize therapy. E

The ADA/EASD consensus report “Management of Hyperglycemia in Type 2 Diabetes, 2018” and the 2019 update (43,44) recommend a patient-centered approach to choosing appropriate pharmacologic treatment of blood glucose. This includes consideration of efficacy and key patient factors: 1) important comorbidities such as atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease (ASCVD) and indicators of high ASCVD risk, chronic kidney disease (CKD), and heart failure (HF) (see Section 10, “Cardiovascular Disease and Risk Management,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S010, and Fig. 9.3), 2) metformin and comprehensive lifestyle modification. Pharmacotherapy should be started at the time type 2 diabetes is diagnosed unless there are contraindications; for many patients this will be metformin monotherapy in combination with lifestyle modifications. Additional and/or alternative agents may be considered in special circumstances, such as in individuals with established or increased risk of cardiovascular or renal complications (see Section 10, “Cardiovascular Disease and Risk Management,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S010, and Fig. 9.3). Metformin is effective and safe, is inexpensive, and may reduce risk of cardiovascular events and death (45). Metformin is available in an immediate-release form for twice-daily dosing or as an extended-release form that can be given once daily. Compared with sulfonylureas, metformin as first-line therapy has beneficial effects on A1C, weight, and cardiovascular mortality (46); there is little systematic data available for other oral agents as initial therapy of type 2 diabetes.

The principal side effects of metformin are gastrointestinal intolerance due to bloating, abdominal discomfort, and diarrhea; these can be mitigated by gradual dose titration. The drug is cleared by renal filtration, and very high circulating levels (e.g., as a result of overdose or acute renal failure) have been associated with lactic acidosis. However, the occurrence of this complication is now known to be very rare, and metformin may be safely used in patients with reduced estimated glomerular filtration rates (eGFR); the FDA has revised the label for metformin to reflect its safety in patients with eGFR ≥30 ml/min/1.73 m² (47). A randomized trial confirmed previous observations that metformin use is associated with vitamin B12 deficiency and worsening of symptoms of neuropathy (48). This is compatible with a report from the Diabetes Prevention Program Outcomes Study (DPOSS) suggesting periodic testing of vitamin B12 (49).

In patients with contraindications or intolerance to metformin, initial therapy should be based on patient factors; consider a drug from another class depicted in Fig. 9.3. When A1C is ≥1.5% (12.5 mmol/mol) above the glycemic target (see Section 6, “Glycemic Targets,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S006, for appropriate targets), many patients will require dual combination therapy to achieve their target A1C level (50). Insulin has the advantage of being effective where other agents are not and should be considered as part of any combination regimen when hyperglycemia is severe, especially if catabolic features (weight loss, hypertriglyceridemia, ketosis) are present. It is common practice to initiate insulin therapy for patients who present with blood glucose levels ≥300 mg/dl (16.7 mmol/L) or A1C >10% (86 mmol/mol) or if the patient has symptoms of hyperglycemia (i.e., polyuria or polydipsia) or evidence of catabolism (weight loss) (Fig. 9.4). As glucose toxicity resolves, simplifying the regimen and/or changing to noninsulin agents is often possible. However, there is evidence that patients with uncontrolled hyperglycemia associated with type 2 diabetes can also be effectively treated with a sulfonylurea (51).

Combination Therapy

Because type 2 diabetes is a progressive disease in many patients, maintenance of glycemic targets with monotherapy is often possible for only a few years, after which combination therapy is necessary. Traditional recommendations have been to use stepwise addition of medications to metformin to maintain A1C at target. The advantage of this is to provide a clear assessment of the positive and negative effects of new drugs and
Table 9.2—Drug-specific and patient factors to consider when selecting antihyperglycemic treatment in adults with type 2 diabetes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Efficacy (mod)</th>
<th>Hypoglycemia</th>
<th>Weight change (10%)</th>
<th>CV effects</th>
<th>Cost</th>
<th>Oral/SQ</th>
<th>Renal effects</th>
<th>Additional considerations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ASCVD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metformin</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Neutral (potential for modest loss)</td>
<td>Neutral</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Oral</td>
<td>Neutral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SGLT2 inhibitors</td>
<td>Intermediate</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Loss</td>
<td>Benf: empagliflozin, canagliflozin†</td>
<td>Benf: empagliflozin, dapagliflozin, ipragliflozin</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Oral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GLP-1 RAs</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Loss</td>
<td>Benf on renal end points in CVOTs, driven byalbuminuria outcomes: faraglutide, semaglutide (SQ), dulaglutide</td>
<td>Neutral</td>
<td>SQ: oral (semaglutide)</td>
<td>Benf on renal end points in CVOTs, driven by albuminuria outcomes: faraglutide, semaglutide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPP-4 inhibitors</td>
<td>Intermediate</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Neutral</td>
<td>Neutral</td>
<td>Potential risk: saxagliptin</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Oral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thiazolidinediones</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Gain</td>
<td>Potential benefit: pioglitazone</td>
<td>Increased risk</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Oral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sulfonylureas (2nd generation)</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Gain</td>
<td>Neutral</td>
<td>Neutral</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Oral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insulin Analoges</td>
<td>Human insulin</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Gain</td>
<td>Neutral</td>
<td>Neutral</td>
<td>Low (SQ)</td>
<td>SQ: inhired</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ASCVD, atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease; CV, cardiovascular; CVOT, cardiovascular outcomes trial; DPP-4, dipeptidyl peptidase 4; DKA, diabetic ketoacidosis; DKD, diabetic kidney disease; eGFR, estimated glomerular filtration rate; GI, gastrointestinal; GLP-1 RAs, glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonists; HF, heart failure; NASH, nonalcoholic steatohepatitis; SGLT2, sodium-glucose cotransporter 2; SQ, subcutaneously; T2D, type 2 diabetes. *For agent-specific dosing recommendations, please refer to the manufacturers’ prescribing information. †FDA-approved for cardiovascular disease benefit. ‡FDA-approved for heart failure indication. §FDA-approved for chronic kidney disease indication.
Figure 9.3 — Pharmacologic treatment of hyperglycemia in adults with type 2 diabetes. 2022 ADA Professional Practice Committee (PPC) adaptation of Davies et al. (43) and Buse et al. (44). For appropriate context, see Fig. 4.1. The 2022 ADA PPC adaptation emphasizes incorporation of therapy rather than sequential add-on, which may require adjustment of current therapies. Therapeutic regimen should be tailored to comorbidities, patient-centered treatment factors, and management needs. ASCVD, atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease; CKD, chronic kidney disease; CVD, cardiovascular disease; CVOTs, cardiovascular outcomes trials; DPP-4i, dipeptidyl peptidase 4 inhibitor; eGFR, estimated glomerular filtration rate; GLP-1 RA, glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonist; HF, heart failure; SGLT2i, sodium–glucose cotransporter 2 inhibitor; SU, sulfonylurea; TZD, type 2 diabetes; TZD, thiazolidinedione.
reduce potential side effects and expense (52). However, there are data to support initial combination therapy for more rapid attainment of glycemic goals (53,54) and later combination therapy for longer durability of glycemic effect (55). The VERIFY (Vildagliptin Efficacy in combination with metformin For earlyY treatment of type 2 diabetes) trial demonstrated that initial combination therapy is superior to sequential addition of medications for extending primary and secondary failure (56). In the VERIFY trial, participants receiving the initial combination of metformin and the dipeptidyl peptidase 4 (DPP-4) inhibitor vildagliptin had a slower decline of glycemic control compared with metformin alone and with vildagliptin added sequentially to metformin. These results have not been generalized to oral agents other than vildagliptin, but they suggest that more intensive early treatment has some benefits and should be considered through a shared decision-making process with patients, as appropriate. Initial combination therapy should be considered in patients presenting with A1C levels 1.5–2.0% above target. Finally, incorporation of high glycemic efficacy therapies or therapies for cardiovascular/renal risk reduction (e.g., GLP-1 RAs, SGLT2 inhibitors) may allow for weaning of the current regimen, particularly of agents that may increase the risk of hypoglycemia. Thus, treatment intensification may not necessarily follow a pure sequential addition of therapy but instead reflect a tailoring of the regimen in alignment with patient-centered treatment goals (Fig. 9.3).

Recommendations for treatment intensification for patients not meeting treatment goals should not be delayed. Shared decision-making is important in discussions regarding treatment intensification. The choice of medication added to initial therapy is based on the clinical characteristics of the patient and their preferences. Important clinical characteristics include the presence of established ASCVD or indicators of high ASCVD risk, HF, CKD, other comorbidities, and risk for specific adverse drug effects, as well as safety, tolerability, and cost. A comparative effectiveness meta-analysis suggests that each new class of noninsulin agents added to initial therapy with metformin generally lowers A1C approximately 0.7–1.0% (57,58). (Fig. 9.3 and Table 9.2).

For patients with established ASCVD or indicators of high ASCVD risk (such as patients ≥55 years of age with coronary, carotid, or lower-extremity artery stenosis >50% or left ventricular hypertrophy), HF, or CKD, an SGLT2 inhibitor or GLP-1 RA with demonstrated CVD benefit (Table 9.2, Table 10.3A, Table 10.3C, and Section 10, “Cardiovascular Disease and Risk Management,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S010) is recommended as part of the glucose-lowering regimen independent of A1C, independent of metformin use, and in consideration of patient-specific factors (Fig. 9.3). For patients without established ASCVD, indicators of high ASCVD risk, HF, or CKD, the choice of a second agent to add to metformin is not yet guided by empiric evidence comparing across multiple classes. Rather, drug choice is based on efficacy, avoidance of side effects (particularly hypoglycemia and weight gain), cost, and patient preferences (59). Similar considerations are applied in patients who require a third agent to achieve glycemic goals. A recent systematic review and network meta-analysis suggests greatest reductions in A1C level with insulin regimens and specific GLP-1 RAs added to metformin-based background therapy (60). In all cases, treatment regimens need to be continuously reviewed for efficacy, side effects, and patient burden (Table 9.2). In some instances, patients will require medication reduction or discontinuation. Common reasons for this include ineffectiveness, intolerable side effects, expense, or a change in glycemic goals (e.g., in response to development of comorbidities or changes in treatment goals). Section 13, “Older Adults” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S013), has a full discussion of treatment considerations in older adults, in whom changes of glycemic goals and de-escalation of therapy are common.

The need for the greater potency of injectable medications is common, particularly in people with a longer duration of diabetes. The addition of basal insulin, either human NPH or one of the long-acting insulin analogs, to oral agent regimens is a well-established approach that is effective for many patients. In addition, recent evidence supports the utility of GLP-1 RAs in patients not at glycemic goal. While most GLP-1 RAs are injectable, an oral formulation of semaglutide is now commercially available (61). In trials comparing the addition of an injectable GLP-1 RA or insulin in patients needing further glucose lowering, glycemic efficacy of injectable GLP-1 RA was similar or greater than that of basal insulin (62–68). GLP-1 RAs in these trials had a lower risk of hypoglycemia and beneficial effects on body weight compared with insulin, albeit with greater gastrointestinal side effects. Thus, trial results support GLP-1 RAs as the preferred option for patients requiring the potency of an injectable therapy for glucose control (Fig. 9.4). In patients who are intensified to insulin therapy, combination therapy with a GLP-1 RA has been shown to have greater efficacy and durability of glycemic treatment effect than treatment intensification with insulin alone. However, cost and tolerability issues are important considerations in GLP-1 RA use.

Costs for diabetes medications has increased dramatically over the past two decades, and an increasing proportion is now passed on to patients and their families (69). Table 9.3 provides cost information for currently approved noninsulin therapies. Of note, prices listed are average wholesale prices (AWP) (70) and National Average Drug Acquisition Costs (NADAC) (71), separate measures to allow for a comparison of drug prices, but do not account for discounts, rebates, or other price adjustments often involved in prescription sales that affect the actual cost incurred by the patient. Medication costs can be a major source of stress for patients with diabetes and contribute to worse adherence to medications (72); cost-reducing strategies may improve adherence in some cases (73).

Cardiovascular Outcomes Trials
There are now multiple large randomized controlled trials reporting statistically significant reductions in cardiovascular events in patients with type 2 diabetes treated with an SGLT2 inhibitor or GLP-1 RA; see Section 10, “Cardiovascular Disease and Risk Management” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S010) for details. Subjects enrolled in many of the cardiovascular outcomes trials had A1C ≥6.5%, with...
Figure 9.4—Intensifying to injectable therapies in type 2 diabetes. DSMES, diabetes self-management education and support; FPG, fasting plasma glucose; GLP-1 RA, glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonist; max, maximum; PPG, postprandial glucose. Adapted from Davies et al. (43).
more than 70% taking metformin at baseline. Thus, a practical extension of these results to clinical practice is to use these drugs preferentially in patients with type 2 diabetes and established ASCVD or indicators of high ASCVD risk. For these patients, incorporating one of the SGLT2 inhibitors and/or GLP-1 RAs that have been demonstrated to have cardiovascular disease benefit is recommended (Table 9.2, Fig. 9.3, and Section 10, “Cardiovascular Disease and Risk Management,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S010). Emerging data suggest that use of both classes of drugs will provide additional cardiovascular and kidney outcomes benefit; thus, combination therapy with an SGLT2 inhibitor and a GLP-1 RA may be considered to provide the complementary outcomes benefits associated with these classes of medication (74). In cardiovascular outcomes trials, empagliflozin, canagliflozin, dapagliflozin, liraglutide, semaglutide, and dulaglutide all had beneficial effects on indices of CKD, while dedicated renal outcomes studies have demonstrated benefit of specific SGLT2 inhibitors. See Section 11, “Chronic Kidney Disease and Risk Management” (https://doi.org/10.2337/
dc22-S011) for discussion of how CKD may impact treatment choices. Additional large randomized trials of other agents in these classes are ongoing.

**Insulin Therapy**

Many patients with type 2 diabetes eventually require and benefit from insulin therapy (Fig. 9.4). See the section **Insulin Injection Technique**, above, for guidance on how to administer insulin safely and effectively. The progressive nature of type 2 diabetes should be regularly and objectively explained to patients, and clinicians should avoid using insulin as a threat or describing it as a sign of personal failure or punishment. Rather, the utility and importance of insulin to maintain glycemic control once progression of the disease overcomes the effect of other agents should be emphasized. Educating and involving patients in insulin management is beneficial. For example, instruction of patients in self-titration of insulin doses based on glucose monitoring improves glycemic control in patients with type 2 diabetes initiating insulin (75). Comprehensive education regarding self-monitoring of blood glucose, diet, and the avoidance and

### Table 9.4—Median cost of insulin products in the U.S. calculated as AWP (70) and NADAC (71) per 1,000 units of specified dosage form/product

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Insulins</th>
<th>Compounds</th>
<th>Dosage form/product</th>
<th>Median AWP (min, max)*</th>
<th>Median NADAC*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rapid-acting</strong></td>
<td>• Lispro follow-on product</td>
<td>U-100 vial</td>
<td>$157</td>
<td>$125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>U-100 prefilled pen</td>
<td>$202</td>
<td>$161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Lispro</td>
<td>U-100 vial</td>
<td>$165†</td>
<td>$132†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>U-100 cartridge</td>
<td>$408</td>
<td>$325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>U-100 prefilled pen</td>
<td>$212†</td>
<td>$170†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>U-200 prefilled pen</td>
<td>$424</td>
<td>$339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Lispro-aabc</td>
<td>U-100 vial</td>
<td>$330</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>U-100 prefilled pen</td>
<td>$424</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>U-200 prefilled pen</td>
<td>$424</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Glulisine</td>
<td>U-100 vial</td>
<td>$341</td>
<td>$272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>U-100 prefilled pen</td>
<td>$439</td>
<td>$352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Aspart</td>
<td>U-100 vial</td>
<td>$174†</td>
<td>$139†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>U-100 cartridge</td>
<td>$215</td>
<td>$172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>U-100 prefilled pen</td>
<td>$223†</td>
<td>$179†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Aspart (&quot;faster acting product&quot;)</td>
<td>U-100 vial</td>
<td>$347</td>
<td>$278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>U-100 cartridge</td>
<td>$430</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>U-100 prefilled pen</td>
<td>$447</td>
<td>$356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Inhaled insulin</td>
<td>Inhalation cartridges</td>
<td>$1,325</td>
<td>$606</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Short-acting</strong></td>
<td>• human regular</td>
<td>U-100 vial</td>
<td>$165†</td>
<td>$132‡</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>U-100 prefilled pen</td>
<td>$208</td>
<td>$167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Intermediate-acting</strong></td>
<td>• human NPH</td>
<td>U-100 vial</td>
<td>$165†</td>
<td>$132‡</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>U-100 prefilled pen</td>
<td>$208</td>
<td>$167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Concentrated human regular insulin</strong></td>
<td>• U-500 human regular insulin</td>
<td>U-500 vial</td>
<td>$178</td>
<td>$143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>U-500 prefilled pen</td>
<td>$230</td>
<td>$184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Long-acting</strong></td>
<td>• Glargine follow-on products</td>
<td>U-100 prefilled pen</td>
<td>$118</td>
<td>$96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>U-100 vial</td>
<td>$190 (118, 261)</td>
<td>$95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Glargine</td>
<td>U-100 vial; U-100 prefilled pen</td>
<td>$340</td>
<td>$277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>U-300 prefilled pen</td>
<td>$340</td>
<td>$272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Detemir</td>
<td>U-100 vial; U-100 prefilled pen</td>
<td>$370</td>
<td>$296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Degludec</td>
<td>U-100 vial; U-100 prefilled pen; U-200 prefilled pen</td>
<td>$407</td>
<td>$325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Premixed insulin products</strong></td>
<td>• NPH/regular 70/30</td>
<td>U-100 vial</td>
<td>$165†</td>
<td>$133‡</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>U-100 prefilled pen</td>
<td>$208</td>
<td>$167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Lispro 50/50</td>
<td>U-100 vial</td>
<td>$342</td>
<td>$274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>U-100 prefilled pen</td>
<td>$424</td>
<td>$338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Lispro 75/25</td>
<td>U-100 vial</td>
<td>$152</td>
<td>$273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>U-100 prefilled pen</td>
<td>$212</td>
<td>$170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Aspart 70/30</td>
<td>U-100 vial</td>
<td>$180</td>
<td>$144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>U-100 prefilled pen</td>
<td>$224</td>
<td>$179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Premixed insulin/GLP-1 RA products</strong></td>
<td>• Glargine/Lixisenatide</td>
<td>100/33 µg prefilled pen</td>
<td>$619</td>
<td>$495</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Degludec/Liraglutide</td>
<td>100/3.6 µg prefilled pen</td>
<td>$917</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AWP, average wholesale price; GLP-1 RA, glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonist; N/A, not available; NADAC, National Average Drug Acquisition Cost. *AWP or NADAC calculated as in Table 9.3. †Generic prices used when available. ‡AWP and NADAC data presented do not include vials of regular human insulin and NPH available at Walmart for approximately $25/vial; median listed alone when only one product and/or price.
appropriate treatment of hypoglycemia are critically important in any patient using insulin.

**Basal Insulin**

Basal insulin alone is the most convenient initial insulin regimen and can be added to metformin and other oral agents. Starting doses can be estimated based on body weight (0.1–0.2 units/kg/day) and the degree of hyperglycemia, with individualized titration over days to weeks as needed. The principal action of basal insulin is to restrain hepatic glucose production and limit hyperglycemia overnight and between meals (76,77). Control of fasting glucose can be achieved with human NPH insulin or a long-acting insulin analog. In clinical trials, long-acting basal analogs (U-100 glargine or detemir) have been demonstrated to reduce the risk of symptomatic and nocturnal hypoglycemia compared with NPH insulin (78–83), although these advantages are modest and may not persist (84). Longer-acting basal analogs (U-300 glargine or degludec) may convey a lower hypoglycemia risk compared with U-100 glargine when used in combination with oral agents (85–91). Clinicians should be aware of the potential for overbasalization with insulin therapy. Clinical signals that may prompt evaluation of overbasalization include basal dose greater than ~0.5 units/kg, high bedtime-morning or post-prandial glucose differential (e.g., bedtime-morning glucose differential ≥50 mg/dL), hypoglycemia (aware or unaware), and high variability. Indication of overbasalization should prompt reevaluation to further individualize therapy (92).

The cost of insulin has been rising steadily over the past two decades, at a pace several fold that of other medical expenditures (93). This expense contributes significant burden to patients as insulin has become a growing “out-of-pocket” cost for people with diabetes, and direct patient costs contribute to treatment nonadherence (93). Therefore, consideration of cost is an important component of effective management. For many individuals with type 2 diabetes (e.g., individuals with relaxed A1C goals, low rates of hypoglycemia, and prominent insulin resistance, as well as those with cost concerns), human insulin (NPH and regular) may be the appropriate choice of therapy, and clinicians should be familiar with its use (94). Human regular insulin, NPH, and 70/30 NPH/regular products can be purchased for considerably less than the AWP and NADAC prices listed in Table 9.4 at select pharmacies. Additionally, approval of follow-on biologics for insulin glargine, the first interchangeable insulin glargine product, and generic versions of analog insulins may expand cost-effective options.

**Prandial Insulin**

Many individuals with type 2 diabetes require doses of insulin before meals, in addition to basal insulin, to reach glycemic targets. A dose of 4 units or 10% of the amount of basal insulin at the largest meal or the meal with the greatest postprandial excursion is a safe estimate for initiating therapy. The prandial insulin regimen can then be intensified based on individual needs (see Fig. 9.4). Individuals with type 2 diabetes are generally more insulin resistant than those with type 1 diabetes, require higher daily doses (~1 unit/kg), and have lower rates of hypoglycemia (95). Titration can be based on home glucose monitoring or A1C. With significant additions to the prandial insulin dose, particularly with the evening meal, consideration should be given to decreasing basal insulin. Meta-analyses of trials comparing rapid-acting insulin analogs with human regular insulin in with type 2 diabetes have not reported important differences in A1C or hypoglycemia (96,97).

**Concentrated Insulins**

Several concentrated insulin preparations are currently available. U-500 regular insulin is, by definition, five times more concentrated than U-100 regular insulin. U-500 regular insulin has distinct pharmacokinetics with delayed onset and longer duration of action, has characteristics more like an intermediate-acting (NPH) insulin, and can be used as two or three daily injections (98). U-300 glargine and U-200 degludec are three and two times as concentrated as their U-100 formulations, respectively, and allow higher doses of basal insulin administration per volume used. U-300 glargine has a longer duration of action than U-100 glargine but modestly lower efficacy per unit administered (99,100). The FDA has also approved a concentrated formulation of rapid-acting insulin lispro, U-200 (200 units/mL) and insulin lispro-abc (U-200). These concentrated preparations may be more convenient and comfortable for individuals to inject and may improve adherence in those with insulin resistance who require large doses of insulin. While U-500 regular insulin is available in both prefilled pens and vials, other concentrated insulins are available only in prefilled pens to minimize the risk of dosing errors.

**Inhaled Insulin**

Inhaled insulin is available as a rapid-acting insulin; studies in individuals with type 1 diabetes suggest rapid pharmacokinetics (8). A pilot study found evidence that compared with injectable rapid-acting insulin, supplemental doses of inhaled insulin taken based on postprandial glucose levels may improve blood glucose management without additional hypoglycemia or weight gain (101), although results from a larger study are needed for confirmation. Use of inhaled insulin may result in a decline in lung function (reduced forced expiratory volume in 1 s [FEV1]). Inhaled insulin is contraindicated in individuals with chronic lung disease, such as asthma and chronic obstructive pulmonary disease, and is not recommended in individuals who smoke or who recently stopped smoking. All individuals require spirometry (FEV1) testing to identify potential lung disease prior to and after starting inhaled insulin therapy.

**Combination Injectable Therapy**

If basal insulin has been titrated to an acceptable fasting blood glucose level (or if the dose is >0.5 units/kg/day with indications of need for other therapy) and A1C remains above target, consider advancing to combination injectable therapy (Fig. 9.4). This approach can use a GLP-1 RA added to basal insulin or multiple doses of insulin. The combination of basal insulin and GLP-1 RA has potent glucose-lowering actions and less weight gain and hypoglycemia compared with intensified insulin regimens (102–106). The DUAL VIII randomized controlled trial demonstrated greater durability of glycemic treatment effect with the combination GLP-1 RA–insulin therapy compared with addition of basal insulin alone (55). In select
individuals, complex insulin regimens can also be simplified with combination GLP-1 RA–insulin therapy in type 2 diabetes (107). Two different once-daily, fixed dual-combination products containing basal insulin plus a GLP-1 RA are available: insulin glargine plus lixisenatide (iGlarLixi) and insulin degludec plus liraglutide (IDegLira).

Intensification of insulin treatment can be done by adding doses of prandial insulin to basal insulin. Starting with a single prandial dose with the largest meal of the day is simple and effective, and it can be advanced to a regimen with multiple prandial doses if necessary (108). Alternatively, in an individual on basal insulin in whom additional prandial coverage is desired, the regimen can be converted to two doses of a premixed insulin. Each approach has advantages and disadvantages. For example, basal/prandial regimens offer greater flexibility for individuals who eat on irregular schedules. On the other hand, two doses of premixed insulin is a simple, convenient means of spreading insulin across the day. Moreover, human insulins, separately, self-mixed, or as premixed NPH/regular (70/30) formulations, are less costly alternatives to insulin analogs. Figure 9.4 outlines these options as well as recommendations for further intensification, if needed, to achieve glycemic goals. When initiating combination injectable therapy, metformin therapy should be maintained, while sulfonylureas and DPP-4 inhibitors are typically weaned or discontinued. In individuals with suboptimal blood glucose control, especially those requiring large insulin doses, adjunctive use of a thiazolidinedione or an SGLT2 inhibitor may help to improve control and reduce the amount of insulin needed, though potential side effects should be considered. Once a basal/bolus insulin regimen is initiated, dose titration is important, with adjustments made in both mealtime and basal insulins based on the blood glucose levels and an understanding of the pharmacodynamic profile of each formulation (also known as pattern control or pattern management). As people with type 2 diabetes get older, it may become necessary to simplify complex insulin regimens because of a decline in self-management ability (see Section 13, “Older Adults,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S013).

2022 ADA Professional Practice Committee Updates to Fig. 9.3

The 2022 ADA Professional Practice Committee focused on several key areas in Fig. 9.3 to reconcile emerging evidence and support harmonization of guidelines. Areas of discussion and updated changes are outlined below.

1. Title and Purpose of Algorithm. Given the significant impact the cardiovascular outcomes trials have had on understanding the management of type 2 diabetes and the different guidelines and algorithms being proposed by different societies, it was important to identify the purpose of Fig. 9.3, recognizing that no single algorithm covers all circumstances or goals. The purpose of this guidance is to support achievement of glycemic goals to reduce long-term complications, highlighting aspects of therapy that support patient-centered goals. Thus, the scope of this algorithm is defined as the “Pharmacologic Treatment of Hyperglycemia in Adults with Type 2 Diabetes.” Toward this goal, glycemic status should be assessed, with treatment modified regularly (e.g., at least twice yearly if stable and more often if not to goal) to achieve patient-centered treatment goals and to avoid therapeutic inertia.

2. Initial Therapy. First-line therapy for the treatment of hyperglycemia has traditionally been metformin and comprehensive lifestyle. Recognizing the multiple treatment goals and comorbidities for individuals with type 2 diabetes, alternative initial treatment approaches to metformin are acceptable, depending on comorbidities, patient-centered treatment factors, and glycemic and comorbidity management needs.

3. +ASCVD/Indicators of High Cardiovascular Risk. Please see Section 10, “Cardiovascular Disease and Risk Management” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S010), for comprehensive review of evidence. This pathway has been streamlined to highlight therapies that have evidence to support cardiovascular risk reduction and glycemic management, prioritizing GLP-1 RAs and SGLT2 inhibitors for this population.

4. +HF. This pathway highlights the emerging evidence of improvement in cardiovascular outcomes with SGLT2 inhibitors in individuals with type 2 diabetes and existing HF.

5. +CKD. This pathway has been updated based on populations studied in renal and cardiovascular outcomes studies and to specify recommendations when further intensification is required (e.g., for patients on an SGLT2 inhibitor, consider incorporating GLP-1 RA and vice versa).

6. Principle of Incorporation. Prior algorithms have conveyed sequential addition of therapy. Recognizing the importance of tailoring the therapeutic regimen to the individual’s needs and comorbidities, the principle of incorporation is emphasized throughout Fig. 9.3. Not all treatment intensification results in sequential add-on therapy, but in some cases it may involve switching therapy or weaning current therapy to accommodate therapeutic changes. For example, discontinuation of the DPP-4 inhibitor is recommended when intensifying from a DPP-4 inhibitor to a GLP-1 RA, given overlapping mechanisms. In addition, when cardioprotective agents (e.g., SGLT2 inhibitors, GLP-1 RAs) are introduced in the regimen, this may require weaning current therapy to minimize hypoglycemia, dependent on baseline A1C status.

7. Treatment Intensification. For the individual with high risk or established ASCVD, CKD, or HF whose A1C remains above target, further treatment intensification should be based on comorbidities, patient-centered treatment factors, and management needs as highlighted on the right side of Fig. 9.3.

8. Efficacy. Agents should be considered that provide adequate efficacy to achieve and maintain glycemic goals (Table 9.2) (60) while considering additional patient-centered factors (e.g., focus on minimizing hypoglycemia, focus on minimizing weight gain and promoting weight loss, and access/cost considerations).

9. Minimize Hypoglycemia. Agents with no/low inherent risk of hypoglycemia are preferred, with incorporation of additional agents as indicated.
10. **Minimize Weight Gain/Promote Weight Loss.** Agents with good efficacy for weight loss are preferred (109), with incorporation of additional agents as indicated.

11. **Access/Cost Considerations.** Access and cost are universal considerations. Classes with medications currently available in generic form are listed.

### References


14. Home PD, Bergenstal RM, Bolli GB, et al. New insulin glargine 300 units/mL versus glargine 100 units/mL in people with type 1 diabetes: a randomized, phase 3a, open-label clinical trial (EDITION 4). Diabetes Care 2015;38:2217–2225.


42. Dean PG, Kokal A, Stogall MD, Kudva YC. Pancreas transplantation. BMJ 2017;357:j1321
53. Abdul-Ghani MA, Puckett C, Triplitt C, et al. Initial combination therapy with metformin, pioglitazone and exenatide is more effective than sequential add-on therapy in subjects with new-onset diabetes. Results from the Efficacy and Durability of Initial Combination Therapy for Type 2 Diabetes (EDICT), a randomized trial. Diabetes Obes Metab 2015;17:268–275
69. Riddle MC, Herman WH. The cost of diabetes care—an elephant in the room. Diabetes Care 2018;41:929–932
81. Owens DR, Traylor L, Mullins P, Landgraf W. Patient-level meta-analysis of efficacy and hypoglycemia in people with type 2 diabetes initiating insulin glargine 100U/mL or neutral protamine Hagedorn insulin analysed according to concomitant oral antidiabetes therapy. Diabetes Res Clin Pract 2017;124(Suppl. C):S143–S155

Pharmacologic Approaches to Glycemic Treatment

5143

85. Bolli GB, Riddle MC, Bergenstal RM, et al.; on behalf of the EDITION 3 study investigators. New insulin glargine 300 U/ml compared with glargine 100 U/ml in insulin-naive people with type 2 diabetes on oral glucose-lowering drugs: a randomized controlled trial (EDITION 3). Diabetes Obes Metab 2015;17:386–394
99. Riddle MC, Yki-Järvinen H, Bolli GB, et al. One-year sustained glycaemic control and less hypoglycaemia with new insulin glargine 300 U/ml compared with 100 U/ml in people with type 2 diabetes using basal plus meal-time insulin: the EDITION 1 12-month randomized trial, including 6-month extension. Diabetes Obes Metab 2015;17:835–842
100. Yki-Järvinen H, Bergenstal R, Ziemer M, et al.; EDITION 2 Study Investigators. New insulin glargine 300 units/mL versus glargine 100 units/mL in people with type 2 diabetes using oral agents and basal insulin: glucose control and hypoglycaemia in a 6-month randomized controlled trial (EDITION 2). Diabetes Care 2014;37:3235–3243
10. Cardiovascular Disease and Risk Management: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2022

Diabetes Care 2022;45(Suppl. 1):S144–S174 | https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S010

The American Diabetes Association (ADA) “Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes” includes the ADA’s current clinical practice recommendations and is intended to provide the components of diabetes care, general treatment goals and guidelines, and tools to evaluate quality of care. Members of the ADA Professional Practice Committee, a multidisciplinary expert committee (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SPPC), are responsible for updating the Standards of Care annually, or more frequently as warranted. For a detailed description of ADA standards, statements, and reports, as well as the evidence-grading system for ADA’s clinical practice recommendations, please refer to the Standards of Care Introduction (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SINT). Readers who wish to comment on the Standards of Care are invited to do so at professional.diabetes.org/SOC.

For prevention and management of diabetes complications in children and adolescents, please refer to Section 14, “Children and Adolescents” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S014).

Atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease (ASCVD)—defined as coronary heart disease (CHD), cerebrovascular disease, or peripheral arterial disease presumed to be of atherosclerotic origin—is the leading cause of morbidity and mortality for individuals with diabetes and results in an estimated $37.3 billion in cardiovascular-related spending per year associated with diabetes (1). Common conditions coexisting with type 2 diabetes (e.g., hypertension and dyslipidemia) are clear risk factors for ASCVD, and diabetes itself confers independent risk. Numerous studies have shown the efficacy of controlling individual cardiovascular risk factors in preventing or slowing ASCVD in people with diabetes. Furthermore, large benefits are seen when multiple cardiovascular risk factors are addressed simultaneously. Under the current paradigm of aggressive risk factor modification in patients with diabetes, there is evidence that measures of 10-year coronary heart disease (CHD) risk among U.S. adults with diabetes have improved significantly over the past decade (2) and that ASCVD morbidity and mortality have decreased (3,4).

Heart failure is another major cause of morbidity and mortality from cardiovascular disease. Recent studies have found that rates of incident heart failure hospitalization (adjusted for age and sex) were twofold higher in patients with diabetes compared with those without (5,6). People with diabetes may have heart failure with preserved ejection fraction (HFpEF) or with reduced ejection fraction (HFrEF). Hypertension is often a precursor of heart failure of either type, and ASCVD can coexist with either type (7), whereas prior myocardial infarction (MI) is often a major factor in HFrEF. Rates of heart failure hospitalization have been improved in recent trials including patients with type 2 diabetes.
diabetes, most of whom also had ASCVD, with sodium–glucose cotransporter 2 (SGLT2) inhibitors (8–10).

For prevention and management of both ASCVD and heart failure, cardiovascular risk factors should be systematically assessed at least annually in all patients with diabetes. These risk factors include duration of diabetes, obesity/overweight, hypertension, dyslipidemia, smoking, a family history of premature coronary disease, chronic kidney disease, and the presence of albuminuria. Modifiable abnormal risk factors should be treated as described in these guidelines. Notably, the majority of evidence supporting interventions to reduce cardiovascular risk in diabetes comes from trials of patients with type 2 diabetes. Few trials have been specifically designed to assess the impact of cardiovascular risk reduction strategies in patients with type 1 diabetes.

As depicted in Fig. 10.1, a comprehensive approach to the reduction in risk of diabetes-related complications is recommended. Therapy that includes multiple, concurrent evidence-based approaches to care will provide complementary fundamental elements of global risk reduction in diabetes.

THE RISK CALCULATOR
The American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association ASCVD risk calculator (Risk Estimator Plus) is generally a useful tool to estimate 10-year risk of a first ASCVD event (available online at tools.acc.org/ASCVD-Risk-Estimator-Plus). The calculator includes diabetes as a risk factor, since diabetes itself confers increased risk for ASCVD, although it should be acknowledged that these risk calculators do not account for the duration of diabetes or the presence of diabetes complications, such as albuminuria. Although some variability in calibration exists in various subgroups, including by sex, race, and diabetes, the overall risk prediction does not differ in those with or without diabetes (11–14), validating the use of risk calculators in people with diabetes. The 10-year risk of a first ASCVD event should be assessed to better stratify ASCVD risk and help guide therapy, as described below.

Recently, risk scores and other cardiovascular biomarkers have been developed for risk stratification of secondary prevention patients (i.e., those who are already high risk because they have ASCVD) but are not yet in widespread use (15,16). With newer, more expensive lipid-lowering therapies now available, use of these risk assessments may help target these new therapies to “higher risk” ASCVD patients in the future.

HYPERTENSION/BLOOD PRESSURE CONTROL
Hypertension, defined as a sustained blood pressure ≥140/90 mmHg, is common among patients with either type 1 or type 2 diabetes. Hypertension is a major risk factor for both ASCVD and microvascular complications. Moreover, numerous studies have shown that antihypertensive therapy reduces ASCVD events, heart failure, and microvascular complications. Please refer to the American Diabetes Association (ADA) position statement “Diabetes and Hypertension” for a detailed review of the epidemiology, diagnosis, and treatment of hypertension (17).

Screening and Diagnosis

**Recommendations**

10.1 Blood pressure should be measured at every routine clinical visit. When possible, patients found to have elevated blood pressure (≥140/90 mmHg) should have blood pressure confirmed using multiple readings, including measurements on a separate day, to diagnose hypertension. A Patients with blood pressure ≥180/110 mmHg and cardiovascular disease could be diagnosed with hypertension at a single visit. E

10.2 All hypertensive patients with diabetes should monitor their blood pressure at home. A

Blood pressure should be measured at every routine clinical visit by a trained individual and should follow the guidelines established for the general population: measurement in the seated position, with feet on the floor and arm supported at heart level, after 5
min of rest. Cuff size should be appropriate for the upper-arm circumference. Elevated values should preferably be confirmed on a separate day; however, in patients with cardiovascular disease and blood pressure ≥180/110 mmHg, it is reasonable to diagnose hypertension at a single visit (18). Postural changes in blood pressure and pulse may be evidence of autonomic neuropathy and therefore require adjustment of blood pressure targets. Orthostatic blood pressure measurements should be checked on initial visit and as indicated.

Home blood pressure self-monitoring and 24-h ambulatory blood pressure monitoring may provide evidence of white coat hypertension, masked hypertension, or other discrepancies between office and “true” blood pressure (17,18a,18b). In addition to confirming or refuting a diagnosis of hypertension, home blood pressure assessment may be useful to monitor antihypertensive treatment. Studies of individuals without diabetes found that home measurements may better correlate with ASCVD risk than office measurements (19,20). Moreover, home blood pressure monitoring may improve patient medication adherence and thus help reduce cardiovascular risk (21).

**Treatment Goals**

**Recommendations**

**10.3** For patients with diabetes and hypertension, blood pressure targets should be individualized through a shared decision-making process that addresses cardiovascular risk, potential adverse effects of antihypertensive medications, and patient preferences.

**10.4** For individuals with diabetes and hypertension at higher cardiovascular risk (existing atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease [ASCVD] or 10-year ASCVD risk ≥15%), a blood pressure target of <130/80 mmHg may be appropriate, if it can be safely attained.

**10.5** For individuals with diabetes and hypertension at lower risk for cardiovascular disease (10-year atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease risk <15%), treat to a blood pressure target of <140/90 mmHg. **A**

Randomized clinical trials have demonstrated unequivocally that treatment of hypertension to blood pressure <140/90 mmHg reduces cardiovascular events as well as microvascular complications (22–28). Therefore, patients with type 1 or type 2 diabetes who have hypertension should, at a minimum, be treated to blood pressure targets of <140/90 mmHg. The benefits and risks of intensifying antihypertensive therapy to target blood pressures lower than <140/90 mmHg (e.g., <130/80 or <120/80 mmHg) have been evaluated in large randomized clinical trials and meta-analyses of clinical trials. Notably, there is an absence of high-quality data available to guide blood pressure targets in type 1 diabetes.

**Randomized Controlled Trials of Intensive Versus Standard Blood Pressure Control**

The Action to Control Cardiovascular Risk in Diabetes Blood Pressure (ACCORD BP) trial provides the strongest direct assessment of the benefits and risks of intensive blood pressure control among people with type 2 diabetes (29). In ACCORD BP, compared with standard blood pressure control (target systolic blood pressure <140 mmHg), intensive blood pressure control (target systolic blood pressure <120 mmHg) did not reduce total major atherosclerotic cardiovascular events but did reduce the risk of stroke, at the expense of increased adverse events (Table 10.1). The ACCORD BP results suggest that blood pressure targets more intensive than <140/90 mmHg are not likely to improve cardiovascular outcomes among most people with type 2 diabetes but may be reasonable for patients who may derive the most benefit and have been educated about added treatment burden, side effects, and costs, as discussed below.

Additional studies, such as the Systolic Blood Pressure Intervention Trial (SPRINT) and the Hypertension Optimal Treatment (HOT) trial, also examined effects of intensive versus standard control (Table 10.1), though the relevance of their results to people with diabetes is less clear. The Action in Diabetes and Vascular Disease: Preterax and Diamicron MR Controlled Evaluation–Blood Pressure (ADVANCE BP) trial did not explicitly test blood pressure targets (30); the achieved blood pressure in the intervention group was higher than that achieved in the ACCORD BP intensive arm and would be consistent with a target blood pressure of <140/90 mmHg. Notably, ACCORD BP and SPRINT measured blood pressure using automated office blood pressure measurement, which yields values that are generally lower than typical office blood pressure readings by approximately 5–10 mmHg (31), suggesting that implementing the ACCORD BP or SPRINT protocols in an outpatient clinic might require a systolic blood pressure target higher than <120 mmHg, such as <130 mmHg.

A number of post hoc analyses have attempted to explain the apparently divergent results of ACCORD BP and SPRINT. Some investigators have argued that the divergent results are not due to differences between people with and without diabetes but rather are due to differences in study design or to characteristics other than diabetes (32–34). Others have opined that the divergent results are most readily explained by the lack of benefit of intensive blood pressure control on cardiovascular mortality in ACCORD BP, which may be due to differential mechanisms underlying cardiovascular disease in type 2 diabetics, to chance, or both (35). Interestingly, a post hoc analysis has found that intensive blood pressure lowering increased the risk of incident chronic kidney disease in both ACCORD BP and SPRINT, with the absolute risk of incident chronic kidney disease being higher in individuals with type 2 diabetes (36).

**Meta-analyses of Trials**

To clarify optimal blood pressure targets in patients with diabetes, meta-analyses have stratified clinical trials by mean
pressure is attained intensive blood pressure is to be bene
analyses, antihypertensive treatment appears intensive treatment) arm. Based on these
pressure attained in the intervention (or
80 mmHg (17,22,23,25–27). Among trials
multiple cardiovascular risk factors
arteries, antihypertensive treatment reduced
the risk of stroke, retinopathy, and albuminuria, but effects on other ASCVD outcomes and heart failure were not evident. Taken together, these meta-analyses consistently show that treating patients with baseline blood pressure of at least 140 mmHg to targets <140 mmHg is beneficial, while more intensive targets may offer additional (though probably less robust) benefits.

**Individualization of Treatment Targets**
Patients and clinicians should engage in a shared decision-making process to determine individual blood pressure targets (17). This approach acknowledges that the benefits and risks of intensive blood pressure targets are uncertain and may vary across patients and is consistent with a patient-focused approach to care that values patient priorities and provider judgment (37). Secondary analyses of ACCORD BP and SPRINT suggest that clinical factors can help determine individuals more likely to benefit and less likely to be harmed by intensive blood pressure control (38,39).

Absolute benefit from blood pressure reduction correlated with absolute baseline cardiovascular risk in SPRINT and in earlier clinical trials conducted at higher baseline blood pressure levels (11,39). Extrapolation of these studies suggests that patients with diabetes may also be more likely to benefit from intensive blood pressure control when

### Table 10.1—Randomized controlled trials of intensive versus standard hypertension treatment strategies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical trial</th>
<th>Population</th>
<th>Intensive</th>
<th>Standard</th>
<th>Outcomes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ACCORD BP</strong> (29)</td>
<td>4,733 participants with T2D aged 40–79 years with prior evidence of CVD or multiple cardiovascular risk factors</td>
<td>SBP target: &lt;120 mmHg Achieved (mean) 119.3/64.4 mmHg</td>
<td>SBP target: 130–140 mmHg Achieved (mean) 135/70.5 mmHg</td>
<td>• No benefit in primary end point: composite of nonfatal MI, nonfatal stroke, and CVD death. • Stroke risk reduced 41% with intensive control, not sustained through follow-up beyond the period of active treatment. • Adverse events more common in intensive group, particularly elevated serum creatinine and electrolyte abnormalities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ADVANCE BP</strong> (30)</td>
<td>11,140 participants with T2D aged 55 years and older with prior evidence of CVD or multiple cardiovascular risk factors</td>
<td>Intervention: a single-pill, fixed-dose combination of perindopril and indapamide Achieved (mean) SBP/DBP: 136/73 mmHg</td>
<td>Control: placebo Achieved (mean) SBP/DBP: 141.6/75.2 mmHg</td>
<td>• Intervention reduced risk of primary composite end point of major macrovascular and microvascular events (9%), death from any cause (14%), and death from CVD (18%). • 6-year observational follow-up found reduction in risk of death in intervention group attenuated but still significant (198).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HOT</strong> (221)</td>
<td>18,790 participants, including 1,501 with diabetes</td>
<td>DBP target: ≤80 mmHg Achieved (mean): 81.1 mmHg, ≤80 group: 85.2 mmHg, ≤90 group</td>
<td>DBP target: ≤90 mmHg</td>
<td>• In the overall trial, there was no cardiovascular benefit with more intensive targets. • In the subgroup with diabetes, an intensive DBP target was associated with a significantly reduced risk (51%) of CVD events.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SPRINT</strong> (41)</td>
<td>9,361 participants without diabetes</td>
<td>SBP target: &lt;120 mmHg Achieved (mean): 121.4 mmHg</td>
<td>SBP target: &lt;140 mmHg Achieved (mean): 136.2 mmHg</td>
<td>• Intensive SBP target lowered risk of the primary composite outcome 25% (MI, ACS, stroke, heart failure, and death due to CVD). • Intensive target reduced risk of death 27%. • Intensive therapy increased risks of electrolyte abnormalities and AKI.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ACCORD BP, Action to Control Cardiovascular Risk in Diabetes Blood Pressure trial; ACS, acute coronary syndrome; ADVANCE BP, Action in Diabetes and Vascular Disease: Preterax and Diamicron MR Controlled Evaluation–Blood Pressure trial; AKI, acute kidney injury; CVD, cardiovascular disease; DBP, diastolic blood pressure; HOT, Hypertension Optimal Treatment trial; MI, myocardial infarction; SBP, systolic blood pressure; SPRINT, Systolic Blood Pressure Intervention Trial; T2D, type 2 diabetes. Data from this table can also be found in the ADA position statement “Diabetes and Hypertension” (17).
they have high absolute cardiovascular risk. Therefore, it may be reasonable to target blood pressure $<130/80$ mmHg among patients with diabetes and either clinically diagnosed cardiovascular disease (particularly stroke, which was significantly reduced in ACCORD BP) or 10-year ASCVD risk $\geq 15\%$, if it can be attained safely. This approach is consistent with guidelines from the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association, which advocate a blood pressure target $<130/80$ mmHg for all patients, with or without diabetes (40).

Potential adverse effects of antihypertensive therapy (e.g., hypotension, syncope, falls, acute kidney injury, and electrolyte abnormalities) should also be taken into account (29,36,41,42). Patients with older age, chronic kidney disease, and frailty have been shown to be at higher risk of adverse effects of intensive blood pressure control (42). In addition, patients with orthostatic hypotension, substantial comorbidity, functional limitations, or polypharmacy may be at high risk of adverse effects, and some patients may prefer higher blood pressure targets to enhance quality of life. However, in ACCORD BP, it was found that intensive blood pressure lowering decreased the risk of cardiovascular events irrespective of baseline diastolic blood pressure in patients who also received standard glycemic control (43). Therefore, the presence of low diastolic blood pressure is not necessarily a contraindication to more intensive blood pressure management in the context of otherwise standard care.

Patients with low absolute cardiovascular risk (10-year ASCVD risk $<15\%$) or with a history of adverse effects of intensive blood pressure control or at high risk of adverse effects should have a higher blood pressure target. In such patients, a blood pressure target of $<140/90$ mmHg is recommended, if it can be safely attained.

Pregnancy and Antihypertensive Medications

There are few randomized controlled trials of antihypertensive therapy in pregnant women with diabetes. A 2014 Cochrane systematic review of antihypertensive therapy for mild to moderate chronic hypertension that included 49 trials and over 4,700 women did not find any conclusive evidence for or against blood pressure treatment to reduce the risk of preeclampsia for the mother or effects on perinatal outcomes such as preterm birth, small-for-gestational-age infants, or fetal death (44). The more recent Control of Hypertension in Pregnancy Study (CHIPS) (45) enrolled mostly women with chronic hypertension. In CHIPS, targeting a diastolic blood pressure of 85 mmHg during pregnancy was associated with reduced likelihood of developing accelerated maternal hypertension and no demonstrable adverse outcome for infants compared with targeting a higher diastolic blood pressure. The mean systolic blood pressure achieved in the more intensively treated group was $133.1 \pm 0.5$ mmHg, and the mean diastolic blood pressure achieved in that group was $85.3 \pm 0.3$ mmHg. A similar approach is supported by the International Society for the Study of Hypertension in Pregnancy, which specifically recommends use of antihypertensive therapy to maintain systolic blood pressure between 110 and 140 mmHg and diastolic blood pressure between 80 and 85 mmHg (46). Current evidence supports controlling blood pressure to 110–135/85 mmHg to reduce the risk of accelerated maternal hypertension but also to minimize impairment of fetal growth. During pregnancy, treatment with ACE inhibitors, angiotensin receptor blockers, and spironolactone are contraindicated as they may cause fetal damage. Antihypertensive drugs known to be effective and safe in pregnancy include methyldopa, labetalol, and long-acting nifedipine, while hydralazine may be considered in the acute management of hypertension in pregnancy or severe preeclampsia (47). Diuretics are not recommended for blood pressure control in pregnancy but may be used during late-stage pregnancy if needed for volume control (47,48). The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists also recommends that postpartum patients with gestational hypertension, preeclampsia, and superimposed preeclampsia have their blood pressures observed for 72 h in the hospital and for 7–10 days postpartum. Long-term follow-up is recommended for these women as they have increased lifetime cardiovascular risk (49). See Section 15, “Management of Diabetes in Pregnancy” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S015), for additional information.

Treatment Strategies

Lifestyle Intervention

 Recommendation 10.7 For patients with blood pressure $>120/80$ mmHg, lifestyle intervention consists of weight loss when indicated, a Dietary Approaches to Stop Hypertension (DASH)-style eating pattern including reducing sodium and increasing potassium intake, moderation of alcohol intake, and increased physical activity. A Lifestyle management is an important component of hypertension treatment because it lowers blood pressure, enhances the effectiveness of some antihypertensive medications, promotes other aspects of metabolic and vascular health, and generally leads to fewer adverse effects. Lifestyle therapy consists of reducing excess body weight through caloric restriction (see Section 8, “Obesity and Weight Management for the Prevention and Treatment of Type 2 Diabetes,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S008), restricting sodium intake (<2,300 mg/day), increasing consumption of fruits and vegetables (8–10 servings per day) and low-fat dairy products (2–3 servings per day), avoiding excessive alcohol consumption (no more than 2 servings per day in men and no more than 1 serving per day in women) (50), and increasing activity levels (51).

These lifestyle interventions are reasonable for individuals with diabetes and mildly elevated blood pressure (systolic $>120$ mmHg or diastolic $>80$ mmHg) and should be initiated along with pharmacologic therapy when hypertension is diagnosed (Fig. 10.2) (51). A lifestyle therapy plan should be developed in collaboration with the patient and discussed as part of diabetes management. Use of internet or mobile-based digital platforms to reinforce healthy behaviors may be considered as a component of care, as these interventions have been found to enhance the efficacy of medical therapy for hypertension (52,53).
Pharmacologic Interventions

**Recommendations**

**10.8** Patients with confirmed office-based blood pressure $\geq 140/90$ mmHg should, in addition to lifestyle therapy, have prompt initiation and timely titration of pharmacologic therapy to achieve blood pressure goals. 

**10.9** Patients with confirmed office-based blood pressure $\geq 160/100$ mmHg should, in addition to lifestyle therapy, have prompt initiation and timely titration of two drugs or a single-pill combination of drugs demonstrated to reduce cardiovascular events in patients with diabetes. 

**10.10** Treatment for hypertension should include drug classes demonstrated to reduce cardiovascular events in patients with diabetes. A ACE inhibitors or angiotensin receptor blockers.

---

**Figure 10.2**—Recommendations for the treatment of confirmed hypertension in people with diabetes. *An ACE inhibitor (ACEi) or angiotensin receptor blocker (ARB) is suggested to treat hypertension for patients with coronary artery disease (CAD) or urine albumin-to-creatinine ratio 30–299 mg/g creatinine and strongly recommended for patients with urine albumin-to-creatinine ratio $\geq 300$ mg/g creatinine. **Thiazide-like diuretic; long-acting agents shown to reduce cardiovascular events, such as chlorthalidone and indapamide, are preferred. ***Dihydropyridine calcium channel blocker (CCB). BP, blood pressure. Adapted from de Boer et al. (17).
Initial Number of Antihypertensive Medications. Initial treatment for people with diabetes depends on the severity of hypertension (Fig. 10.2). Those with blood pressure between 140/90 mmHg and 159/99 mmHg may begin with a single drug. For patients with blood pressure $\geq 160/100$ mmHg, initial pharmacologic treatment with two antihypertensive medications is recommended in order to more effectively achieve adequate blood pressure control (54–56). Single-pill antihypertensive combinations may improve medication adherence in some patients (57).

Classes of Antihypertensive Medications. Initial treatment for hypertension should include any of the drug classes demonstrated to reduce cardiovascular events in patients with diabetes: ACE inhibitors (58,59), angiotensin receptor blockers (ARBs) (58,59), thiazide-like diuretics (60), or dihydropyridine calcium channel blockers (61). In patients with diabetes and established coronary artery disease, ACE inhibitors or ARBs are recommended first-line therapy for hypertension (62–64). For patients with albuminuria (urine albumin-to-creatinine ratio $\geq 30$ mg/g), initial treatment should include an ACE inhibitor or ARB in order to reduce the risk of progressive kidney disease (17) (Fig. 10.2). In patients receiving ACE inhibitor or ARB therapy, continuation of those medications as kidney function declines to estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR) $< 30$ mL/min/1.73 m$^2$ may provide cardiovascular benefit without significantly increasing the risk of end-stage kidney disease (65). In the absence of albuminuria, risk of progressive kidney disease is low, and ACE inhibitors and ARBs have not been found to afford superior cardioprotection when compared with thiazide-like diuretics or dihydropyridine calcium channel blockers (66). β-Blockers are indicated in the setting of prior MI, active angina, or HFrEF but have not been shown to reduce mortality as blood pressure-lowering agents in the absence of these conditions (24,67,68).

Multiple-Drug Therapy. Multiple-drug therapy is often required to achieve blood pressure targets (Fig. 10.2), particularly in the setting of diabetic kidney disease. However, the use of both ACE inhibitors and ARBs in combination, or the combination of an ACE inhibitor or ARB and a direct renin inhibitor, is contraindicated given the lack of added ASCVD benefit and increased rate of adverse events—namely, hyperkalemia, syncope, and acute kidney injury (AKI) (69–71). Titration of and/or addition of further blood pressure medications should be made in a timely fashion to overcome therapeutic inertia in achieving blood pressure targets.

Bedtime Dosing. Although prior analyses of randomized clinical trials found a benefit to evening versus morning dosing of antihypertensive medications (72,73), these results have not been reproduced in subsequent trials. Therefore, preferential use of antihypertensives at bedtime is not recommended (73a).

Hyperkalemia and Acute Kidney Injury. Treatment with ACE inhibitors or ARBs can cause AKI and hyperkalemia, while diuretics can cause AKI and either hyperkalemia or hyperkalemia (depending on mechanism of action) (74,75). Detection and management of these abnormalities is important because AKI and hyperkalemia each increase the risks of cardiovascular events and death (76). Therefore, serum creatinine and potassium should be monitored during treatment with an ACE inhibitor, ARB, or diuretic, particularly among patients with reduced glomerular filtration who are at increased risk of hyperkalemia and AKI (74,75,77).

Resistant Hypertension

**Recommendation 10.14** Patients with hypertension who are not meeting blood pressure targets on three classes of antihypertensive medications (including a diuretic) should be considered for mineralocorticoid receptor antagonist therapy.
LIPID MANAGEMENT

Lifestyle Intervention

**Recommendations**

10.15 Lifestyle modification focusing on weight loss (if indicated); application of a Mediterranean style or Dietary Approaches to Stop Hypertension (DASH) eating pattern; reduction of saturated fat and trans fat; increase of dietary n-3 fatty acids, viscous fiber, and plant stanols/sterols intake; and increased physical activity should be recommended to improve the lipid profile and reduce the risk of developing atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease in patients with diabetes. A

10.16 Intensify lifestyle therapy and optimize glycemic control for patients with elevated triglyceride levels (≥150 mg/dL [1.7 mmol/L]) and/or low HDL cholesterol (<40 mg/dL [1.0 mmol/L] for men, <50 mg/dL [1.3 mmol/L] for women). C

Lifestyle intervention, including weight loss (83), increased physical activity, and medical nutrition therapy, allows some patients to reduce ASCVD risk factors. Nutrition intervention should be tailored according to each patient’s age, diabetes type, pharmacologic treatment, lipids levels, and medical conditions.

Recommendations should focus on application of a Mediterranean style diet (84) or Dietary Approaches to Stop Hypertension (DASH) eating pattern, reducing saturated and trans fat intake and increasing plant stanols/sterols, n-3 fatty acids, and viscous fiber (such as in oats, legumes, and citrus) intake (85,86). Glycemic control may also beneficially modify plasma lipid levels, particularly in patients with very high triglycerides and poor glycemic control. See Section 5, “Facilitating Behavior Change and Well-being to Improve Health Outcomes” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S005), for additional nutrition information.

Ongoing Therapy and Monitoring With Lipid Panel

**Recommendations**

10.17 In adults not taking statins or other lipid-lowering therapy, it is reasonable to obtain a lipid profile at the time of diabetes diagnosis, at an initial medical evaluation, and every 5 years thereafter if under the age of 40 years, or more frequently if indicated. E

10.18 Obtain a lipid profile at initiation of statins or other lipid-lowering therapy, 4–12 weeks after initiation or a change in dose, and annually thereafter as it may help to monitor the response to therapy and inform medication adherence. E

In adults with diabetes, it is reasonable to obtain a lipid profile (total cholesterol, LDL cholesterol, HDL cholesterol, and triglycerides) at the time of diagnosis, at the initial medical evaluation, and at least every 5 years thereafter in patients under the age of 40 years. In younger patients with longer duration of disease (such as those with youth-onset type 1 diabetes), more frequent lipid profiles may be reasonable. A lipid panel should also be obtained immediately before initiating statin therapy. Once a patient is taking a statin, LDL cholesterol levels should be assessed 4–12 weeks after initiation of statin therapy, after any change in dose, and on an individual basis (e.g., to monitor for medication adherence and efficacy). If LDL cholesterol levels are not responding in spite of medication adherence, clinical judgment is recommended to determine the need for and timing of lipid panels. In individual patients, the highly variable LDL cholesterol—lowering response seen with statins is poorly understood (87). Clinicians should attempt to find a dose or alternative statin that is tolerable if side effects occur. There is evidence for benefit from even extremely low, less than daily statin doses (88).

STATIN TREATMENT

Primary Prevention

**Recommendations**

10.19 For patients with diabetes aged 40–75 years without atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease, use moderate-intensity statin therapy in addition to lifestyle therapy. A

10.20 For patients with diabetes aged 20–39 years with additional atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease risk factors, it may be reasonable to initiate statin therapy in addition to lifestyle therapy. C

10.21 In patients with diabetes at higher risk, especially those with multiple atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease risk factors or aged 50–70 years, it is reasonable to use high-intensity statin therapy. B

10.22 In adults with diabetes and 10-year atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease risk of 20% or higher, it may be reasonable to add ezetimibe to maximally tolerated statin therapy to reduce LDL cholesterol levels by 50% or more. C

Secondary Prevention

**Recommendations**

10.23 For patients of all ages with diabetes and atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease, high-intensity statin therapy should be added to lifestyle therapy. A

10.24 For patients with diabetes and atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease considered very high risk using specific criteria, if LDL cholesterol is ≥70 mg/dL on maximally tolerated statin dose, consider adding additional LDL-lowering therapy (such as ezetimibe or PCSK9 inhibitor). A

10.25 For patients who do not tolerate the intended intensity, the maximally tolerated statin dose should be used. E

10.26 In adults with diabetes aged >75 years already on statin therapy, it is reasonable to continue statin treatment. B

10.27 In adults with diabetes aged >75 years, it may be reasonable to initiate statin therapy after discussion of potential benefits and risks. C

10.28 Statin therapy is contraindicated in pregnancy. B
Initiating Statin Therapy Based on Risk

Patients with type 2 diabetes have an increased prevalence of lipid abnormalities, contributing to their high risk of ASCVD. Multiple clinical trials have demonstrated the beneficial effects of statin therapy on ASCVD outcomes in subjects with and without CHD (89,90). Subgroup analyses of patients with diabetes in larger trials (91–95) and trials in patients with diabetes (96,97) showed significant primary and secondary prevention of ASCVD events and CHD death in patients with diabetes. Meta-analyses, including data from over 18,000 patients with diabetes from 14 randomized trials of statin therapy (mean follow-up 4.3 years), demonstrate a 9% proportional reduction in all-cause mortality and 13% reduction in vascular mortality for each 1 mmol/L (39 mg/dL) reduction in LDL cholesterol (98).

Accordingly, statins are the drugs of choice for LDL cholesterol lowering and cardioprotection. Table 10.2 shows the two statin dosing intensities that are recommended for use in clinical practice: high-intensity statin therapy will achieve approximately a ≥50% reduction in LDL cholesterol, and moderate-intensity statin regimens achieve 30–49% reductions in LDL cholesterol. Low-dose statin therapy is generally not recommended in patients with diabetes but is sometimes the only dose of statin that a patient can tolerate. For patients who do not tolerate the intended intensity of statin, the maximally tolerated statin dose should be used.

As in those without diabetes, absolute reductions in ASCVD outcomes (CHD death and nonfatal MI) are greatest in people with high baseline ASCVD risk (known ASCVD and/or very high LDL cholesterol levels), but the overall benefits of statin therapy in people with diabetes at moderate or even low risk for ASCVD are convincing (99,100). The relative benefit of lipid-lowering therapy has been uniform across most subgroups tested (90,98), including subgroups that varied with respect to age and other risk factors.

Primary Prevention (Patients Without ASCVD)

For primary prevention, moderate-dose statin therapy is recommended for those 40 years and older (92,99,100), though high-intensity therapy may be considered on an individual basis in the context of additional ASCVD risk factors. The evidence is strong for patients with diabetes aged 40–75 years, an age-group well represented in statin trials showing benefit. Since risk is enhanced in patients with diabetes, as noted above, patients who also have multiple other coronary risk factors have increased risk, equivalent to that of those with ASCVD. As such, recent guidelines recommend that in patients with diabetes who are at higher risk, especially those with multiple ASCVD risk factors or aged 50–70 years, it is reasonable to prescribe high-intensity statin therapy (12,101). Furthermore, for patients with diabetes whose ASCVD risk is ≥20%, i.e., an ASCVD risk equivalent, the same high-intensity statin therapy is recommended as for those with documented ASCVD (12). In those individuals, it may also be reasonable to add ezetimibe to maximally tolerated statin therapy if needed to reduce LDL cholesterol levels by 50% or more (12). The evidence is lower for patients aged >75 years; relatively few older patients with diabetes have been enrolled in primary prevention trials. However, heterogeneity by age has not been seen in the relative benefit of lipid-lowering therapy in trials that included older participants (90,97,98), and because older age confers higher risk, the absolute benefits are actually greater (90,102). Moderate-intensity statin therapy is recommended in patients with diabetes who are 75 years or older. However, the risk-benefit profile should be routinely evaluated in this population, with downward titration of dose performed as needed. See Section 13, “Older Adults” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S013), for more details on clinical considerations for this population.

Age <40 Years and/or Type 1 Diabetes.

Very little clinical trial evidence exists for patients with type 2 diabetes under the age of 40 years or for patients with type 1 diabetes of any age. For pediatric recommendations, see Section 14, “Children and Adolescents” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S014). In the Heart Protection Study (lower age limit 40 years), the subgroup of ~600 patients with type 1 diabetes had a proportionately similar, although not statistically significant, reduction in risk to that in patients with type 2 diabetes (92). Even though the data are not definitive, similar statin treatment approaches should be considered for patients with type 1 or type 2 diabetes, particularly in the presence of other cardiovascular risk factors. Patients below the age of 40 have lower risk of developing a cardiovascular event over a 10-year horizon; however, their lifetime risk of developing cardiovascular disease and suffering an MI, stroke, or cardiovascular death is high. For patients who are younger than 40 years of age and/or have type 1 diabetes with other ASCVD risk factors, it is recommended that the patient and health care provider discuss the relative benefits and risks and consider the use of moderate-intensity statin therapy. Please refer to “Type 1 Diabetes Mellitus and Cardiovascular Disease: A Scientific Statement From the American Heart Association and American Diabetes Association” (103) for additional discussion.

Secondary Prevention (Patients With ASCVD)

Because risk is high in patients with ASCVD, intensive therapy is indicated and has been shown to be of benefit in multiple large randomized cardiovascular outcomes trials (98,102,104,105). High-intensity statin therapy is recommended for all patients with diabetes and ASCVD. This recommendation is based on the Cholesterol Treatment Trialists’ Collaboration involving 26 statin trials, of which 5 compared high-intensity versus moderate-intensity statins. Together, they found

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 10.2—High-intensity and moderate-intensity statin therapy*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High-intensity statin therapy (lowers LDL cholesterol by ≥50%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate-intensity statin therapy (lowers LDL cholesterol by 30–49%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atorvastatin 40–80 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosuvastatin 20–40 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atorvastatin 10–20 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rosuvastatin 5–10 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simvastatin 20–40 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pravastatin 40–80 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lovastatin 40 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluvastatin XL 80 mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pitavastatin 1–4 mg</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Once-daily dosing. XL, extended release.
reductions in nonfatal cardiovascular events with more intensive therapy, in patients with and without diabetes (90,94,104).

Over the past few years, there have been multiple large randomized trials investigating the benefits of adding non-statin agents to statin therapy, including those that evaluated further lowering of LDL cholesterol with ezetimibe (102,106) and proprotein convertase subtilisin/kexin type 9 (PCSK9) inhibitors (105). Each trial found a significant benefit in the reduction of ASCVD events that was directly related to the degree of further LDL cholesterol lowering. These large trials included a significant number of participants with diabetes. For very high-risk patients with ASCVD who are on high-intensity (and maximally tolerated) statin therapy and have an LDL cholesterol ≥70 mg/dL, the addition of nonstatin LDL-lowering therapy can be considered. The decision to add a nonstatin agent should be made following a clinician-patient discussion about the net benefit, safety, and cost of combination therapy. Although the costs of PCSK9 inhibitor therapy have decreased over time, the lower cost of ezetimibe may be preferred by many patients. Definition of very high-risk patients with ASCVD includes the use of specific criteria (major ASCVD events and high-risk conditions); refer to the “2018 AHA/ACC/AACVPR/ABC/ACPM/ADA/AGS/APhA/ASPAC/NLA/PCNA Guideline on the Management of Blood Cholesterol: Executive Summary: A Report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines” (12) for further details regarding this definition of risk, and to the additional “2018 ACC Expert Consensus Decision Pathway on Novel Therapies for Cardiovascular Risk Reduction in Patients With Type 2 Diabetes and Atherosclerotic Cardiovascular Disease” (107) for recommendations for primary and secondary prevention and for statin and combination treatment in adults with diabetes.

**Combination Therapy for LDL Cholesterol Lowering**

**Statins and Ezetimibe**
The IMProved Reduction of Outcomes: Vytorin Efficacy International Trial (IMPROVE-IT) was a randomized controlled trial in 18,144 patients comparing the addition of ezetimibe to simvastatin therapy versus simvastatin alone. Individuals were ≥50 years of age, had experienced a recent acute coronary syndrome (ACS) and were treated for an average of 6 years. Overall, the addition of ezetimibe led to a 6.4% relative benefit and a 2% absolute reduction in major adverse cardiovascular events (atherosclerotic cardiovasculard diseases), with the degree of benefit being directly proportional to the change in LDL cholesterol, which was 70 mg/dL in the statin group on average and 54 mg/dL in the combination group (102). In those with diabetes (27% of participants), the combination of moderate-intensity simvastatin (40 mg) and ezetimibe (10 mg) showed a significant reduction of major adverse cardiovascular events with an absolute risk reduction of 5% (40% vs. 45% cumulative incidence at 7 years) and a relative risk reduction of 14% (hazard ratio [HR] 0.86 [95% CI 0.78–0.94]) over moderate-intensity simvastatin (40 mg) alone (106).

**Statins and PCSK9 Inhibitors**
Placebo-controlled trials evaluating the addition of the PCSK9 inhibitors evolocumab and alirocumab to maximally tolerated doses of statin therapy in participants who were at high risk for ASCVD demonstrated an average reduction in LDL cholesterol ranging from 36% to 59%. These agents have been approved as adjunctive therapy for patients with ASCVD or familial hypercholesterolemia who are receiving maximally tolerated statin therapy but require additional lowering of LDL cholesterol (108,109).

The effects of PCSK9 inhibition on ASCVD outcomes was investigated in the Further Cardiovascular Outcomes Research With PCSK9 Inhibition in Subjects With Elevated Risk (FOURIER) trial, which enrolled 27,564 patients with prior ASCVD and an additional high-risk feature who were receiving their maximally tolerated statin therapy (two-thirds were on high-intensity statin) but who still had LDL cholesterol ≥70 mg/dL or non-HDL cholesterol ≥100 mg/dL (105). Patients were randomized to receive subcutaneous injections of evolocumab (either 140 mg every 2 weeks or 420 mg every month based on patient preference) versus placebo. Evolocumab reduced LDL cholesterol by 59% from a median of 92 to 30 mg/dL in the treatment arm.

During the median follow-up of 2.2 years, the composite outcome of cardiovascular death, MI, stroke, hospitalization for angina, or revascularization occurred in 11.3% vs. 9.8% of the placebo and evolocumab groups, respectively, representing a 15% relative risk reduction (P < 0.001). The combined end point of cardiovascular death, MI, or stroke was reduced by 20%, from 7.4% to 5.9% (P < 0.001). Evolocumab therapy also significantly reduced all strokes (1.5% vs. 1.9%; HR 0.79 [95% CI 0.66–0.95]; P = 0.01) and ischemic stroke (1.2% vs. 1.6%; HR 0.75 [95% CI 0.62–0.92]; P = 0.005) in the total population, with findings being consistent in patients with or without a history of ischemic stroke at baseline (110). Importantly, similar benefits were seen in a prespecified subgroup of patients with diabetes, comprising 11,031 patients (40% of the trial) (111).

In the ODYSSEY OUTCOMES trial (Evaluation of Cardiovascular Outcomes After an Acute Coronary Syndrome During Treatment With Alirocumab), 18,924 patients (28.8% of whom had diabetes) with recent acute coronary syndrome were randomized to the PCSK9 inhibitor alirocumab or placebo every 2 weeks in addition to maximally tolerated statin therapy, with alirocumab dosing titrated between 75 and 150 mg to achieve LDL cholesterol levels between 25 and 50 mg/dL (112). Over a median follow-up of 2.8 years, a composite primary end point (comprising death from coronary heart disease, nonfatal MI, fatal or nonfatal ischemic stroke, or unstable angina requiring hospital admission) occurred in 903 patients (9.5%) in the alirocumab group and in 1,052 patients (11.1%) in the placebo group (HR 0.85 [95% CI 0.78–0.93]; P < 0.001). Combination therapy with alirocumab plus statin therapy resulted in a greater absolute reduction in the incidence of the primary end point in patients with diabetes (2.3% [95% CI 0.4–4.2]) than in those with prediabetes (1.2% [0.0–2.4]) or normoglycemia (1.2% [−0.3 to 2.7]) (113).

**Statins and Bempedoic Acid**
Bempedoic acid is a novel LDL cholesterol–lowering agent that is indicated as an adjunct to diet and maximally tolerated statin therapy for the
treatment of adults with heterozygous familial hypercholesterolemia or established atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease who require additional lowering of LDL cholesterol. A pooled analysis suggests that bempedoic acid therapy lowers LDL cholesterol levels by about 23% compared with placebo (114). At this time, there are no completed trials demonstrating a cardiovascular outcomes benefit to use of this medication; however, this agent may be considered for patients who cannot use or tolerate other evidence-based LDL cholesterol-lowering approaches, or for whom those other therapies are inadequately effective (115).

Treatment of Other Lipoprotein Fractions or Targets

**Recommendations**

10.29 For patients with fasting triglyceride levels ≥500 mg/dL, evaluate for secondary causes of hypertriglyceridemia and consider medical therapy to reduce the risk of pancreatitis. C

10.30 In adults with moderate hypertriglyceridemia (fasting or non-fasting triglycerides 175–499 mg/dL), clinicians should address and treat lifestyle factors (obesity and metabolic syndrome), secondary factors (diabetes, chronic liver or kidney disease and/or nephrotic syndrome, hypothyroidism), and medications that raise triglycerides. C

10.31 In patients with atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease or other cardiovascular risk factors on a statin with controlled LDL cholesterol but elevated triglycerides (135–499 mg/dL), the addition of icosapent ethyl can be considered to reduce cardiovascular risk. A

Hypertriglyceridemia should be addressed with dietary and lifestyle changes including weight loss and abstinence from alcohol (116). Severe hypertriglyceridemia (fasting triglycerides ≥500 mg/dL and especially >1,000 mg/dL) may warrant pharmacologic therapy (fibric acid derivatives and/or fish oil) and reduction in dietary fat to reduce the risk of acute pancreatitis. Moderate- or high-intensity statin therapy should also be used as indicated to reduce risk of cardiovascular events (see **STATIN TREATMENT**). In patients with moderate hypertriglyceridemia, lifestyle interventions, treatment of secondary factors, and avoidance of medications that might raise triglycerides are recommended.

The Reduction of Cardiovascular Events with Icosapent Ethyl–Intervention Trial (REDUCE-IT) enrolled 8,179 adults receiving statin therapy with moderately elevated triglycerides (135–499 mg/dL, median baseline of 216 mg/dL) who had either established cardiovascular disease (secondary prevention cohort) or diabetes plus at least one other cardiovascular risk factor (primary prevention cohort). Patients were randomized to icosapent ethyl 4 g/day (2 g twice daily with food) versus placebo. The trial met its primary end point, demonstrating a 25% relative risk reduction (P < 0.001) for the primary end point composite of cardiovascular death, nonfatal MI, nonfatal stroke, coronary revascularization, or unstable angina. This reduction in risk was seen in patients with or without diabetes at baseline. The composite of cardiovascular death, nonfatal MI, or nonfatal stroke was reduced by 26% (P < 0.001). Additional ischemic end points were significantly lower in the icosapent ethyl group than in the placebo group, including cardiovascular death, which was reduced by 20% (P = 0.03). The proportions of patients experiencing adverse events and serious adverse events were similar between the active and placebo treatment groups. It should be noted that data are lacking with other n-3 fatty acids, and results of the REDUCE-IT trial should not be extrapolated to other products (117). As an example, the addition of 4 g per day of a carboxylic acid formulation of the n-3 fatty acids eicosapentaenoic acid (EPA) and docosahexaenoic acid (DHA) (n-3 carboxylic acid) to statin therapy in patients with atherogenic dyslipidemia and high cardiovascular risk, 70% of whom had diabetes, did not reduce the risk of major adverse cardiovascular events compared with the inert comparator of corn oil (118).

Low levels of HDL cholesterol, often associated with elevated triglyceride levels, are the most prevalent pattern of dyslipidemia in individuals with type 2 diabetes. However, the evidence for the use of drugs that target these lipid fractions is substantially less robust than that for statin therapy (119). In a large trial in patients with diabetes, fenofibrate failed to reduce overall cardiovascular outcomes (120).

**Other Combination Therapy**

**Recommendations**

10.32 Statin plus fibrate combination therapy has not been shown to improve atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease outcomes and is generally not recommended. A

10.33 Statin plus niacin combination therapy has not been shown to provide additional cardiovascular benefit above statin therapy alone, may increase the risk of stroke with additional side effects, and is generally not recommended. A

**Statin and Fibrate Combination Therapy**

Combination therapy (statin and fibrate) is associated with an increased risk for abnormal transaminase levels, myositis, and rhabdomyolysis. The risk of rhabdomyolysis is more common with higher doses of statins and renal insufficiency and appears to be higher when statins are combined with gemfibrozil (compared with fenofibrate) (121).

In the ACCORD study, in patients with type 2 diabetes who were at high risk for ASCVD, the combination of fenofibrate and simvastatin did not reduce the rate of fatal cardiovascular events, nonfatal MI, or nonfatal stroke as compared with simvastatin alone. Prespecified subgroup analyses suggested heterogeneity in treatment effects with possible benefit for men with both a triglyceride level ≥204 mg/dL (2.3 mmol/L) and an HDL cholesterol level ≤34 mg/dL (0.9 mmol/L) (122). A prospective trial of a newer fibrate in this specific population of patients is ongoing (123).

**Statin and Niacin Combination Therapy**

The Atherothrombosis Intervention in Metabolic Syndrome With Low HDL/High Triglycerides: Impact on Global Health Outcomes (AIM-HIGH) trial randomized over 3,000 patients (about one-third with diabetes) with established ASCVD, LDL cholesterol levels <180 mg/dL [4.7
mmol/L), low HDL cholesterol levels (men <40 mg/dL [1.0 mmol/L] and women <50 mg/dL [1.3 mmol/L]), and triglyceride levels of 150–400 mg/dL (1.7–4.5 mmol/L) to statin therapy plus extended-release niacin or placebo. The trial was halted early due to lack of efficacy on the primary ASCVD outcome (first event of the composite of death from CHD, nonfatal MI, ischemic stroke, hospitalization for an ACS, or symptom-driven coronary or cerebral revascularization) and a possible increase in ischemic stroke in those on combination therapy (124).

The much larger Heart Protection Study 2–Treatment of HDL to Reduce the Incidence of Vascular Events (HPS2-THRIVE) trial also failed to show a benefit of adding niacin to background statin therapy (125). A total of 25,673 patients with prior vascular disease were randomized to receive 2 g of extended-release niacin and 40 mg of laropiprant (an antagonist of the prostaglandin D2 receptor DP1 that has been shown to improve adherence to niacin therapy) versus a matching placebo daily and followed for a median follow-up period of 3.9 years. There was no significant difference in the rate of coronary death, MI, stroke, or coronary revascularization with the addition of niacin–laropiprant versus placebo (13.2% vs. 13.7%; rate ratio 0.96; P = 0.29). Niacin–laropiprant was associated with an increased incidence of new-onset diabetes (absolute excess, 1.3 percentage points; P < 0.001) and disturbances in diabetes control among those with diabetes. In addition, there was an increase in serious adverse events associated with the gastrointestinal system, musculoskeletal system, skin, and, unexpectedly, infection and bleeding.

Therefore, combination therapy with a statin and niacin is not recommended given the lack of efficacy on major ASCVD outcomes and increased side effects.

Diabetes Risk With Statin Use
Several studies have reported a modestly increased risk of incident diabetes with statin use (126,127), which may be limited to those with diabetes risk factors. An analysis of one of the initial studies suggested that although statin use was associated with diabetes risk, the cardiovascular event rate reduction with statins far outweighed the risk of incident diabetes even for patients at highest risk for diabetes (128). The absolute risk increase was small (over 5 years of follow-up, 1.2% of participants on placebo developed diabetes and 1.5% on rosuvastatin developed diabetes) (128). A meta-analysis of 13 randomized statin trials with 91,140 participants showed an odds ratio of 1.09 for a new diagnosis of diabetes, so that (on average) treatment of 255 patients with statins for 4 years resulted in one additional case of diabetes while simultaneously preventing 5.4 vascular events among those 255 patients (127).

Lipid-Lowering Agents and Cognitive Function
Although concerns regarding a potential adverse impact of lipid-lowering agents on cognitive function have been raised, several lines of evidence point against this association, as detailed in a 2018 European Atherosclerosis Society Consensus Panel statement (129). First, there are three large randomized trials of statin versus placebo where specific cognitive tests were performed, and no differences were seen between statin and placebo (130–133). In addition, no change in cognitive function has been reported in studies with the addition of ezetimibe (102) or PCSK9 inhibitors (105,134) to statin therapy, including among patients treated to very low LDL cholesterol levels. In addition, the most recent systematic review of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration’s (FDA’s) postmarketing surveillance databases, randomized controlled trials, and cohort, case-control, and cross-sectional studies evaluating cognition in patients receiving statins found that published data do not reveal an adverse effect of statins on cognition (135). Therefore, a concern that statins or other lipid-lowering agents might cause cognitive dysfunction or dementia is not currently supported by evidence and should not deter their use in individuals with diabetes at high risk for ASCVD (135).

ANTIPLATELET AGENTS

Recommendations

10.34 Use aspirin therapy (75–162 mg/day) as a secondary prevention strategy in those with diabetes and a history of atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease. A

10.35 For patients with atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease and documented aspirin allergy, clopidogrel (75 mg/day) should be used. B

10.36 Dual antiplatelet therapy (with low-dose aspirin and a P2Y12 inhibitor) is reasonable for a year after an acute coronary syndrome and may have benefits beyond this period. A

10.37 Long-term treatment with dual antiplatelet therapy should be considered for patients with prior coronary intervention, high ischemic risk, and low bleeding risk to prevent major adverse cardiovascular events. A

10.38 Combination therapy with aspirin plus low-dose rivaroxaban should be considered for patients with stable coronary and/or peripheral artery disease and low bleeding risk to prevent major adverse limb and cardiovascular events. A

10.39 Aspirin therapy (75–162 mg/day) may be considered as a primary prevention strategy in those with diabetes who are at increased cardiovascular risk, after a comprehensive discussion with the patient on the benefits versus the comparable increased risk of bleeding. A

Risk Reduction
Aspirin has been shown to be effective in reducing cardiovascular morbidity and mortality in high-risk patients with previous MI or stroke (secondary prevention) and is strongly recommended. In primary prevention, however, among patients with no previous cardiovascular events, its net benefit is more controversial (136,137).

Previous randomized controlled trials of aspirin specifically in patients with diabetes failed to consistently show a significant reduction in overall ASCVD end points, raising questions about the efficacy of aspirin for primary prevention in people with diabetes, although...
some sex differences were suggested (138–140).

The Antithrombotic Trialists’ Collaboration published an individual patient-level meta-analysis (136) of the six large trials of aspirin for primary prevention in the general population. These trials collectively enrolled over 95,000 participants, including almost 4,000 with diabetes. Overall, they found that aspirin reduced the risk of serious vascular events by 12% (relative risk 0.88 [95% CI 0.82–0.94]). The largest reduction was for nonfatal MI, with little effect on CHD death (relative risk 0.95 [95% CI 0.78–1.15]) or total stroke.

Most recently, the ASCEND (A Study of Cardiovascular Events in Diabetes) trial randomized 15,480 patients with diabetes but no evident cardiovascular disease to aspirin 100 mg daily or placebo (141). The primary efficacy end point was vascular death, MI, or stroke or transient ischemic attack. The primary safety outcome was major bleeding (i.e., intracranial hemorrhage, sight-threatening bleeding in the eye, gastrointestinal bleeding, or other serious bleeding). During a mean follow-up of 7.4 years, there was a significant 12% reduction in the primary efficacy end point (8.5% vs. 9.6%; P = 0.01). In contrast, major bleeding was significantly increased from 3.2% to 4.1% in the aspirin group (rate ratio 1.29; P = 0.003), with most of the excess being gastrointestinal bleeding and other extracranial bleeding. There were no significant differences by sex, weight, or duration of diabetes or other baseline factors including ASCVD risk score.

Two other large randomized trials of aspirin for primary prevention, in patients without diabetes (ARRIVE [Aspirin to Reduce Risk of Initial Vascular Events]) (142) and in the elderly (ASPREE [Aspirin in Reducing Events in the Elderly]) (143), which included 11% with diabetes, found no benefit of aspirin on the primary efficacy end point and an increased risk of bleeding. In ARRIVE, with 12,546 patients over a period of 60 months follow-up, the primary end point occurred in 4.29% vs. 4.48% of patients in the aspirin versus placebo groups (HR 0.96 [95% CI 0.81–1.13]; P = 0.60). Gastrointestinal bleeding events (characterized as mild) occurred in 0.97% of patients in the aspirin group vs. 0.46% in the placebo group (HR 2.11 [95% CI 1.36–3.28]; P = 0.0007). In ASPREE, including 19,114 individuals, for cardiovascular disease (fatal CHD, MI, stroke, or hospitalization for heart failure) after a median of 4.7 years of follow-up, the rates per 1,000 person-years were 10.7 vs. 11.3 events in aspirin vs. placebo groups (HR 0.95 [95% CI 0.83–1.08]). The rate of major hemorrhage per 1,000 person-years was 8.6 events vs. 6.2 events, respectively (HR 1.38 [95% CI 1.18–1.62]; P < 0.001).

Thus, aspirin appears to have a modest effect on ischemic vascular events, with the absolute decrease in events depending on the underlying ASCVD risk. The main adverse effect is an increased risk of gastrointestinal bleeding. The excess risk may be as high as 5 per 1,000 per year in real-world settings. However, for adults with ASCVD risk >1% per year, the number of ASCVD events prevented will be similar to the number of episodes of bleeding induced, although these complications do not have equal effects on long-term health (144).

Recommendations for using aspirin as primary prevention include both men and women aged ≥50 years with diabetes and at least one additional major risk factor (family history of premature ASCVD, hypertension, dyslipidemia, smoking, or chronic kidney disease/albuminuria) who are not at increased risk of bleeding (e.g., older age, anemia, renal disease) (145–148). Noninvasive imaging techniques such as coronary calcium scoring may potentially help further tailor aspirin therapy, particularly in those at low risk (149,150). For patients over the age of 70 years (with or without diabetes), the balance appears to have greater risk than benefit (141,143). Thus, for primary prevention, the use of aspirin needs to be carefully considered and may generally not be recommended. Aspirin may be considered in the context of high cardiovascular risk with low bleeding risk, but generally not in older adults. Aspirin therapy for primary prevention may be considered in the context of shared decision-making, which carefully weighs the cardiovascular benefits with the fairly comparable increase in risk of bleeding.

For patients with documented ASCVD, use of aspirin for secondary prevention has far greater benefit than risk; for this indication, aspirin is still recommended (136).

**Aspirin Use in People <50 Years of Age**

Aspirin is not recommended for those at low risk of ASCVD (such as men and women aged <50 years with diabetes with no other major ASCVD risk factors) as the low benefit is likely to be outweighed by the risks of bleeding. Clinical judgment should be used for those at intermediate risk (younger patients with one or more risk factors or older patients with no risk factors) until further research is available. Patients’ willingness to undergo long-term aspirin therapy should also be considered (151). Aspirin use in patients aged <21 years is generally contraindicated due to the associated risk of Reye syndrome.

**Aspirin Dosing**

Average daily dosages used in most clinical trials involving patients with diabetes ranged from 50 mg to 650 mg but were mostly in the range of 100–325 mg/day. There is little evidence to support any specific dose, but using the lowest possible dose may help to reduce side effects (152). In the ADAPTABLE (Aspirin Dosing: A Patient-Centric Trial Assessing Benefits and Long-term Effectiveness) trial of patients with established cardiovascular disease, 38% of whom had diabetes, there were no significant differences in cardiovascular events or major bleeding between patients assigned to 81 mg and those assigned to 325 mg of aspirin daily (153). In the U.S., the most common low-dose tablet is 81 mg. Although platelets from patients with diabetes have altered function, it is unclear what, if any, effect that finding has on the required dose of aspirin for cardioprotective effects in the patient with diabetes. Many alternate pathways for platelet activation exist that are independent of thromboxane A2 and thus are not sensitive to the effects of aspirin (154). “Aspirin resistance” has been described in patients with diabetes when measured by a variety of ex vivo and in vitro methods (platelet aggregometry, measurement of thromboxane B2) (155), but other studies suggest no impairment in aspirin response among patients with diabetes (156). A recent trial suggested that more frequent dosing regimens of aspirin may reduce platelet reactivity in individuals with diabetes (157); however, these observations alone are insufficient to empirically recommend that higher
doses of aspirin be used in this group at this time. Another recent meta-analysis raised the hypothesis that low-dose aspirin efficacy is reduced in those weighing more than 70 kg (158); however, the ASCEND trial found benefit of low-dose aspirin in those in this weight range, which would thus not validate this suggested hypothesis (141). It appears that 75–162 mg/day is optimal.

**Indications for P2Y12 Receptor Antagonist Use**

A P2Y12 receptor antagonist in combination with aspirin is reasonable for at least 1 year in patients following an ACS and may have benefits beyond this period. Evidence supports use of either ticagrelor or clopidogrel if no percutaneous coronary intervention was performed and clopidogrel, ticagrelor, or prasugrel if a percutaneous coronary intervention was performed (159). In patients with diabetes and prior MI (1–3 years before), adding ticagrelor to aspirin significantly reduces the risk of recurrent ischemic events including cardiovascular and CHD death (160). Similarly, the addition of ticagrelor to aspirin reduced the risk of ischemic cardiovascular events compared with aspirin alone in patients with diabetes and stable coronary artery disease (161,162). However, a higher incidence of major bleeding, including intracranial hemorrhage, was noted with dual antiplatelet therapy. The net clinical benefit (ischemic benefit vs. bleeding risk) was improved with ticagrelor therapy in the large prespecified subgroup of patients with history of percutaneous coronary intervention, while no net benefit was seen in patients without prior percutaneous coronary intervention (162). However, early aspirin discontinuation compared with continued dual antiplatelet therapy after coronary stenting may reduce the risk of bleeding without a corresponding increase in the risks of mortality and ischemic events, as shown in a prespecified analysis of patients with diabetes enrolled in the TWILIGHT (Ticagrelor With Aspirin or Alone in High-Risk Patients After Coronary Intervention) trial and a recent meta-analysis (163,164).

**Combination Antiplatelet and Anticoagulation Therapy**

Combination therapy with aspirin plus low dose rivaroxaban may be considered for patients with stable coronary and/or peripheral artery disease to prevent major adverse limb and cardiovascular complications. In the COMPASS (Cardiovascular Outcomes for People Using Anticoagulation Strategies) trial of 27,395 patients with established coronary artery disease and/or peripheral artery disease, aspirin plus rivaroxaban 2.5 mg twice daily was superior to aspirin plus placebo in the reduction of cardiovascular ischemic events including major adverse limb events. The absolute benefits of combination therapy appeared larger in patients with diabetes, who comprised 10,341 of the trial participants (165,166). A similar treatment strategy was evaluated in the Vascular Outcomes Study of ASA (acetylsalicylic acid) Along with Rivaroxaban in Endovascular or Surgical Limb Revascularization for Peripheral Artery Disease (VOYAGER PAD) trial (167), in which 6,564 patients with peripheral artery disease who had undergone revascularization were randomly assigned to receive rivaroxaban 2.5 mg twice daily plus aspirin or placebo plus aspirin. Rivaroxaban treatment in this group of patients was also associated with a significantly lower incidence of ischemic cardiovascular events, including major adverse limb events. However, an increased risk of major bleeding was noted with rivaroxaban added to aspirin treatment in both COMPASS and VOYAGER PAD.

The risks and benefits of dual antiplatelet or antiplatelet plus anticoagulant treatment strategies should be thoroughly discussed with eligible patients, and shared decision-making should be used to determine an individually appropriate treatment approach. This field of cardiovascular risk reduction is evolving rapidly, as are the definitions of optimal care for patients with differing types and circumstances of vascular complications.

**CARDIOVASCULAR DISEASE**

**Screening**

**Recommendations**

10.40 In asymptomatic patients, routine screening for coronary artery disease is not recommended as it does not improve outcomes as long as atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease risk factors are treated. A

10.41 Consider investigations for coronary artery disease in the presence of any of the following: atypical cardiac symptoms (e.g., unexplained dyspnea, chest discomfort); signs or symptoms of associated vascular disease including carotid bruits, transient ischemic attack, stroke, claudication, or peripheral arterial disease; or electrocardiogram abnormalities (e.g., Q waves). E

**Treatment**

**Recommendations**

10.42 Among patients with type 2 diabetes who have established atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease or established kidney disease, a sodium-glucose cotransporter 2 inhibitor or glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonist with demonstrated cardiovascular disease benefit (Table 10.3B and Table 10.3C) is recommended as part of the comprehensive cardiovascular risk reduction and/or glucose-lowering regimens. A

10.42a In patients with type 2 diabetes and established atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease, multiple atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease risk factors, or diabetic kidney disease, a sodium-glucose cotransporter 2 inhibitor with demonstrated cardiovascular benefit is recommended to reduce the risk of major adverse cardiovascular events and/or heart failure hospitalization. A

10.42b In patients with type 2 diabetes and established atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease or multiple risk factors for atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease, a glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonist with demonstrated cardiovascular disease benefit is recommended to reduce the risk of major adverse cardiovascular events. A

10.42c In patients with type 2 diabetes and established athero-
sclerotic cardiovascular disease or multiple risk factors for atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease, combined therapy with a sodium–glucose cotransporter 2 inhibitor with demonstrated cardiovascular benefit and a glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonist with demonstrated cardiovascular benefit may be considered for additive reduction in the risk of adverse cardiovascular and kidney events. A

**10.43** In patients with type 2 diabetes and established heart failure with reduced ejection fraction, a sodium–glucose cotransporter 2 inhibitor with proven benefit in this patient population is recommended to reduce risk of worsening heart failure and cardiovascular death. A

**10.44** In patients with known atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease, particularly coronary artery disease, ACE inhibitor or angiotensin receptor blocker therapy is recommended to reduce the risk of cardiovascular events. A

**10.45** In patients with prior myocardial infarction, β-blockers should be continued for 3 years after the event. B

**10.46** Treatment of patients with heart failure with reduced ejection fraction should include a β-blocker with proven cardiovascular outcomes benefit, unless otherwise contraindicated. A

**10.47** In patients with type 2 diabetes with stable heart failure, metformin may be continued for glucose lowering if estimated glomerular filtration rate remains >30 mL/min/1.73 m² but should be avoided in unstable or hospitalized patients with heart failure. B

### Cardiac Testing

Candidates for advanced or invasive cardiac testing include those with 1) typical or atypical cardiac symptoms and 2) an abnormal resting electrocardiogram (ECG). Exercise ECG testing without or with echocardiography may be used as the initial test. In adults with diabetes ≥40 years of age, measurement of coronary artery calcium is also reasonable for cardiovascular risk assessment. Pharmacologic stress echocardiography or nuclear imaging should be considered in individuals with diabetes in whom resting ECG abnormalities preclude exercise stress testing (e.g., left bundle branch block or ST-T abnormalities). In addition, individuals who require stress testing and are unable to exercise should undergo pharmacologic stress echocardiography or nuclear imaging.

### Screening Asymptomatic Patients

The screening of asymptomatic patients with high ASCVD risk is not recommended (168), in part because these high-risk patients should already be receiving intensive medical therapy—an approach that provides benefit similar to invasive revascularization (169,170). There is also some evidence that silent ischemia may reverse over time, adding to the controversy concerning aggressive screening strategies (171). In prospective studies, coronary artery calcium has been established as an independent predictor of future ASCVD events in patients with diabetes and is consistently superior to both the UK Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS) risk engine and the Framingham Risk Score in predicting risk in this population (172–174). However, a randomized observational trial demonstrated no clinical benefit to routine screening of asymptomatic patients with type 2 diabetes and normal ECGs (175). Despite abnormal myocardial perfusion imaging in more than one in five patients, cardiac outcomes were essentially equal (and very low) in screened versus unscreened patients. Accordingly, indiscriminate screening is not considered cost-effective. Studies have found that a risk factor–based approach to the initial diagnostic evaluation and subsequent follow-up for coronary artery disease fails to identify which patients with type 2 diabetes will have silent ischemia on screening tests (176,177).

Any benefit of newer noninvasive coronary artery disease screening methods, such as computed tomography calcium scoring and computed tomography angiography, to identify patient subgroups for different treatment strategies remains unproven in asymptomatic patients with diabetes, though research is ongoing. Although asymptomatic patients with diabetes with higher coronary disease burden have more future cardiac events (172,178,179), the role of these tests beyond risk stratification is not clear.

While coronary artery screening methods, such as calcium scoring, may improve cardiovascular risk assessment in people with type 2 diabetes (180), their routine use leads to radiation exposure and may result in unnecessary invasive testing such as coronary angiography and revascularization procedures. The ultimate balance of benefit, cost, and risks of such an approach in asymptomatic patients remains controversial, particularly in the modern setting of aggressive ASCVD risk factor control.

### Lifestyle and Pharmacologic Interventions

Intensive lifestyle intervention focusing on weight loss through decreased caloric intake and increased physical activity as performed in the Action for Health in Diabetes (Look AHEAD) trial may be considered for improving glucose control, fitness, and some ASCVD risk factors (181). Patients at increased ASCVD risk should receive statin, ACE inhibitor, or ARB therapy if the patient has hypertension, and possibly aspirin, unless there are contraindications to a particular drug class. Clear benefit exists for ACE inhibitor or ARB therapy in patients with diabetic kidney disease or hypertension, and these agents are recommended for hypertension management in patients with known ASCVD (particularly coronary artery disease) (63,64,182). β-Blockers should be used in patients with active angina or HFrEF and for 3 years after MI in patients with preserved left ventricular function (183,184).

### Glucose-Lowering Therapies and Cardiovascular Outcomes

In 2008, the FDA issued a guidance for industry to perform cardiovascular outcomes trials for all new medications for the treatment for type 2 diabetes amid concerns of increased cardiovascular risk (185). Previously approved diabetes medications were not subject to the
Table 10.3A—Cardiovascular and cardiorenal outcomes trials of available antihyperglycemic medications completed after the issuance of the FDA 2008 guidelines: DPP-4 inhibitors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intervention</th>
<th>SAVOR-TIMI 53 (214)</th>
<th>EXAMINE (222)</th>
<th>TECOS (216)</th>
<th>CARMELINA (186,223)</th>
<th>CAROLINA (186,224)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(n = 16,492)</td>
<td>(n = 5,380)</td>
<td>(n = 14,671)</td>
<td>(n = 6,979)</td>
<td>(n = 6,042)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main inclusion criteria</td>
<td>Type 2 diabetes and history of or multiple risk factors for CVD</td>
<td>Type 2 diabetes and ACS within 15–90 days before randomization</td>
<td>Type 2 diabetes and preexisting CVD</td>
<td>Type 2 diabetes and high CV and renal risk</td>
<td>Type 2 diabetes and high CV risk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1C inclusion criteria (%)</td>
<td>≥6.5</td>
<td>6.5–11.0</td>
<td>6.5–8.0</td>
<td>6.5–10.0</td>
<td>6.5–8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age (years)‡</td>
<td>65.1</td>
<td>61.0</td>
<td>65.4</td>
<td>65.8</td>
<td>64.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Race (% White)</td>
<td>75.2</td>
<td>72.7</td>
<td>67.9</td>
<td>80.2</td>
<td>73.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sex (% male)</td>
<td>66.9</td>
<td>67.9</td>
<td>70.7</td>
<td>62.9</td>
<td>60.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes duration (years)†</td>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>7.1</td>
<td>11.6</td>
<td>14.7</td>
<td>6.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Median follow-up (years)</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>6.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statin use (%)</td>
<td>78</td>
<td>91</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>71.8</td>
<td>64.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metformin use (%)</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>54.8</td>
<td>82.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior CVD/CHF (%)</td>
<td>78/13</td>
<td>100/28</td>
<td>74/18</td>
<td>57/26.8</td>
<td>34.5/4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean baseline A1C (%)</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>7.9</td>
<td>7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean difference in A1C between groups at end of treatment (%)</td>
<td>−0.3‡</td>
<td>−0.3‡</td>
<td>−0.3‡</td>
<td>−0.36‡</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary outcome§</td>
<td>3-point MACE 1.00 (0.89–1.12)</td>
<td>3-point MACE 0.96 (0.95 UL ≤1.16)</td>
<td>4-point MACE 0.98 (0.89–1.08)</td>
<td>3-point MACE 1.02 (0.89–1.17)</td>
<td>3-point MACE 0.98 (0.84–1.14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key secondary outcome§</td>
<td>Expanded MACE 1.02 (0.94–1.11)</td>
<td>4-point MACE 0.95 (0.95 UL ≤1.14)</td>
<td>3-point MACE 0.99 (0.89–1.10)</td>
<td>Kidney composite (ESRD, sustained ≥40% decrease in eGFR, or renal death) 1.04 (0.89–1.22)</td>
<td>4-point MACE 0.99 (0.86–1.14)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiovascular death§</td>
<td>1.03 (0.87–1.22)</td>
<td>0.85 (0.66–1.10)</td>
<td>1.03 (0.89–1.19)</td>
<td>0.96 (0.81–1.14)</td>
<td>1.00 (0.81–1.24)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MI§</td>
<td>0.95 (0.80–1.12)</td>
<td>1.08 (0.88–1.33)</td>
<td>0.95 (0.81–1.11)</td>
<td>1.12 (0.90–1.40)</td>
<td>1.03 (0.82–1.29)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stroke§</td>
<td>1.11 (0.88–1.39)</td>
<td>0.91 (0.55–1.50)</td>
<td>0.97 (0.79–1.19)</td>
<td>0.91 (0.67–1.23)</td>
<td>0.86 (0.66–1.12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HF hospitalization§</td>
<td>1.27 (1.07–1.51)</td>
<td>1.19 (0.90–1.58)</td>
<td>1.00 (0.83–1.20)</td>
<td>0.90 (0.74–1.08)</td>
<td>1.21 (0.92–1.59)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unstable angina hospitalization§</td>
<td>1.19 (0.89–1.60)</td>
<td>0.90 (0.60–1.37)</td>
<td>0.90 (0.70–1.16)</td>
<td>0.87 (0.57–1.31)</td>
<td>1.07 (0.74–1.54)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All-cause mortality§</td>
<td>1.11 (0.96–1.27)</td>
<td>0.88 (0.71–1.09)</td>
<td>1.01 (0.90–1.14)</td>
<td>0.98 (0.84–1.13)</td>
<td>0.91 (0.78–1.06)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Worsening nephropathy§</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.08 (0.88–1.32)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>Kidney composite (see above)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

—, not assessed/reported; ACS, acute coronary syndrome; CHF, congestive heart failure; CV, cardiovascular; CVD, cardiovascular disease; DPP-4, dipeptidyl peptidase 4; eGFR, estimated glomerular filtration rate; ESRD, end-stage renal disease; GLP-1, glucagon-like peptide 1; HF, heart failure; MACE, major adverse cardiovascular event; MI, myocardial infarction; UL, upper limit. Data from this table was adapted from Cefalu et al. (225) in the January 2018 issue of Diabetes Care. ‡Age was reported as means in all trials except EXAMINE, which reported medians; diabetes duration was reported as means in all trials except SAVOR-TIMI 53 and EXAMINE, which reported medians. †Significant difference in A1C between groups (P < 0.05). ¶Outcomes reported as hazard ratio (95% CI). ||Worsening nephropathy is defined as a doubling of creatinine level, initiation of dialysis, renal transplantation, or creatinine > 6.0 mg/dL (530 mmol/L) in SAVOR-TIMI 53. Worsening nephropathy was a prespecified exploratory adjudicated outcome in SAVOR-TIMI 53.
Table 10.38—Cardiovascular and cardiorenal outcomes trials of available antihyperglycemic medications completed after the issuance of the FDA 2008 guidelines: GLP-1 receptor agonists

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Study</th>
<th>GLP-1 Receptor Agonists</th>
<th>Intervention</th>
<th>Main Inclusion Criteria</th>
<th>A1C Inclusion Criteria (%)</th>
<th>Age (years)*</th>
<th>Race (% White)</th>
<th>Sex (% Male)</th>
<th>Diabetes Duration (years)†</th>
<th>Median Follow-up (years)</th>
<th>Statin Use (%)</th>
<th>Metformin Use (%)</th>
<th>Prior CVD/CHF (%)</th>
<th>Mean Baseline A1C (%)</th>
<th>Mean Difference in A1C between groups at end of treatment (%)</th>
<th>Year Started/Reported</th>
<th>Primary Outcome§</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EUXIA (199)</td>
<td>Lixisenatide/placebo</td>
<td>Type 2 diabetes and history of ACS (&lt;180 days)</td>
<td>5.5–11.0</td>
<td>60.3</td>
<td>75.2</td>
<td>69.3</td>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>93</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>100/22</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>-0.3‡</td>
<td>2010/2015</td>
<td>4-point MACE 1.02 (0.89–1.17)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEADER (194)</td>
<td>Liraglutide/placebo</td>
<td>Type 2 diabetes and preexisting CVD, CKD, or HF at ≥50 years of age or CV risk at ≥60 years of age</td>
<td>≥7.0</td>
<td>64.3</td>
<td>77.5</td>
<td>64.3</td>
<td>12.8</td>
<td>3.8</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>76</td>
<td>81/18</td>
<td>8.7</td>
<td>-0.4‡</td>
<td>2010/2016</td>
<td>3-point MACE 0.87 (0.78–0.97)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUSTAIN-6 (195)*</td>
<td>Semaglutide s.c. injection/placebo</td>
<td>Type 2 diabetes and preexisting CVD, HF, or CKD at ≥50 years of age or CV risk at ≥60 years of age</td>
<td>≥7.0</td>
<td>64.6</td>
<td>83.0</td>
<td>60.7</td>
<td>13.9</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>60/24</td>
<td>8.7</td>
<td>-0.7 or -1.0^</td>
<td>2013/2016</td>
<td>3-point MACE 0.74 (0.58–0.95)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXSCEL (200)</td>
<td>Exenatide QW/placebo</td>
<td>Type 2 diabetes and prior ASCVD event or risk factors for ASCVD</td>
<td>6.5–10.0</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>75.8</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>74</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>73.1/16.2</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>-0.5‡</td>
<td>2010/2017</td>
<td>3-point MACE 0.91 (0.83–1.00)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REWIND (198)</td>
<td>Dulaglutide/placebo</td>
<td>Type 2 diabetes and high CV risk (age of ≥50 years with established CVD or CKD, or age of ≥60 years with CV risk factors only)</td>
<td>≤9.5</td>
<td>66.2</td>
<td>75.7</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>5.4</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>81</td>
<td>32/9</td>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>-0.61‡</td>
<td>2011/2019</td>
<td>3-point MACE 0.88 (0.79–0.99)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIONEER-6 (196)</td>
<td>Semaglutide oral/placebo</td>
<td>Type 2 diabetes with or without preexisting CVD</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>72.3</td>
<td>53.7</td>
<td>14.9</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>85.2 (all lipid-lowering)</td>
<td>77.4</td>
<td>84.7/12.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Continued on p. S161
Table 10.3—Continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key secondary outcome§</th>
<th>ELIXA (199) (n = 6,068)</th>
<th>LEADER (194) (n = 9,340)</th>
<th>SUSTAIN-6 (195)* (n = 3,297)</th>
<th>EXSCEL (200) (n = 14,752)</th>
<th>REWIND (198) (n = 9,901)</th>
<th>PIONEER-6 (196) (n = 3,183)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Expanded MACE 1.02 (0.90–1.11)</td>
<td>0.98 (0.78–1.22)</td>
<td>0.78 (0.66–0.93)</td>
<td>0.98 (0.65–1.48)</td>
<td>0.88 (0.76–1.02)</td>
<td>0.91 (0.78–1.06)</td>
<td>0.49 (0.27–0.92)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expanded MACE 0.88 (0.81–0.96)</td>
<td>0.86 (0.73–1.00)</td>
<td>0.74 (0.51–1.08)</td>
<td>0.97 (0.85–1.10)</td>
<td>0.96 (0.79–1.15)</td>
<td>1.18 (0.73–1.90)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Individual components of MACE (see below)</td>
<td>0.86 (0.38–0.99)</td>
<td>0.85 (0.70–1.03)</td>
<td>0.76 (0.61–0.95)</td>
<td>0.74 (0.35–1.57)</td>
<td>0.86 (0.48–1.55)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Composite microvascular outcome (eye or renal outcome) 0.87 (0.79–1.05)</td>
<td>0.87 (0.73–1.05)</td>
<td>1.11 (0.77–1.61)</td>
<td>0.94 (0.78–1.13)</td>
<td>0.93 (0.77–1.12)</td>
<td>0.86 (0.48–1.55)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expanded MACE or HF hospitalization 0.82 (0.61–1.10)</td>
<td>0.96 (0.75–1.23)</td>
<td>0.87 (0.73–1.05)</td>
<td>1.11 (0.74–1.50)</td>
<td>1.05 (0.94–1.18)</td>
<td>1.14 (0.84–1.54)</td>
<td>1.56 (0.60–4.01)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MI§</td>
<td>1.03 (0.87–1.22)</td>
<td>0.86 (0.73–1.00)</td>
<td>0.74 (0.51–1.08)</td>
<td>0.97 (0.85–1.10)</td>
<td>0.96 (0.79–1.15)</td>
<td>1.18 (0.73–1.90)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stroke§</td>
<td>1.12 (0.79–1.58)</td>
<td>0.86 (0.71–1.06)</td>
<td>0.61 (0.38–0.99)</td>
<td>0.85 (0.70–1.03)</td>
<td>0.76 (0.61–0.95)</td>
<td>0.74 (0.35–1.57)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HF hospitalization§</td>
<td>0.96 (0.75–1.23)</td>
<td>0.87 (0.73–1.05)</td>
<td>1.11 (0.77–1.61)</td>
<td>0.94 (0.78–1.13)</td>
<td>0.93 (0.77–1.12)</td>
<td>0.86 (0.48–1.55)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unstable angina hospitalization§</td>
<td>1.11 (0.47–2.62)</td>
<td>0.98 (0.76–1.26)</td>
<td>0.82 (0.47–1.44)</td>
<td>1.05 (0.94–1.18)</td>
<td>1.14 (0.84–1.54)</td>
<td>1.56 (0.60–4.01)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All-cause mortality§</td>
<td>0.94 (0.78–1.13)</td>
<td>0.85 (0.74–0.97)</td>
<td>1.05 (0.74–1.50)</td>
<td>0.86 (0.77–0.97)</td>
<td>0.90 (0.80–1.01)</td>
<td>0.51 (0.31–0.84)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Worsening nephropathy§</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.78 (0.67–0.92)</td>
<td>0.64 (0.46–0.88)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.85 (0.77–0.93)</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§—, not assessed/report; ACS, acute coronary syndrome; ASCVD, atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease; CHF, congestive heart failure; CKD, chronic kidney disease; CV, cardiovascular; CVD, cardiovascular disease; GLP-1, glucagon-like peptide 1; HF, heart failure; MACE, major adverse cardiovascular event; MI, myocardial infarction. Data from this table was adapted from Cefalu et al. (225) in the January 2018 issue of Diabetes Care. *Powered to rule out a hazard ratio of 1.8; superiority hypothesis not prespecified. §Age was reported as means in all trials; diabetes duration was reported as means in all trials except EXSCEL, which reported medians. †Significant difference in A1C between groups (<0.05). /A1C change of 0.66% with 0.5 mg and 1.05% with 1 mg dose of semaglutide. §§Outcomes reported as hazard ratio (95% CI). ||Worsening nephropathy is defined as the new onset of urine albumin-to-creatinine ratio >300 mg/g creatinine or a doubling of the serum creatinine level and an estimated glomerular filtration rate <45 mL/min/1.73 m², the need for continuous renal replacement therapy, or death from renal disease in LEADER and SUSTAIN-6 and as new macroalbuminuria, a sustained decline in estimated glomerular filtration rate of 30% or more from baseline, or chronic renal replacement therapy in REWIND. Worsening nephropathy was a prespecified exploratory adjudicated outcome in LEADER, SUSTAIN-6, and REWIND.
| Table 10.3—Cardiovascular and cardiorenal outcomes trials of available antihyperglycemic medications completed after the issuance of the FDA 2008 guidelines: SGLT2 inhibitors |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| **Intervention** | **EMPA-REG OUTCOME (8)** | **CANVAS Program (9)** | **DECLARE-TIMI 58 (189)** | **CREDECE (187)** | **DAPA-CKD (190,226)** | **VERTIS CV (192,227)** | **DAPA-HF (191)** |
|                  | (n = 7,020)      | (n = 10,142)     | (n = 17,160)     | (n = 4,401)     | (n = 4,304; 2,906 with diabetes) | (n = 8,246) | (n = 3,730; 1,856 with diabetes) |
| **Main inclusion criteria** | Type 2 diabetes and preexisting CVD | Type 2 diabetes and preexisting CVD at ≥30 years of age or >2 CV risk factors at ≥50 years of age | Type 2 diabetes and established ASCVD or multiple risk factors for ASCVD | Type 2 diabetes and albuminuric kidney disease | Alumurmic kidney disease, with or without diabetes | Type 2 diabetes and ASCVD | NYHA class II, III, or IV heart failure and an ejection fraction ≤40%, with or without diabetes |
| **A1C inclusion criteria (%)** | 7.0–10.0 | 7.0–10.5 | ≥6.5 | 6.5–12 | — | 7.0–10.5 | — |
| **Age (years)†** | 63.1 | 63.3 | 64.0 | 63 | 61.8 | 64.4 | 66 | 67.2, 66.5 |
| **Race (% White)** | 72.4 | 78.3 | 79.6 | 66.6 | 53.2 | 87.8 | 70.3 | 71.1, 69.8 |
| **Sex (% male)** | 71.5 | 64.2 | 62.6 | 66.1 | 66.9 | 70 | 76.6 | 76.5, 75.6 |
| **Diabetes duration (years)†** | 57% >10 | 13.5 | 11.0 | 15.8 | 12.9 | |
| **Median follow-up (years)** | 3.1 | 3.6 | 4.2 | 2.6 | 2.4 | 3.5 | 1.5 | 1.3 |
| **Statin use (%)** | 77 | 75 | 75 (statin or ezetimibe use) | 69 | 64.9 | — | — | — |
| **Metformin use (%)** | 74 | 77 | 82 | 57.8 | 29 | — | 51.2% (of patients with diabetes) |
| **Prior CVD/CHF (%)** | 99/10 | 65.6/14.4 | 40/10 | 50.4/14.8 | 37.4/10.9 | 99.9/23.1 | 100% with CHF | 100% with CHF |
| **Mean baseline A1C (%)** | 8.1 | 8.2 | 8.3 | 8.3 | 8.3 | 7.1% (7.8% in those with diabetes) | 8.2 | — |
| **Mean difference in A1C between groups at end of treatment (%)** | −0.3  † | −0.58 † | −0.43 † | −0.31 | N/A | −0.48 to −0.5 | N/A | N/A |

Continued on p. S163
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary outcome§</th>
<th>EMPA-REG OUTCOME (8) (n = 7,020)</th>
<th>CANVAS Program (9) (n = 10,142)</th>
<th>DECLARE-TIMI 58 (189) (n = 17,160)</th>
<th>CREDENCE (187) (n = 4,401)</th>
<th>DAPA-CKD (190,226) (n = 4,304; 2,906 with diabetes)</th>
<th>VERTIS CV (192,227) (n = 8,246)</th>
<th>DAPA-HF (191) (n = 4,744; 1,983 with diabetes)</th>
<th>EMPEROR-Reduced (217,219) (n = 3,730; 1,856 with diabetes)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3-point MACE 0.86 (0.74–0.99)</td>
<td>3-point MACE 0.86 (0.75–0.97)</td>
<td>3-point MACE 0.93 (0.84–1.03)</td>
<td>ESRD, doubling of creatinine, or death from renal or CV cause 0.70 (0.59–0.82)</td>
<td>≥50% decline in eGFR, ESKD, or death from renal or CV cause 0.61 (0.51–0.72)</td>
<td>3-point MACE 0.97 (0.85–1.11)</td>
<td>Worsening heart failure or death from CV causes 0.74 (0.65–0.85)</td>
<td>CV death or HF hospitalization 0.75 (0.65–0.86)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key secondary outcome§</td>
<td>4-point MACE 0.89 (0.78–1.01)</td>
<td>All-cause and CV mortality (see below)</td>
<td>Death from any cause 0.93 (0.82–1.04)</td>
<td>CV death or HF hospitalization 0.69 (0.57–0.83)</td>
<td>3-point MACE 0.80 (0.67–0.95)</td>
<td>≥50% decline in eGFR, ESKD, or death from renal cause 0.56 (0.45–0.68)</td>
<td>CV death or HF hospitalization 0.88 (0.75–1.03)</td>
<td>CV death or HF hospitalization 0.75 (0.65–0.85)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiovascular death§</td>
<td>0.62 (0.49–0.77)</td>
<td>0.87 (0.72–1.06)</td>
<td>0.98 (0.82–1.17)</td>
<td>0.78 (0.61–1.00)</td>
<td>0.81 (0.58–1.12)</td>
<td>0.92 (0.77–1.11)</td>
<td>0.82 (0.69–0.98)</td>
<td>0.92 (0.75–1.12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MI§</td>
<td>0.87 (0.70–1.09)</td>
<td>0.89 (0.73–1.09)</td>
<td>0.89 (0.77–1.01)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1.04 (0.86–1.26)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stroke§</td>
<td>1.18 (0.89–1.56)</td>
<td>0.87 (0.69–1.09)</td>
<td>1.01 (0.84–1.21)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>1.06 (0.82–1.37)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HF hospitalization§</td>
<td>0.65 (0.50–0.85)</td>
<td>0.67 (0.52–0.87)</td>
<td>0.73 (0.61–0.88)</td>
<td>0.61 (0.47–0.80)</td>
<td>0.70 (0.54–0.90)</td>
<td>0.70 (0.59–0.83)</td>
<td>0.69 (0.59–0.81)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unstable angina §</td>
<td>0.99 (0.74–1.34)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All-cause mortality§</td>
<td>0.68 (0.57–0.82)</td>
<td>0.87 (0.74–1.01)</td>
<td>0.93 (0.82–1.04)</td>
<td>0.83 (0.68–1.02)</td>
<td>0.69 (0.53–0.88)</td>
<td>0.93 (0.80–1.08)</td>
<td>0.83 (0.71–0.97)</td>
<td>0.92 (0.77–1.10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Worsening nephropathy§</td>
<td>0.61 (0.53–0.70)</td>
<td>0.60 (0.47–0.77)</td>
<td>0.53 (0.43–0.66)</td>
<td>(See primary outcome)</td>
<td>(See primary outcome)</td>
<td>(See secondary outcomes)</td>
<td>0.71 (0.44–1.16)</td>
<td>Composite renal outcome 0.50 (0.32–0.77)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

§Outcomes reported as hazard ratio (95% CI).

—, not assessed/reported; CHF, congestive heart failure; CV, cardiovascular; CVD, cardiovascular disease; eGFR, estimated glomerular filtration rate; ESRD, end-stage renal disease; HF, heart failure; MACE, major adverse cardiovascular event; MI, myocardial infarction; SGLT2, sodium–glucose cotransporter 2; NYHA, New York Heart Association. Data from this table was adapted from Cefalu et al. (225) in the January 2018 issue of Diabetes Care. *Baseline characteristics for EMPEROR-Reduced displayed as empagliflozin, placebo. †Age was reported as means in all trials; diabetes duration was reported as means in all trials except EMPA-REG OUTCOME, which reported as percentage of population with diabetes duration >10 years, and DECLARE-TIMI 58, which reported median. §Significant difference in A1C between groups (P < 0.05). ‡A1C change of 0.30 in EMPA-REG OUTCOME is based on pooled results for both doses (i.e., 0.24% for 10 mg and 0.36% for 25 mg of empagliflozin).
of end-stage kidney disease alone by 32% (HR 0.68 [95% CI 0.54–0.86]). Canagliflozin was additionally found to have a lower risk of the composite of cardiovascular death, MI, or stroke (HR 0.80 [95% CI 0.67–0.95]), as well as lower risk of hospitalizations for heart failure (HR 0.61 [95% CI 0.47–0.80]) and of the composite of cardiovascular death or hospitalization for heart failure (HR 0.69 [95% CI 0.57–0.83]). In terms of safety, no significant increase in lower-limb amputations, fractures, acute kidney injury, or hyperkalemia was noted for canagliflozin relative to placebo in CRE-DENCE. An increased risk for diabetic ketoacidosis was noted, however, with 2.2 and 0.2 events per 1,000 patient-years noted in the canagliflozin and placebo groups, respectively (HR 10.80 [95% CI 1.39–83.65]) (187).

The Dapagliflozin Effect on Cardiovascular Events—Thrombosis in Myocardial Infarction 58 (DECLARE-TIMI 58) trial was another randomized, double-blind trial that assessed the effects of dapagliflozin versus placebo on cardiovascular and renal outcomes in 17,160 patients with type 2 diabetes and established ASCVD or multiple risk factors for atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease (189). Study participants had a mean age of 64 years, with ~40% of study participants having established ASCVD at baseline—a characteristic of this trial that differs from other large cardiovascular trials where a majority of participants had established cardiovascular disease. DECLARE-TIMI 58 met the prespecified criteria for noninferiority to placebo with respect to major adverse cardiovascular events but did not show a lower rate of major adverse cardiovascular events when compared with placebo (8.8% in the dapagliflozin group and 9.4% in the placebo group; HR 0.93 [95% CI 0.84–1.03]; P = 0.17). A lower rate of cardiovascular death or hospitalization for heart failure was noted (4.9% vs. 5.8%; HR 0.83 [95% CI 0.73–0.95]; P = 0.005), which reflected a lower rate of hospitalization for heart failure (HR 0.73 [95% CI 0.61–0.88]). No difference was seen in cardiovascular death between groups.

In the Dapagliflozin and Prevention of Adverse Outcomes in Chronic Kidney Disease (DAPA-CKD) trial (190), 4,304 patients with chronic kidney disease (UACR 200–5,000 mg/g and eGFR 25–75 mL/min/1.73 m²), with or without diabetes, were randomized to dapagliflozin 10 mg daily or placebo. The primary outcome was a composite of sustained decline in eGFR of at least 50%, end-stage kidney disease, or death from renal or cardiovascular causes. Over a median follow-up period of 2.4 years, a primary outcome event occurred in 9.2% of participants in the dapagliflozin group and 14.5% of those in the placebo group. The risk of the primary composite outcome was significantly lower with dapagliflozin therapy compared with placebo (HR 0.61 [95% CI 0.51–0.72]), as were the risks for a renal composite outcome of sustained decline in eGFR of at least 50%, end-stage kidney disease, or death from renal causes (HR 0.56 [95% CI 0.45–0.68]), and a composite of cardiovascular death or hospitalization for heart failure (HR 0.71 [95% CI 0.55–0.92]). The effects of dapagliflozin therapy were similar in patients with and without type 2 diabetes.

Results of the Dapagliflozin and Prevention of Adverse Outcomes in Heart Failure (DAPA-HF) trial and the Empagliflozin Outcome Trial in Patients With Chronic Heart Failure and a Reduced Ejection Fraction (EMPEROR-Reduced), which assessed the effects of dapagliflozin and empagliflozin, respectively, in patients with established heart failure (191), are described below in GLUCOSE-LOWERING THERAPIES AND HEART FAILURE.

The Evaluation of Ertugliflozin Efficacy and Safety Cardiovascular Outcomes Trial (VERTIS CV) (192) was a randomized, double-blind trial that established the effects of ertugliflozin versus placebo on cardiovascular outcomes in 8,246 patients with type 2 diabetes and established ASCVD. Participants were assigned to the addition of 5 mg or 15 mg of ertugliflozin or placebo once daily to background standard care. Study participants had a mean age of 64.4 years and a mean duration of diabetes of 13 years at baseline and were followed for a median of 3.0 years. VERTIS CV met the prespecified criteria for noninferiority of ertugliflozin to placebo with respect to the primary outcome of major adverse cardiovascular events (11.9% in the pooled ertugliflozin group and 11.9% in the placebo group; HR 0.97 [95% CI 0.85–1.11]; P < 0.001). Ertugliflozin was not superior to placebo for the key secondary outcomes of death from cardiovascular causes or...
hospitalization for heart failure; death from cardiovascular causes; or the composite of death from renal causes, renal replacement therapy, or doubling of the serum creatinine level. The hazard ratio for a secondary outcome of hospitalization for heart failure (ertugliflozin vs. placebo) was 0.70 [95% CI 0.54–0.90], consistent with findings from other SGLT2 inhibitor cardiovascular outcomes trials.

Sotagliflozin, an investigational SGLT1 and SGLT2 inhibitor that lowers glucose via delayed glucose absorption in the gut in addition to increasing urinary glucose excretion, has been evaluated in the Effect of Sotagliflozin on Cardiovascular and Renal Events in Patients With Type 2 Diabetes and Moderate Renal Impairment Who Are at Cardiovascular Risk (SCORED) trial (193). A total of 10,584 patients with type 2 diabetes, chronic kidney disease, and additional cardiovascular risk were enrolled in SCORED and randomized to sotagliflozin 200 mg once daily (up titrated to 400 mg once daily if tolerated) or placebo. SCORED ended early due to a lack of funding; thus, changes to the prespecified primary end points were made prior to unblinding to accommodate a lower than anticipated number of end point events. The primary end point of the trial was the total number of deaths from cardiovascular causes, hospitalizations for heart failure, and urgent visits for heart failure. After a median of 16 months of follow-up, the rate of primary end point events was reduced with sotagliflozin (5.6 events per 100 patient-years in the sotagliflozin group and 7.5 events per 100 patient-years in the placebo group [HR 0.74 [95% CI 0.63–0.88]; P < 0.001]). Sotagliflozin also reduced the risk of the secondary end point of total number of hospitalizations for heart failure and urgent visits for heart failure (3.5% in the sotagliflozin group and 5.1% in the placebo group; HR 0.67 [95% CI 0.55–0.82]; P < 0.001) but not the secondary end point of deaths from cardiovascular causes. No significant between-group differences were found for the outcome of all-cause mortality or for a composite renal outcome comprising the first occurrence of long-term dialysis, renal transplantation, or a sustained reduction in eGFR. In general, the adverse effects of sotagliflozin were similar to those seen with use of SGLT2 inhibitors, but they also included an increased rate of diarrhea potentially related to the inhibition of SGLT1.

**GLP-1 Receptor Agonist Trials**

The Liraglutide Effect and Action in Diabetes: Evaluation of Cardiovascular Outcome Results (LEADER) trial was a randomized, double-blind trial that assessed the effect of liraglutide, a glucagon-like peptide 1 (GLP-1) receptor agonist, versus placebo on cardiovascular outcomes in 9,340 patients with type 2 diabetes at high risk for cardiovascular disease or with cardiovascular disease. Study participants had a mean age of 64 years and a mean duration of diabetes of nearly 13 years. Over 80% of study participants had established cardiovascular disease. After a median follow-up of 3.8 years, LEADER showed that the primary composite outcome (MI, stroke, or cardiovascular death) occurred in fewer participants in the treatment group (13.0%) when compared with the placebo group (14.9%) (HR 0.87 [95% CI 0.78–0.97]; P < 0.001 for noninferiority; P = 0.01 for superiority). Deaths from cardiovascular causes were significantly reduced in the liraglutide group (4.7%) compared with the placebo group (6.0%) (HR 0.78 [95% CI 0.66–0.93]; P = 0.007) (194). The FDA approved the use of liraglutide to reduce the risk of major adverse cardiovascular events, including heart attack, stroke, and cardiovascular death, in adults with type 2 diabetes and established cardiovascular disease.

Results from a moderate-sized trial of another GLP-1 receptor agonist, semaglutide, were consistent with the LEADER trial (195). Semaglutide is a once-weekly GLP-1 receptor agonist approved by the FDA for the treatment of type 2 diabetes. The Trial to Evaluate Cardiovascular and Other Long-term Outcomes With Semaglutide in Subjects With Type 2 Diabetes (SUSTAIN-6) was the initial randomized trial powered to test noninferiority of semaglutide for the purpose of regulatory approval. In this study, 3,297 patients with type 2 diabetes were randomized to receive once-weekly semaglutide (0.5 mg or 1.0 mg) or placebo for 2 years. The primary outcome (the first occurrence of cardiovascular death, nonfatal MI, or nonfatal stroke) occurred in 108 patients (6.6%) in the semaglutide group vs. 146 patients (8.9%) in the placebo group (HR 0.74 [95% CI 0.58–0.95]; P < 0.001). More patients discontinued treatment in the semaglutide group because of adverse events, mainly gastrointestinal. The cardiovascular effects of the oral formulation of semaglutide compared with placebo have been assessed in Peptide Innovation for Early Diabetes Treatment (PIONEER) 6, a pre-approval trial designed to rule out an unacceptable increase in cardiovascular risk. In this trial of 3,183 patients with type 2 diabetes and high cardiovascular risk followed for a median of 15.9 months, oral semaglutide was noninferior to placebo for the primary composite outcome of cardiovascular death, nonfatal MI, or nonfatal stroke (HR 0.79 [95% CI 0.57–1.11]; P < 0.001 for noninferiority) (196). The cardiovascular effects of this formulation of semaglutide will be further tested in a large, longer-term outcomes trial.

The Harmony Outcomes trial randomized 9,463 patients with type 2 diabetes and cardiovascular disease to once-weekly subcutaneous albiglutide or matching placebo, in addition to their standard care. Over a median duration of 1.6 years, the GLP-1 receptor agonist reduced the risk of cardiovascular death, MI, or stroke to an incidence rate of 4.6 events per 100 person-years in the albiglutide group vs. 5.9 events in the placebo group (HR ratio 0.78, P = 0.0006 for superiority) (197). This agent is not currently available for clinical use.

The Researching Cardiovascular Events With A Weekly Incretin in Diabetes (REWIND) trial was a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial that assessed the effect of the once-weekly GLP-1 receptor agonist dulaglutide versus placebo on major adverse cardiovascular events in ~9,990 patients with type 2 diabetes at risk for cardiovascular events or with a history of cardiovascular disease (198). Study participants had a mean age of 66 years and a mean duration of diabetes of ~10 years. Approximately 32% of participants had history of atherosclerotic cardiovascular events at baseline. After a median follow-up of 5.4 years, the primary composite outcome of nonfatal MI, nonfatal stroke, or death from cardiovascular causes occurred in 12.0% and 13.4% of participants in the dulaglutide and placebo treatment groups, respectively (HR 0.88 [95% CI 0.79–0.99]; P = 0.026). These
findings equated to incidence rates of 2.4 and 2.7 events per 100 person-years, respectively. The results were consistent across the subgroups of patients with and without history of CV events. All-cause mortality did not differ between groups (P = 0.067).

The Evaluation of Lixisenatide in Acute Coronary Syndrome (ELIXA) trial studied the once-daily GLP-1 receptor agonist lixisenatide on cardiovascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes who had had a recent acute coronary event (199). A total of 6,068 patients with type 2 diabetes with a recent hospitalization for MI or unstable angina within the previous 180 days were randomized to receive lixisenatide or placebo in addition to standard care and were followed for a median of ~2.1 years. The primary outcome of cardiovascular death, MI, stroke, or hospitalization for unstable angina occurred in 406 patients (13.4%) in the lixisenatide group vs. 399 (13.2%) in the placebo group (HR 1.2 [95% CI 0.89–1.17]), which demonstrated the noninferiority of lixisenatide to placebo (P < 0.001) but did not show superiority (P = 0.81).

The Exenatide Study of Cardiovascular Event Lowering (ExSCEL) trial also reported results with the once-weekly GLP-1 receptor agonist extended-release exenatide and found that major adverse cardiovascular events were numerically lower with use of extended-release exenatide compared with placebo, although this difference was not statistically significant (200). A total of 14,752 patients with type 2 diabetes (of whom 10,782 [73.1%] had previous cardiovascular disease) were randomized to receive extended-release exenatide 2 mg or placebo and followed for a median of 3.2 years. The primary end point of cardiovascular death, MI, or stroke occurred in 839 patients (11.4%; 3.7 events per 100 person-years) in the exenatide group and in 905 patients (12.2%; 4.0 events per 100 person-years) in the placebo group (HR 0.91 [95% CI 0.83–1.00]; P < 0.001 for noninferiority), but exenatide was not superior to placebo with respect to the primary end point (P = 0.06 for superiority). However, all-cause mortality was lower in the exenatide group (HR 0.86 [95% CI 0.77–0.97]). The incidence of acute pancreatitis, pancreatic cancer, medullary thyroid carcinoma, and serious adverse events did not differ significantly between the two groups.

In summary, there are now numerous large randomized controlled trials reporting statistically significant reductions in cardiovascular events for three of the FDA-approved SGLT2 inhibitors (empagliflozin, canagliflozin, dapagliflozin, with lesser benefits seen with ertugliflozin) and four FDA-approved GLP-1 receptor agonists (lixisenatide, albiglutide [although that agent was removed from the market for business reasons], semaglutide [lower risk of cardiovascular events in a moderate-sized clinical trial but one not powered as a cardiovascular outcomes trial], and dulaglutide). Meta-analyses of the trials reported to date suggest that GLP-1 receptor agonists and SGLT2 inhibitors reduce risk of atherosclerotic major adverse cardiovascular events to a comparable degree in patients with type 2 diabetes and established ASCVD (201,202). SGLT2 inhibitors also reduce risk of heart failure hospitalization and progression of kidney disease in patients with established ASCVD, multiple risk factors for ASCVD, or albuminuric kidney disease (203,204). In patients with type 2 diabetes and established ASCVD, multiple ASCVD risk factors, or diabetic kidney disease, an SGLT2 inhibitor with demonstrated cardiovascular benefit is recommended to reduce the risk of major adverse cardiovascular events and/or heart failure hospitalization. In patients with type 2 diabetes and established ASCVD or multiple risk factors for ASCVD, a glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonist with demonstrated cardiovascular benefit is recommended to reduce the risk of major adverse cardiovascular events. For many patients, use of either an SGLT2 inhibitor or a GLP-1 receptor agonist to reduce cardiovascular risk is appropriate. Emerging data suggest that use of both classes of drugs will provide an additive cardiovascular and kidney outcomes benefit; thus, combination therapy with an SGLT2 inhibitor and a GLP-1 receptor agonist may be considered to provide the complementary outcomes benefits associated with these classes of medication. Evidence to support such an approach includes findings from AMPLITUDE-O (Effect of Efpeglenatide on Cardiovascular Outcomes), the recently completed outcomes trial of patients with type 2 diabetes and either cardiovascular or kidney disease plus at least one other risk factor randomized to the investigational GLP-1 receptor agonist efpeglenatide or placebo (205). Randomization was stratified by current or potential use of SGLT2 inhibitor therapy, a class ultimately used by >15% of the trial participants. Over a median follow-up of 1.8 years, efpeglenatide therapy reduced the risk of incident major adverse cardiovascular events by 27% and of a composite renal outcome event by 32%. Importantly, the effects of efpeglenatide did not vary by use of SGLT2 inhibitors, suggesting that the beneficial effects of the GLP-1 receptor agonist were independent of those provided by SGLT2 inhibitor therapy.

Glucose-Lowering Therapies and Heart Failure
As many as 50% of patients with type 2 diabetes may develop heart failure (206). These conditions, which are each associated with increased morbidity and mortality, commonly coincide and independently contribute to adverse outcomes (207). Strategies to mitigate these risks are needed, and the heart failure–related risks and benefits of glucose-lowering medications should be considered carefully when determining a regimen of care for patients with diabetes and either established heart failure or high risk for the development of heart failure.

Data on the effects of glucose-lowering agents on heart failure outcomes have demonstrated that thiazolidinediones have a strong and consistent relationship with increased risk of heart failure (208–210). Therefore, thiazolidinedione use should be avoided in patients with symptomatic heart failure. Restrictions to use of metformin in patients with medically treated heart failure were removed by the FDA in 2006 (211). Observational studies of patients with type 2 diabetes and heart failure suggest that metformin users have better outcomes than patients treated with other antihyperglycemic agents (212); however, no randomized trial of metformin therapy has been conducted in patients with heart failure. Metformin may be used for the management of hyperglycemia in patients with stable heart failure as long as kidney function remains within the recommended range for use (213).

Recent studies examining the relationship between DPP-4 inhibitors and heart failure have had mixed results.
The Saxagliptin Assessment of Vascular Outcomes Recorded in Patients with Diabetes Mellitus — Thrombolysis in Myocardial Infarction 53 (SAVOR-TIMI 53) study showed that patients treated with the DPP-4 inhibitor saxagliptin were more likely to be hospitalized for heart failure than those given placebo (3.5% vs. 2.8%, respectively) (214). However, three other cardiovascular outcomes trials—Examination of Cardiovascular Outcomes with Alogliptin versus Standard of Care (EXAMINE) (215), Trial Evaluating Cardiovascular Outcomes with Sitagliptin (TECOS) (216), and the Cardiovascular and Renal Microvascular Outcome Study With Linagliptin (CARMELINA) (186)—did not find a significant increase in risk of heart failure hospitalization with DPP-4 inhibitor use compared with placebo. No increased risk of heart failure hospitalization has been identified in the cardiovascular outcomes trials of the GLP-1 receptor agonists lixisenatide, liraglutide, semaglutide, exenatide once-weekly, albiglutide, or dulaglutide compared with placebo (Table 10.3B) (194,195,198–200).

Reduced incidence of heart failure has been observed with the use of SGLT2 inhibitors (187,189). In EMPA-REG OUTCOME, the addition of empagliflozin to standard care led to a significant 35% reduction in hospitalization for heart failure compared with placebo (8). Although the majority of patients in the study did not have heart failure at baseline, this benefit was consistent in patients with and without a history of heart failure (10). Similarly, in CANVAS and DECLARE-TIMI 58, there were 33% and 27% reductions in hospitalization for heart failure, respectively, with SGLT2 inhibitor use versus placebo (9,189). Additional data from the CREDEENCE trial with canagliflozin showed a 39% reduction in hospitalization for heart failure, and 31% reduction in the composite of cardiovascular death or hospitalization for heart failure, in a diabetic kidney disease population with albuminuria (UACR of >300 to 5,000 mg/g) (187). These combined findings from four large outcomes trials of three different SGLT2 inhibitors are highly consistent and clearly indicate robust benefits of SGLT2 inhibitors in the prevention of heart failure hospitalizations. The EMPA-REG OUTCOME, CANVAS, DECLARE-TIMI 58, and CREDEENCE trials suggested, but did not prove, that SGLT2 inhibitors would be beneficial in the treatment of patients with established heart failure. More recently, the placebo-controlled DAPA-HF trial evaluated the effects of dapagliflozin on the primary outcome of a composite of worsening heart failure or cardiovascular death in patients with New York Heart Association (NYHA) class II, III, or IV heart failure and an ejection fraction of 40% or less. Of the 4,744 trial participants, 45% had a history of type 2 diabetes. Over a median of 18.2 months, the group assigned to dapagliflozin treatment had a lower risk of the primary outcome (HR 0.74 [95% CI 0.65–0.85]), lower risk of first worsening heart failure event (HR 0.70 [95% CI 0.59–0.83]), and lower risk of cardiovascular death (HR 0.82 [95% CI 0.69–0.98]) compared with placebo. The effect of dapagliflozin on the primary outcome was consistent regardless of the presence or absence of type 2 diabetes (191). Ongoing trials are assessing the effects of several SGLT2 inhibitors in heart failure patients with both reduced and preserved ejection fraction.

EMPEROR-Reduced assessed the effects of empagliflozin 10 mg once daily versus placebo on a primary composite outcome of cardiovascular death or hospitalization for worsening heart failure in a population of 3,730 patients with NYHA class II, III, or IV heart failure and an ejection fraction of 40% or less (217). At baseline, 49.8% of participants had a history of diabetes. Over a median follow-up of 16 months, those in the empagliflozin-treated group had a reduced risk of the primary outcome (HR 0.75 [95% CI 0.65–0.86]; P < 0.001) and fewer total hospitalizations for heart failure (HR 0.70 [95% CI 0.58–0.85]; P < 0.001). The effect of empagliflozin on the primary outcome was consistent irrespective of diabetes diagnosis at baseline. The risk of a prespecified renal composite outcome (chronic dialysis, renal transplantation, or a sustained reduction in eGFR) was lower in the empagliflozin group than in the placebo group (1.6% in the empagliflozin group vs. 3.1% in the placebo group; HR 0.50 [95% CI 0.32–0.77]).

Therefore, in patients with type 2 diabetes and established HFpEF, an SGLT2 inhibitor with proven benefit in this patient population is recommended to reduce the risk of worsening heart failure and cardiovascular death. The benefits seen in this patient population likely represent a class effect, and they appear unrelated to glucose lowering given comparable outcomes in HFpEF patients with and without diabetes. Additional data are accumulating regarding the effects of SGLT inhibition in patients hospitalized for acute decompensated heart failure and in heart failure patients with HFpEF. As an example, the investigational SGLT1 and SGLT2 inhibitor sotagliflozin has also been studied in the Effect of Sotagliflozin on Cardiovascular Events in Patients With Type 2 Diabetes Post Worsening Heart Failure (SOLOIST-WHF) trial (218). In SOLOIST-WHF, 1,222 patients with type 2 diabetes who were recently hospitalized for worsening heart failure were randomized to sotagliflozin 200 mg once daily (with titration) versus placebo or placebo (850 mg once daily if tolerated) or placebo either before or within 3 days after hospital discharge. Patients were eligible if hospitalized for signs and symptoms of heart failure (including elevated natriuretic peptide levels) requiring treatment with intravenous diuretic therapy. Exclusion criteria included end-stage heart failure or recent acute coronary syndrome or intervention, or an eGFR <30 mL/min/1.73 m². Patients were required to be clinically stable prior to randomization, defined as no use of supplemental oxygen, a systolic blood pressure ≥100 mmHg, and no need for intravenous inotropic or vasodilator therapy other than nitrates. Similar to SCORED, SOLOIST-WHF ended early due to a lack of funding, resulting in a change to the prespecified primary end point prior to unblinding to accommodate a lower than anticipated number of end point events. At a median follow-up of 9 months, the rate of primary end point events (the total number of cardiovascular deaths and hospitalizations and urgent visits for heart failure) was lower in the sotagliflozin group than in the placebo group (51.0 vs. 76.3; HR 0.67 [95% CI 0.52–0.85]; P < 0.001). No significant between-group differences were found in the rates of cardiovascular death or all-cause mortality. Both diarrhea (6.1% vs. 3.4%) and severe hypoglycemia (1.5% vs. 0.3%) were more common with sotagliflozin than with placebo. The trial was originally also intended to evaluate the effects of SGLT inhibition in patients with HFpEF, and ultimately no evidence of heterogeneity of
treatment effect by ejection fraction was noted. However, the relatively small percentage of such patients enrolled (only 21% of participants had ejection fraction >50%) and the early termination of the trial limited the ability to determine the effects of sotagliflozin in HFpEF specifically. Additional data regarding the impact of SGLT2 inhibitor therapy in patients with HFpEF will soon be available from EMPEROR-Preserved, the empagliflozin outcome trial of nearly 6,000 patients with symptomatic heart failure with preserved ejection fraction (left ventricular ejection fraction >40%) (219), with or without type 2 diabetes.

Clinical Approach

As has been carefully outlined in Fig. 9.3 in the preceding Section 9, “Pharmacologic Approaches to Glycemic Treatment” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S009), patients with type 2 diabetes with or at high risk for ASCVD, heart failure, or CKD should be treated with a cardioprotective SGLT2 inhibitor and/or GLP-1 receptor agonist as part of the comprehensive approach to cardiovascular and kidney risk reduction. Importantly, these agents should be included in the regimen of care irrespective of the need for additional glucose lowering, and irrespective of metformin use. Such an approach has also been described in the ADA-endorsed American College of Cardiology “2020 Expert Consensus Decision Pathway on Novel Therapies for Cardiovascular Risk Reduction in Patients With Type 2 Diabetes” (220). Figure 10.3, reproduced from that decision pathway, outlines the approach to risk reduction with SGLT2 inhibitor or GLP-1 receptor agonist therapy in conjunction with other traditional, guideline-based preventive medical therapies for blood pressure, lipids, and glycemia and antiplatelet therapy.

Adoption of these agents should be reasonably straightforward in patients with established cardiovascular or kidney disease who are late diagnosed with diabetes, as the cardioprotective agents can be used from the outset of diabetes management. On the other hand, incorporation of SGLT2 inhibitor or GLP-1 receptor agonist therapy in the care of patients with more long-standing diabetes may be more challenging, particularly if patients are using an already complex glucose-lowering regimen. In such patients, SGLT2 inhibitor or GLP-1 receptor agonist therapy may need to replace some or all of their existing medications to minimize risks of hypoglycemia and adverse side effects, and potentially to minimize medication...
costs. Close collaboration between primary and specialty care providers can help to facilitate these transitions in clinical care and, in turn, improve outcomes for high-risk patients with type 2 diabetes.

References
35. Lamprea-Montealegre JA, de Boer IH. Reevaluating the evidence for blood pressure targets in type 2 diabetes. Diabetes Care 2018;41:1142–1148
80. Williams B, MacDonald TM, Morant S, et al.; British Hypertension Society’s PATHWAY Studies Group. Spironolactone versus placebo, bisoprolol,


158. Rothwell PM, Cook NR, Gaziano JM, et al. Effects of aspirin on risks of vascular events and cancer according to bodyweight and dose:
measurements of individual patient data from randomized trials. Lancet 2018;392:387–399
11. Chronic Kidney Disease and Risk Management: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2022

Diabetes Care 2022;45(Suppl. 1):S175–S184 | https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S011

The American Diabetes Association (ADA) “Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes” includes the ADA’s current clinical practice recommendations and is intended to provide the components of diabetes care, general treatment goals and guidelines, and tools to evaluate quality of care. Members of the ADA Professional Practice Committee, a multidisciplinary expert committee (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SPPC), are responsible for updating the Standards of Care annually, or more frequently as warranted. For a detailed description of ADA standards, statements, and reports, as well as the evidence-grading system for ADA’s clinical practice recommendations, please refer to the Standards of Care Introduction (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SINT). Readers who wish to comment on the Standards of Care are invited to do so at professional.diabetes.org/SOC.

For prevention and management of diabetes complications in children and adolescents, please refer to Section 14, “Children and Adolescents” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S014).

CHRONIC KIDNEY DISEASE

Screening

**Recommendations**

11.1a At least annually, urinary albumin (e.g., spot urinary albumin-to-creatinine ratio) and estimated glomerular filtration rate should be assessed in patients with type 1 diabetes with duration of ≥5 years and in all patients with type 2 diabetes regardless of treatment. B

11.1b Patients with diabetes and urinary albumin ≥300 mg/g creatinine and/or an estimated glomerular filtration rate 30–60 mL/min/1.73 m² should be monitored twice annually to guide therapy. B

Treatment

**Recommendations**

11.2 Optimize glucose control to reduce the risk or slow the progression of chronic kidney disease. A

11.3a For patients with type 2 diabetes and diabetic kidney disease, use of a sodium–glucose cotransporter 2 inhibitor in patients with an estimated glomerular filtration rate ≥25 mL/min/1.73 m² and urinary albumin ≥300 mg/g creatinine is recommended to reduce chronic kidney disease progression and cardiovascular events. A

11.3b In patients with type 2 diabetes and chronic kidney disease, consider use of sodium–glucose cotransporter 2 inhibitors additionally for cardiovascular risk reduction when estimated glomerular filtration rate and urinary
In patients with chronic kidney disease who are at increased risk for cardiovascular events or chronic kidney disease progression and are unable to use a sodium–glucose cotransporter 2 inhibitor, a nonsteroidal mineralocorticoid receptor antagonist (finerenone) is recommended to reduce chronic kidney disease progression and cardiovascular events (Table 9.2). A

Optimization of blood pressure control and reduction in blood pressure variability to reduce the risk or slow the progression of chronic kidney disease is recommended. A

Do not discontinue renin-angiotensin system blockade for minor increases in serum creatinine (≥30%) in the absence of volume depletion. A

For people with nondialysis-dependent stage 3 or higher chronic kidney disease, dietary protein intake should be a maximum of 0.8 g/kg body weight per day (the recommended daily allowance). A For patients on dialysis, higher levels of dietary protein intake should be considered, since malnutrition is a major problem in some dialysis patients. B

In nonpregnant patients with diabetes and hypertension, either an ACE inhibitor or an angiotensin receptor blocker is recommended for those with modestly elevated urinary albumin-to-creatinine ratio (30–299 mg/g creatinine) B and is strongly recommended for those with urinary albumin-to-creatinine ratio ≥300 mg/g creatinine and/or estimated glomerular filtration rate <60 mL/min/1.73 m². A

Periodically monitor serum creatinine and potassium levels for the development of increased creatinine or changes in potassium when ACE inhibitors, angiotensin receptor blockers, or diuretics are used. B

An ACE inhibitor or an angiotensin receptor blocker is not recommended for the primary prevention of chronic kidney disease in patients with diabetes who have normal blood pressure, normal urinary albumin-to-creatinine ratio (<30 mg/g creatinine), and normal estimated glomerular filtration rate. A

Patients should be referred for evaluation by a nephrologist if they have an estimated glomerular filtration rate <30 mL/min/1.73 m². A

Promptly refer to a nephrologist for uncertainty about the etiology of kidney disease, difficult management issues, and rapidly progressing kidney disease. A

Chronic kidney disease (CKD) is diagnosed by the persistent elevation of urinary albumin excretion (albuminuria), low estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR), or other manifestations of kidney damage (1,2). In this section, the focus is on CKD attributed to diabetes (diabetic kidney disease), which occurs in 20–40% of patients with diabetes (1,3–5). Diabetic kidney disease typically develops after diabetes duration of 10 years in type 1 diabetes but may be present at diagnosis of type 2 diabetes. CKD can progress to end-stage renal disease (ESRD) requiring dialysis or kidney transplantation and is the leading cause of ESRD in the U.S. (6). In addition, among people with type 1 or type 2 diabetes, the presence of CKD markedly increases cardiovascular risk and health care costs (7).

Screening for albuminuria can be most easily performed by urinary albumin-to-creatinine ratio (UACR) in a random spot urine collection (1,2). Timed or 24-h collections are more burdensome and add little to prediction or accuracy. Measurement of a spot urine sample for albumin alone (whether by immunoassay or by using a sensitive dipstick test specific for albuminuria) without simultaneously measuring urine creatinine (Cr) is less expensive but susceptible to false-negative and false-positive determinations as a result of variation in urine concentration due to hydration (8). Thus, to be useful for patient screening, semiquantitative or qualitative (dipstick) screening tests should be >85% positive in those with moderately increased albuminuria (≥30 mg/g) and be confirmed by albumin-to-creatinine values in an accredited laboratory (9,10). Hence, it is better to simply collect a spot urine sample for albumin-to-creatinine ratio because it will ultimately need to be done. Normal UACR is defined as <30 mg/g Cr, and high urinary albumin excretion is defined as ≥30 mg/g Cr. However, UACR is a continuous measurement, and differences within the normal and abnormal ranges are associated with renal and cardiovascular outcomes (7,11,12). Furthermore, because of high biological variability of >20% between measurements in urinary albumin excretion, two of three specimens of UACR collected within a 3- to 6-month period should be abnormal before considering a patient to have high or very high albuminuria (1,2,13,14). Exercise within 24 h, infection, fever, congestive heart failure, marked hyperglycemia, menstruation, and marked hypertension may elevate UACR independently of kidney damage (15).

eGFR should be calculated from serum creatinine using a validated formula. The Chronic Kidney Disease Epidemiology Collaboration (CKD-EPI) equation is generally preferred (2). eGFR is routinely reported by laboratories with serum creatinine, and eGFR calculators are available online at nkdep.nih.gov. An eGFR persistently <60 mL/min/1.73 m² is considered abnormal, though optimal thresholds for clinical diagnosis are debated in older...
There were inequities noted in the current GFR estimating equation, and after much deliberation a special panel was convened to put forth a new, more equitable equation involving cystatin C; results are forthcoming.

**DIAGNOSIS OF DIABETIC KIDNEY DISEASE**

Diabetic kidney disease is usually a clinical diagnosis made based on the presence of albuminuria and/or reduced eGFR in the absence of signs or symptoms of other primary causes of kidney damage. The typical presentation of diabetic kidney disease is considered to include a long-standing duration of diabetes, retinopathy, albuminuria without gross hematuria, and gradually progressive loss of eGFR. However, signs of diabetic kidney disease may be present at diagnosis or without retinopathy in type 2 diabetes, and reduced eGFR without albuminuria has been frequently reported in type 1 and type 2 diabetes and is becoming more common over time as the prevalence of diabetes increases in the U.S. (3,4,17,18).

An active urinary sediment (containing red or white blood cells or cellular casts), rapidly increasing albuminuria or nephrotic syndrome, rapidly decreasing eGFR, or the absence of retinopathy (in type 1 diabetes) suggests alternative or additional causes of kidney disease. For patients with these features, referral to a nephrologist for further diagnosis, including the possibility of kidney biopsy, should be considered. It is rare for patients with type 1 diabetes to develop kidney disease without retinopathy. In type 2 diabetes, retinopathy is only moderately sensitive and specific for CKD caused by diabetes, as confirmed by kidney biopsy (19).

**STAGING OF CHRONIC KIDNEY DISEASE**

Stages 1–2 CKD have been defined by evidence of high albuminuria with eGFR $\geq 60 \text{ mL/min/1.73 m}^2$, while stages 3–5 CKD have been defined by progressively lower ranges of eGFR (20) (Fig. 11.1). At any eGFR, the degree of albuminuria is associated with risk of cardiovascular disease (CVD), CKD progression, and mortality (7). Therefore, Kidney Disease: Improving Global Outcomes (KDIGO) recommends a more comprehensive CKD staging that incorporates albuminuria at all stages of eGFR; this system is more closely associated with risk but is also more complex and does not translate directly to treatment decisions (2). Thus, based on the current classification system, both eGFR and albuminuria must be quantified to guide treatment decisions. This is

---

**Table:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CKD is classified based on:</th>
<th>Albuminuria categories Description and range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cause (C)</strong></td>
<td><strong>A1</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>GFR (G)</strong></td>
<td>Normal to mildly increased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Albuminuria (A)</strong></td>
<td>(&lt;30 \text{ mg/g})</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 11.1—Risk of chronic kidney disease (CKD) progression, frequency of visits, and referral to a nephrologist according to glomerular filtration rate (GFR) and albuminuria are depicted. The GFR and albuminuria grid depicts the risk of progression, morbidity, and mortality by color, from best to worst (green, yellow, orange, red, dark red). The numbers in the boxes are a guide to the frequency of visits (number of times per year). Green can reflect CKD with normal eGFR and albumin-to-creatinine ratio only in the presence of other markers of kidney damage, such as imaging showing polycystic kidney disease or kidney biopsy abnormalities, with follow-up measurements annually; yellow requires caution and measurements at least once per year; orange requires measurements twice per year; red requires measurements three times per year; and dark red requires measurements four times per year. These are general parameters only, based on expert opinion, and underlying comorbid conditions and disease state as well as the likelihood of impacting a change in management for any individual patient must be taken into account. "Refer" indicates that nephrology services are recommended. *Referring clinicians may wish to discuss with their nephrology service, depending on local arrangements regarding treating or referring. Reprinted with permission from Vassalotti et al. (115).
also important since eGFR levels are essential to modify drug dosage or restrictions of use (Fig 11.1) (21,22). The degree of albuminuria should influence choice of antihypertensive (see Section 10, “Cardiovascular Disease and Risk Management,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S010) or glucose-lowering medications (see below). Observed history of eGFR loss (which is also associated with risk of CKD progression and other adverse health outcomes) and cause of kidney damage (including possible causes other than diabetes) may also affect these decisions (23).

**ACUTE KIDNEY INJURY**

Acute kidney injury (AKI) is diagnosed by a 50% or greater sustained increase in serum creatinine over a short period of time, which is also reflected as a rapid decrease in eGFR (24,25). People with diabetes are at higher risk of AKI than those without diabetes (26). Other risk factors for AKI include preexisting CKD, the use of medications that cause kidney injury (e.g., nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs), and the use of medications that alter renal blood flow and intrarenal hemodynamics. In particular, many antihypertensive medications (e.g., diuretics, ACE inhibitors, and angiotensin receptor blockers [ARBs]) can reduce intravascular volume, renal blood flow, and/or glomerular filtration. There was concern that sodium–glucose cotransporter 2 (SGLT2) inhibitors may promote AKI through volume depletion, particularly when combined with diuretics or other medications that reduce glomerular filtration; however, this has not been found to be true in randomized clinical outcome trials of advanced kidney disease (27) or high cardiovascular disease risk with normal kidney function (28–30). It is also noteworthy that the nonsteroidal mineralocorticoid receptor antagonists (MRAs) fail to increase the risk of AKI when used to slow kidney disease progression (31). Timely identification and treatment of AKI is important because AKI is associated with increased risks of progressive CKD and other poor health outcomes (32).

Small elevations in serum creatinine (up to 30% from baseline) with renin-angiotensin system (RAS) blockers (such as ACE inhibitors and ARBs) must not be confused with AKI (33). An analysis of the Action to Control Cardiovascular Risk in Diabetes Blood Pressure (ACCORD BP) trial demonstrates that those randomized to intensive blood pressure lowering with up to a 30% increase in serum creatinine did not have any increase in mortality or progressive kidney disease (34–37). Moreover, a measure of markers for AKI showed no significant increase of any markers with increased creatinine (36). Accordingly, ACE inhibitors and ARBs should not be discontinued for minor increases in serum creatinine (<30%), in the absence of volume depletion.

Lastly, it should be noted that ACE inhibitors and ARBs are commonly not dosed at maximally tolerated doses because of fear that serum creatinine will rise. As noted above, this is an error. Note that in all clinical trials demonstrating efficacy of ACE inhibitors and ARBs in slowing kidney disease progression, the maximally tolerated doses were used—not very low doses that do not provide benefit. Moreover, there are now studies demonstrating outcome benefits on both mortality and slowed CKD progression in people with diabetes who have an eGFR <30 mL/min/1.73 m² (37). Additionally, when increases in serum creatinine are up to 30% and do not have associated hyperkalemia, RAS blockade should be continued (35,38).

**SURVEILLANCE**

Both albuminuria and eGFR should be monitored annually to enable timely diagnosis of CKD, monitor progression of CKD, detect superimposed kidney diseases including AKI, assess risk of CKD complications, dose drugs appropriately, and determine whether nephrology referral is needed. Among people with existing kidney disease, albuminuria and eGFR may change due to progression of CKD, development of a separate superimposed cause of kidney disease, AKI, or other effects of medications, as noted above. Serum potassium should also be monitored in patients treated with diuretics because these medications can cause hypokalemia, which is associated with cardiovascular risk and mortality (39–41). For patients with eGFR <60 mL/min/1.73 m², those receiving ACE inhibitors, ARBs, or MRAs should have serum potassium measured periodically. Additionally, people with this lower range of eGFR should have appropriate medication dosing verified, exposure to nephrotoxins (e.g., nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and iodinated contrast) should be minimized, and potential CKD complications should be evaluated (Table 11.1).

There is a clear need for annual quantitative assessment of albumin excretion. This is especially true after diagnosis of albuminuria, institution of ACE inhibitors or ARB therapy to maximum tolerated doses, and achievement of blood pressure control. Early changes in kidney function may be detected by increases in albuminuria before changes in eGFR (42) and this also significantly affects cardiovascular risk. Moreover, an initial reduction of >30% below where it was initially measured, subsequently maintained over at least 2 years, is considered a valid surrogate for renal benefit by the Division of Cardiology and Nephrology of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) (10). Continued surveillance can assess both response to therapy and disease progression and may aid in assessing adherence to ACE inhibitor or ARB therapy. In addition, in clinical trials of ACE inhibitors or ARB therapy in type 2 diabetes, reducing albuminuria to levels <300 mg/g Cr or by >30% from their baseline has been associated with improved renal and cardiovascular outcomes, leading some to suggest that medications should be titrated to maximize reduction in UACR. Data from post hoc analyses demonstrate less benefit on cardio-renal outcomes at half doses of RAS blockade (43). In type 1 diabetes, remission of albuminuria may occur spontaneously, and cohort studies evaluating associations of change in albuminuria with clinical outcomes have reported inconsistent results (44,45).

The prevalence of CKD complications correlates with eGFR (41). When eGFR is <60 mL/min/1.73 m², screening for complications of CKD is indicated (Table 11.1). Early vaccination against hepatitis B virus is indicated in patients likely to progress to ESRD (see Section 4, “Comprehensive Medical Evaluation
Table 11.1—Selected complications of chronic kidney disease

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complication</th>
<th>Medical and laboratory evaluation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Elevated blood pressure &gt;140/90 mmHg</td>
<td>Blood pressure, weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume overload</td>
<td>History, physical examination, weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrolyte abnormalities</td>
<td>Serum electrolyte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metabolic acidosis</td>
<td>Serum electrolytes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anemia</td>
<td>Hemoglobin; iron testing if indicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metabolic bone disease</td>
<td>Serum calcium, phosphate, PTH, vitamin 25(OH)D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Complications of chronic kidney disease (CKD) generally become prevalent when estimated glomerular filtration rate falls below 60 ml/min/1.73 m² (stage 3 CKD or greater) and become more common and severe as CKD progresses. Evaluation of elevated blood pressure and volume overload should occur at every clinical contact possible; laboratory evaluations are generally indicated every 6–12 months for stage 3 CKD, every 3–5 months for stage 4 CKD, and every 1–3 months for stage 5 CKD, or as indicated to evaluate symptoms or changes in therapy. PTH, parathyroid hormone; 25(OH)D, 25-hydroxyvitamin D.

Recommendations for dietary sodium and potassium intake should be individualized on the basis of comorbid conditions, medication use, blood pressure, and laboratory data.

Glycemic Targets

Intensive glycemic control with the goal of achieving near-normoglycemia has been shown in large prospective randomized studies to delay the onset and progression of albuminuria and reduced eGFR in patients with type 1 diabetes (50,51) and type 2 diabetes (1,52–57). Insulin alone was used to lower blood glucose in the Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT)/Epidemiology of Diabetes Interventions and Complications (EDIC) study of type 1 diabetes, while a variety of agents were used in clinical trials of type 2 diabetes, supporting the conclusion that glycemic control itself helps prevent CKD and its progression. The effects of glucose-lowering therapies on CKD have helped define A1C targets (see Table 6.2).

The presence of CKD affects the risks and benefits of intensive glycemic control and a number of specific glucose-lowering medications. In the Action to Control Cardiovascular Risk in Diabetes (ACCORD) trial of type 2 diabetes, adverse effects of intensive glycemic control (hypoglycemia and mortality) were increased among patients with kidney disease at baseline (58,59). Moreover, there is a lag time of at least 2 years in type 2 diabetes to over 10 years in type 1 diabetes for the effects of intensive glucose control to manifest as improved eGFR outcomes (55,60,61).

Therefore, in some patients with prevalent CKD and substantial comorbidity, target A1C levels may be less intensive (1,62).

Direct Renal Effects of Glucose-Lowering Medications

Some glucose-lowering medications also have effects on the kidney that are direct, i.e., not mediated through glycemia. For example, SGLT2 inhibitors reduce renal tubular glucose reabsorption, weight, systemic blood pressure, intraglomerular pressure, and albuminuria and slow GFR loss through mechanisms that appear independent of glycemia (29,63–66). Moreover, recent data support the notion that SGLT2 inhibitors reduce oxidative stress in the kidney by >50% and blunt increases in angiotensinogen as well as reduce NLRP3 inflammasome activity (67–69). Glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonists (GLP-1 RAs) also have direct effects on the kidney and have been reported to improve renal outcomes compared with placebo (70–73). Renal effects should be considered when selecting antihyperglycemia agents (see Section 9, "Pharmacologic Approaches to Glycemic Treatment,” https://doi.org/10.2337/ dc22-S009).

Selection of Glucose-Lowering Medications for Patients With Chronic Kidney Disease

For patients with type 2 diabetes and established CKD, special considerations for the selection of glucose-lowering medications include limitations to available medications when eGFR is diminished and a desire to mitigate high risks of CKD progression, CVD, and hypoglycemia (74,75). Drug dosing may require modification with eGFR <60 ml/min/1.73 m² (1).

The FDA revised its guidance for the use of metformin in CKD in 2016 (76), recommending use of eGFR instead of serum creatinine to guide treatment and expanding the pool of patients with kidney disease for whom metformin treatment should be considered. The revised FDA guidance states that metformin is contraindicated in patients with an eGFR <30 ml/min/1.73 m²; eGFR should be monitored while taking metformin; the benefits and risks of continuing treatment should be reassessed when eGFR falls to <45 ml/min/1.73 m² (77,78); metformin should not.
be initiated for patients with an eGFR <45 mL/min/1.73 m²; and metformin should be temporarily discontinued at the time of or before iodinated contrast imaging procedures in patients with eGFR 30–60 mL/min/1.73 m². Within these constraints, metformin may be considered as initial treatment of glycemic control for all patients with type 2 diabetes, including those with early CKD.

SGLT2 inhibitors should be given to all patients with stage 3 CKD or higher and type 2 diabetes regardless of glycemic control, as they slow CKD progression and reduce heart failure risk independent of glycemic control (79). GLP-1 RAs are suggested for cardiovascular risk reduction if such risk is a predominant problem, as they reduce risks of CVD events and hypoglycemia and appear to possibly slow CKD progression (80–82).

A large number of cardiovascular outcomes trials in patients with type 2 diabetes at high risk for CVD or with existing CVD examined kidney effects as secondary outcomes. These trials include EMPA-REG OUTCOME ( BI 10773 (Empagliflozin) Cardiovascular Outcome Event Trial in Type 2 Diabetes Mellitus Patients), CANVAS (Canagliflozin Cardiovascular Assessment Study), LEADER (Liraglutide Effect and Action in Diabetes: Evaluation of Cardiovascular Outcome Results), and SUSTAIN-6 (Trial to Evaluate Cardiovascular and Other Long-term Outcomes With SGLT2 Inhibitors in Subjects With Type 2 Diabetes) (65,70,73,83). Specifically, compared with placebo, empagliflozin reduced the risk of incident or worsening nephropathy (a composite of progression to UACR ≥300 mg/g Cr, doubling of serum creatinine, ESRD, or death from ESRD) by 39% and the risk of doubling of serum creatinine accompanied by eGFR ≤45 mL/min/1.73 m² by 44%; canagliflozin reduced the risk of progression of albuminuria by 27% and the risk of reduction in eGFR, ESRD, or death from ESRD by 40%; liraglutide reduced the risk of new or worsening nephropathy (a composite of persistent macroalbuminuria, doubling of serum creatinine, ESRD, or death from ESRD) by 22%; and semaglutide reduced the risk of new or worsening nephropathy (a composite of persistent UACR >300 mg/g Cr, doubling of serum creatinine, or ESRD) by 36% (each P < 0.01).

These analyses were limited by evaluation of study populations not selected primarily for CKD and examination of renal effects as secondary outcomes. However, all of these trials included large numbers of people with stage 3a (eGFR 45–59 mL/min/1.73 m²) kidney disease. In addition, subgroup analyses of CANVAS and LEADER suggested that the renal benefits of canagliflozin and liraglutide were as great or greater for participants with CKD at baseline (30,72) and in CANVAS were similar for participants with or without atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease (ASCVD) at baseline (84).

Some large clinical trials of SGLT2 inhibitors focused on patients with advanced CKD, and assessment of primary renal outcomes are completed or ongoing. Canagliflozin and Renal Events in Diabetes with Established Nephropathy Clinical Evaluation (CREDENCE), a placebo-controlled trial of canagliflozin among 4,401 adults with type 2 diabetes, UACR ≥300 mg/g Cr, and mean eGFR 56 mL/min/1.73 m² with a mean albuminuria level of over 900 mg/day, had a primary composite end point of ESRD, doubling of serum creatinine, or renal or cardiovascular death (27,85). It was stopped early due to positive efficacy and showed a 32% risk reduction for development of ESRD over control (27). Additionally, the development of the primary end point, which included chronic dialysis for ≥30 days, kidney transplantation or eGFR <15 mL/min/1.73 m² sustained for ≥30 days by central laboratory assessment, doubling from the baseline serum creatinine average sustained for ≥30 days by central laboratory assessment, or renal death or cardiovascular death, was reduced by 30%. This benefit was on background ACE inhibitor or ARB therapy in >99% of the patients (27). Moreover, in this advanced CKD group, there were clear benefits on cardiovascular outcomes demonstrating a 31% reduction in cardiovascular death or heart failure hospitalization and a 20% reduction in cardiovascular death, nonfatal myocardial infarction, or nonfatal stroke (27,86,87).

A second trial in advanced diabetic kidney disease was the Dapagliflozin and Prevention of Adverse Outcomes in Chronic Kidney Disease (DAPA-CKD) study (88). This trial examined a cohort similar to that in CREDENCE; however, the end points were a little different. The primary outcome was time to the first occurrence of any of the components of the composite including ≥50% sustained decline in eGFR or reaching ESRD or cardiovascular death or renal death. Secondary outcome measures included time to the first occurrence of any of the components of the composite kidney outcome (≥50% sustained decline in eGFR or reaching ESRD or renal death), time to the first occurrence of either of the components of the cardiovascular composite (cardiovascular death or hospitalization for heart failure), and, lastly, time to death from any cause. The trial had 4,304 participants with a mean eGFR at baseline of 43.1 ± 12.4 mL/min/1.73 m², the median UACR was 949 mg/g, and 67.5% of participants had type 2 diabetes. There was a significant benefit by dapagliflozin for the primary end point (hazard ratio 0.61 [95% CI 0.51–0.72]; P < 0.001) (88).

The hazard ratio for the kidney composite of a sustained decline in eGFR of ≥50%, ESRD, or death from renal causes was 0.56 (95% CI 0.45–0.68; P < 0.001). The hazard ratio for the composite of death from cardiovascular causes or hospitalization for heart failure was 0.71 (95% CI 0.55–0.92; P = 0.009). Finally, all-cause mortality was decreased in the dapagliflozin group compared with the placebo group (P < 0.004).

In addition to renal effects, while SGLT2 inhibitors demonstrated reduced risk of heart failure hospitalizations, some also demonstrated cardiovascular risk reduction. GLP-1 RAs clearly demonstrated cardiovascular benefits. Namely, in EMPA-REG OUTCOME, CANVAS, DECLARE, LEADER, and SUSTAIN-6, empagliflozin, canagliflozin, dapagliflozin, liraglutide, and semaglutide, respectively, each reduced cardiovascular events, evaluated as primary outcomes, compared with placebo (see Section 10, "Cardiovascular Disease and Risk Management," https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S010, for further discussion). While the glucose-lowering effects of SGLT2 inhibitors are blunted with eGFR <45 mL/min/1.73 m², the renal and cardiovascular benefits were still seen down to eGFR levels of 25 mL/min/1.73 m² with no significant change in glucose (27,29,50,58,62,73,83,88,89). Most participants with CKD in these trials also had diagnosed ASCVD at baseline,
Although ~28% of CANVAS participants with CKD did not have diagnosed ASCVD (30).

Based on evidence from the CREDENCE trial and secondary analyses of cardiovascular outcomes trials with SGLT2 inhibitors, cardiovascular and renal events are reduced with SGLT2 inhibitor use in patients down to an eGFR of 30 mL/min/1.73 m², independent of glucose-lowering effects (86,87).

While there is clear cardiovascular risk reduction associated with GLP-1 RA use in patients with type 2 diabetes and CKD, the proof of benefit on renal outcome will come with the results of the ongoing FLOW (A Research Study to See How Semaglutide Works Compared with Placebo in People With Type 2 Diabetes and Chronic Kidney Disease) trial with injectable semaglutide (90). As noted above, published data address a limited group of CKD patients, mostly with coexisting ASCVD. Renal events have been examined, however, as both primary and secondary outcomes in published large trials. Also, adverse event profiles of these agents must be considered. Please refer to Table 9.2 for drug-specific factors, including adverse event information, for these agents. Additional clinical trials focusing on CKD and cardiovascular outcomes in CKD patients are ongoing and will be reported in the next few years.

For patients with type 2 diabetes and CKD, the selection of specific agents may depend on comorbidity and CKD stage. SGLT2 inhibitors may be more useful for patients at high risk of CKD progression (i.e., with albuminuria or a history of documented eGFR loss) (Fig. 9.3) because they appear to have large beneficial effects on CKD incidence. The SGLT2 inhibitors empagliflozin and dapagliflozin are approved by the FDA for use with eGFR 25–45 mL/min/1.73 m² for kidney/heart failure outcomes. Empagliflozin can be started with eGFR >30 mL/min/1.73 m² (though pivotal trials for each included participants with eGFR ≥30 mL/min/1.73 m² and demonstrated benefit in subgroups with low eGFR) (29,30,91). Canagliflozin is approved to be started down to eGFR levels of 30 mL/min/1.73 m². Some GLP-1 RAs require dose adjustment for reduced eGFR (the majority—liraglutide, dulaglutide, semaglutide—do not require it).

Renal and Cardiovascular Outcomes of Mineralocorticoid Receptor Antagonists in Chronic Kidney Disease

MRAs historically have not been well studied in diabetic kidney disease because of the risk of hyperkalemia (92,93). However, data that do exist suggest benefit on albuminuria reduction that is sustained. There are two different classes of MRAs, steroidal and nonsteroidal, with one group not extrapolatable to the other (94). Late in 2020, the results of the first of two trials, the Finerenone in Reducing Kidney Failure and Disease Progression in Diabetic Kidney Disease (FIDELIO-DKD) trial, which examined the renal effects of finerenone, demonstrated a significant reduction in diabetic kidney disease progression and cardiovascular events in patients with advanced diabetic kidney disease (31,95). This trial had a primary end point of time to first occurrence of the composite end point of onset of kidney failure, a sustained decrease of eGFR >40% from baseline over at least 4 weeks, or renal death. A prespecified secondary outcome was time to first occurrence of the composite end point cardiovascular death or nonfatal cardiovascular events (myocardial infarction, stroke, hospitalization for heart failure). Other secondary outcomes included all-cause mortality, time to all-cause hospitalizations, and time to first occurrence of the following composite end point: onset of kidney failure, a sustained decrease in eGFR of ≥57% from baseline over at least 4 weeks or renal death and change in UACR from baseline to month 4.

The double-blind, placebo-controlled trial randomized 5,734 patients with CKD and type 2 diabetes to receive finerenone, a novel nonsteroidal MRA, or placebo. Eligible patients had a UACR of 30 to <300 mg/g, an eGFR of 25 to <60 mL/min/1.73 m², and diabetic retinopathy, or a UACR of 300–5,000 mg/g and an eGFR of 25 to <75 mL/min/1.73 m². Mean age of the patients was 65.6 years, and 30% were female. The mean eGFR was 44.3 mL/min/1.73 m². Mean albuminuria (interquartile range) was 852 (446–1,634) mg/g. The primary end point was reduced with finerenone compared with placebo (hazard ratio 0.82, 95% CI 0.73–0.93; P = 0.001), as was the key secondary composite of cardiovascular outcome (hazard ratio 0.86, 95% CI 0.75–0.99; P = 0.03). Hyperkalemia resulted in 2.3% discontinuation in the study group compared with 0.9% in the placebo group. However, the study was completed and there were no deaths related to hyperkalemia. Of note, 4.5% of the total group were being treated with SGLT2 inhibitors.

Cardiovascular Disease and Blood Pressure

Hypertension is a strong risk factor for the development and progression of CKD (96). Antihypertensive therapy reduces the risk of albuminuria (97–100), and among patients with type 1 or 2 diabetes with established CKD (eGFR <60 mL/min/1.73 m² and UACR ≥300 mg/g Cr), ACE inhibitor or ARB therapy reduces the risk of progression to ESRD (101–103). Moreover, antihypertensive therapy reduces risks of cardiovascular events (97).

Blood pressure levels <140/90 mmHg are generally recommended to reduce CVD mortality and slow CKD progression among all people with diabetes (100). Lower blood pressure targets (e.g., <130/80 mmHg) should be considered for patients based on individual anticipated benefits and risks. Patients with CKD are at increased risk of CKD progression (particularly those with albuminuria) and CVD and therefore lower blood pressure targets may be suitable in some cases, especially in those with ≥300 mg/g Cr albuminuria.

ACE inhibitors or ARBs are the preferred first-line agent for blood pressure treatment among patients with diabetes, hypertension, eGFR <60 mL/min/1.73 m², and UACR ≥300 mg/g Cr because of their proven benefits for prevention of CKD progression (101–104). In general, ACE inhibitors and ARBs are considered to have similar benefits (105,106) and risks. In the setting of lower levels of albuminuria (30–299 mg/g Cr), ACE inhibitor or ARB therapy at maximally tolerated doses in trials has reduced progression to more advanced albuminuria (≥300 mg/g Cr), slowed CKD progression, and reduced cardiovascular events but has not reduced progression to ESRD (104,107). While ACE inhibitors or ARBs are often prescribed for high albuminuria without hypertension, outcome trials have not been performed in this setting to determine whether they improve renal outcomes. Moreover, two long-term, double-blind studies demonstrated no renoprotective effect of either ACE inhibitors or ARBs in type 1 and type 2
diabetes among those who were normo-
tensive with or without high albuminuria (formerly microalbuminuria) (108,109).

Absent kidney disease, ACE inhibitors or ARBs are useful to control blood pres-
sure but have not proven superior to alterna-
tive classes of antihypertensive therapy, including thiazide-like diuretics and dihydropyridine calcium channel blockers (110). In a trial of people with type 2 diabetes and normal urine albumin excretion, an ARB reduced or sup-
pressed the development of albuminuria but increased the rate of cardiovascular events (111). In a trial of people with type 1 diabetes exhibiting neither albuminuria nor hypertension, ACE inhibitors or ARBs did not prevent the development of diabetic glomerulopathy assessed by kidney biopsy (108). This was further sup-
ported by a similar trial in patients with type 2 diabetes (109). Therefore, ACE inhi-
bitors or ARBs are not recommended for patients without hypertension to pre-
vent the development of CKD.

Two clinical trials studied the combin-
ations of ACE inhibitors and ARBs and found no benefits on CVD or CKD, and the drug combination had higher adverse event rates (hyperkalemia and/ or AKI) (112,113). Therefore, the com-
bined use of ACE inhibitors and ARBs should be avoided.

Referral to a Nephrologist

Consider referral to a nephrologist when there is uncertainty about the etiology of kidney disease, for difficult management issues (anemia, secondary hyperparathy-
roidism, significant increases in albuminur-
ia in spite of good blood pressure control, metabolic bone disease, resistant hypertension, or electrolyte disturb-
ances), or when there is advanced kidney disease (eGFR < 30 mL/min/1.73 m²) requiring discussion of renal replacement therapy for ESRD (2). The threshold for referral may vary depending on the fre-
quency with which a provider encounters patients with diabetes and kidney dis-
ease. Consultation with a nephrologist when stage 4 CKD develops (eGFR < 30 mL/min/1.73 m²) has been found to reduce cost, improve quality of care, and delay dialysis (114). However, other spe-
cialists and providers should also educate their patients about the progressive nature of CKD, the kidney preservation benefits of proactive treatment of blood pressure and blood glucose, and the potential need for renal replacement therapy.

References

analysis. Lancet 2012;380:1662–1673
9. Coresh J, Heerspink HJL, Matsushita K, et al.; Chronic Kidney Disease Epidemiology Collaboration. Change in albuminuria and subsequent risk of end-
stage kidney disease: an individual participant-level consortium meta-analysis of observational studies. Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol 2019;7:115–127
21. Flynn C, Bakris GL. Noninsulin glucose-
30. Neuen BL, Ohkuma T, Neale B, et al. Cardiovascular and renal outcomes with canag-
liflozin according to baseline kidney function: data from the CANVAS Program. Circulation 2018;138:1537–1550

comes in type 2 diabetes mellitus and chronic kidney disease in primary and secondary cardiovascular prevention groups. Circulation 2019;140:739–750
103. Smart NA, Dieberg G, Ladmani M, Titus T. Early referral to specialist nephrology services for preventing the progression to end-stage kidney disease. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2014;6:CD007333
12. Retinopathy, Neuropathy, and Foot Care: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2022

Diabetes Care 2022;45(Suppl. 1):S185–S194 | https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S012

The American Diabetes Association (ADA) “Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes” includes the ADA’s current clinical practice recommendations and is intended to provide the components of diabetes care, general treatment goals and guidelines, and tools to evaluate quality of care. Members of the ADA Professional Practice Committee, a multidisciplinary expert committee (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SPPC), are responsible for updating the Standards of Care annually, or more frequently as warranted. For a detailed description of ADA standards, statements, and reports, as well as the evidence-grading system for ADA’s clinical practice recommendations, please refer to the Standards of Care Introduction (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SINT). Readers who wish to comment on the Standards of Care are invited to do so at professional.diabetes.org/SOC.

For prevention and management of diabetes complications in children and adolescents, please refer to Section 14, “Children and Adolescents” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S014).

DIABETIC RETINOPATHY

Recommendations

12.1 Optimize glycemic control to reduce the risk or slow the progression of diabetic retinopathy. A

12.2 Optimize blood pressure and serum lipid control to reduce the risk or slow the progression of diabetic retinopathy. A

Diabetic retinopathy is a highly specific vascular complication of both type 1 and type 2 diabetes, with prevalence strongly related to both the duration of diabetes and the level of glycemic control (1). Diabetic retinopathy is the most frequent cause of new cases of blindness among adults aged 20–74 years in developed countries. Glaucoma, cataracts, and other disorders of the eye occur earlier and more frequently in people with diabetes.

In addition to diabetes duration, factors that increase the risk of, or are associated with, retinopathy include chronic hyperglycemia (2,3), nephropathy (4), hypertension (5), and dyslipidemia (6). Intensive diabetes management with the goal of achieving near-normoglycemia has been shown in large prospective randomized studies to prevent and/or delay the onset and progression of diabetic retinopathy, reduce the need for future ocular surgical procedures, and potentially improve patient reported visual function (2,7–10). A meta-analysis of data from cardiovascular outcomes studies showed no association between glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor...
agonist (GLP-1 RA) treatment and retinopathy per se, except through the association between retinopathy and average A1C reduction at the 3-month and 1-year follow-up. Long-term impact of improved glycemic control on retinopathy was not studied in these trials. Retinopathy status should be assessed when intensifying glucose-lowering therapies such as those using GLP-1 RAs (11).

Several case series and a controlled prospective study suggest that pregnancy in patients with type 1 diabetes may aggravate retinopathy and threaten vision, especially when glycemic control is poor or retinopathy severity is advanced at the time of conception (12,13). Laser photocoagulation surgery can minimize the risk of vision loss during pregnancy for patients with high-risk proliferative diabetic retinopathy (PDR) or center-involved diabetic macular edema (13). Anti-vascular endothelial growth factor (anti-VEGF) medications should not be used in pregnant patients with diabetes because of theoretical risks to the vasculature of the developing fetus.

The preventive effects of therapy and the fact that patients with PDR or macular edema may be asymptomatic provide strong support for screening to detect diabetic retinopathy. Prompt diagnosis allows triage of patients and timely intervention that may prevent vision loss in patients who are asymptomatic despite advanced diabetic eye disease.

Diabetic retinopathy screening should be performed using validated approaches and methodologies. Youth with type 1 or type 2 diabetes are also at risk for complications and need to be screened for diabetic retinopathy (14) (see Section 14, "Children and Adolescents," https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S014). If diabetic retinopathy is evident on screening, prompt referral to an ophthalmologist is recommended. Subsequent examinations for patients with type 1 or type 2 diabetes are generally repeated annually for patients with minimal to no retinopathy. Exams every 1–2 years may be cost-effective after one or more normal eye exams. In a population with well-controlled type 2 diabetes, there was little risk of development of significant retinopathy with a 3-year interval after a normal examination (15), and less frequent intervals have been found in simulated modeling to be potentially effective in screening for diabetic retinopathy in patients without diabetic retinopathy (16). However, it is important to adjust screening intervals based on the presence of specific risk factors for retinopathy onset and worsening retinopathy. More frequent examinations by the ophthalmologist will be required if retinopathy is progressing or risk factors such as uncontrolled hyperglycemia or advanced baseline retinopathy or diabetic macular edema are present.

Retinal photography with remote reading by experts has great potential to provide screening services in areas where qualified eye care professionals are not readily available (17–19). High-quality fundus photographs can detect most clinically significant diabetic retinopathy. Interpretation of the images should be performed by a trained eye care provider. Retinal photography may also enhance efficiency and reduce costs when the expertise of ophthalmologists can be used for more complex examinations and for therapy (17,20,21). In-person exams are still necessary when the retinal photos are of unacceptable quality and for follow-up if abnormalities are detected. Retinal photos are not a substitute for dilated comprehensive eye exams, which should be performed at least initially and at intervals thereafter as recommended by an eye care professional. Artificial intelligence systems that detect more than mild diabetic retinopathy and diabetic macular edema, authorized for use by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), represent an alternative to traditional screening approaches (22). However, the benefits and optimal utilization of this type of screening have yet to be fully determined. Results of all screening eye examinations should be documented and transmitted to the referring health care professional.

Screening

**Recommendations**

**12.3** Adults with type 1 diabetes should have an initial dilated and comprehensive eye examination by an ophthalmologist or optometrist within 5 years after the onset of diabetes. **B**

**12.4** Patients with type 2 diabetes should have an initial dilated and comprehensive eye examination by an ophthalmologist or optometrist at the time of the diabetes diagnosis. **B**

**12.5** If there is no evidence of retinopathy for one or more annual eye exams and glycemia is well controlled, then screening every 1–2 years may be considered. If any level of diabetic retinopathy is present, subsequent dilated retinal examinations should be repeated at least annually by an ophthalmologist or optometrist. If retinopathy is progressing or sight-threatening, then examinations will be required more frequently. **B**

**12.6** Programs that use retinal photography (with remote reading or use of a validated assessment tool) to improve access to diabetic retinopathy screening can be appropriate screening strategies for diabetic retinopathy. Such programs need to provide pathways for timely referral for a comprehensive eye examination when indicated. **B**

**12.7** Women with preexisting type 1 or type 2 diabetes who are planning pregnancy or who are pregnant should be counseled on the risk of development and/or progression of diabetic retinopathy. **B**

**12.8** Eye examinations should occur before pregnancy or in the first trimester in patients with preexisting type 1 or type 2 diabetes, and then patients should be monitored every trimester and for 1 year postpartum as indicated by the degree of retinopathy. **B**
Pregnancy is associated with a rapid progression of diabetic retinopathy (24,25). Women with preexisting type 1 or type 2 diabetes who are planning pregnancy or who have become pregnant should be counseled on the risk of development and/or progression of diabetic retinopathy. In addition, rapid implementation of intensive glycemic management in the setting of retinopathy is associated with early worsening of retinopathy (13). Women who develop gestational diabetes mellitus do not require eye examinations during pregnancy and do not appear to be at increased risk of developing diabetic retinopathy during pregnancy (26).

Treatment

**Recommendations**

12.9 Promptly refer patients with any level of diabetic macular edema, moderate or worse nonproliferative diabetic retinopathy (a precursor of proliferative diabetic retinopathy), or any proliferative diabetic retinopathy to an ophthalmologist who is knowledgeable and experienced in the management of diabetic retinopathy. A

12.10 Panretinal laser photocoagulation therapy is indicated to reduce the risk of vision loss in patients with high-risk proliferative diabetic retinopathy and, in some cases, severe nonproliferative diabetic retinopathy. A

12.11 Intravitreal injections of anti–vascular endothelial growth factor are a reasonable alternative to traditional panretinal laser photocoagulation for some patients with proliferative diabetic retinopathy and also reduce the risk of vision loss in these patients. A

12.12 Intravitreal injections of anti–vascular endothelial growth factor are indicated as first-line treatment for most eyes with diabetic macular edema that involves the foveal center and impairs vision acuity. A

**12.13 Macular focal/grid photocoagulation** and intravitreal injections of corticosteroid are reasonable treatments in eyes with persistent diabetic macular edema despite previous anti–vascular endothelial growth factor therapy or eyes that are not candidates for this first-line approach. A

12.14 The presence of retinopathy is not a contraindication to aspirin therapy for cardioprotection, as aspirin does not increase the risk of retinal hemorrhage. A

Two of the main motivations for screening for diabetic retinopathy are to prevent loss of vision and to intervene with treatment when vision loss can be prevented or reversed.

**Photoocoagulation Surgery**

Two large trials, the Diabetic Retinopathy Study (DRS) in patients with PDR and the Early Treatment Diabetic Retinopathy Study (ETDRS) in patients with macular edema, provide the strongest support for the therapeutic benefits of photocoagulation surgery. The DRS (27) showed in 1978 that panretinal photocoagulation surgery reduced the risk of severe vision loss from PDR from 15.9% in untreated eyes to 6.4% in treated eyes with the greatest benefit ratio in those with more advanced baseline disease (disc neovascularization or vitreous hemorrhage). In 1985, the ETDRS also verified the benefits of panretinal photocoagulation for high-risk PDR and in older-onset patients with severe nonproliferative diabetic retinopathy or less-than-high-risk PDR. Panretinal laser photocoagulation is still commonly used to manage complications of diabetic retinopathy that involve retinal neovascularization and its complications. A more gentle, macular focal/grid laser photocoagulation technique was shown in the ETDRS to be effective in treating eyes with clinically significant macular edema from diabetes (28), but this is now largely considered to be second-line treatment for diabetic macular edema.

**Anti–Vascular Endothelial Growth Factor Treatment**

Data from the DRCR Retina Network (formerly the Diabetic Retinopathy Clinical Research Network) and others demonstrate that intravitreal injections of anti-VEGF agents are effective at regressing proliferative disease and lead to noninferior or superior visual acuity outcomes compared with panretinal laser over 2 years of follow-up (29,30). In addition, it was observed that patients treated with ranibizumab tended to have less peripheral visual field loss, fewer vitrectomy surgeries for secondary complications from their proliferative disease, and a lower risk of developing diabetic macular edema. However, a potential drawback in using anti-VEGF therapy to manage proliferative disease is that patients were required to have a greater number of visits and received a greater number of treatments than is typically required for management with panretinal laser, which may not be optimal for some patients. Other emerging therapies for retinopathy that may use sustained intravitreal delivery of pharmacologic agents are currently under investigation. The FDA has approved aflibercept and ranibizumab for the treatment of eyes with diabetic retinopathy. Anti-VEGF treatment of eyes with nonproliferative diabetic retinopathy has been demonstrated to reduce subsequent development of retinal neovascularization and diabetic macular edema but has not been shown to improve visual outcomes over 2 years of therapy and therefore is not routinely recommended for this indication (31).

While the ETDRS (28) established the benefit of focal laser photocoagulation surgery in eyes with clinically significant macular edema (defined as retinal edema located at or threatening the macular center), current data from well-designed clinical trials demonstrate that intravitreal anti-VEGF agents provide a more effective treatment regimen for center-involved diabetic macular edema than monotherapy with laser (32,33). Most patients require near-monthly administration of intravitreal therapy with anti-VEGF agents during the first 12 months of treatment, with fewer injections needed in subsequent years to maintain remission from central-involved diabetic macular edema. There are currently three anti-VEGF agents commonly used to treat eyes with central-involved
Diabetic macular edema—bevacizumab, ranibizumab, and afilibercept (1)—and a comparative effectiveness study demonstrated that afilibercept provides vision outcomes superior to those of bevacizumab when eyes have moderate visual impairment (vision of 20/50 or worse) from diabetic macular edema (34). For eyes that have good vision (20/25 or better) despite diabetic macular edema, close monitoring with initiation of anti-VEGF therapy if vision worsens provides similar 2-year vision outcomes compared with immediate initiaion of anti-VEGF therapy (35).

Eyes that have persistent diabetic macular edema despite anti-VEGF treatment may benefit from macular laser photocoagulation or intravitreal therapy with corticosteroids. Both of these therapies are also reasonable first-line approaches for patients who are not candidates for anti-VEGF treatment due to systemic considerations such as pregnancy.

**Adjunctive Therapy**

Lowering blood pressure has been shown to decrease retinopathy progression, although tight targets (systolic blood pressure <120 mmHg) do not impart additional benefit (8). In patients with dyslipidemia, retinopathy progression may be slowed by the addition of fenofibrate, particularly with very mild nonproliferative diabetic retinopathy at baseline (36,37).

**NEUROPATHY**

**Screening**

**Recommendations**

12.15 All patients should be assessed for diabetic peripheral neuropathy starting at diagnosis of type 2 diabetes and 5 years after the diagnosis of type 1 diabetes and at least annually thereafter.

12.16 Assessment for distal symmetric polyneuropathy should include a careful history and assessment of either temperature or pinprick sensation (small fiber function) and vibration sensation using a 128-Hz tuning fork (for large-fiber function). All patients should have annual 10-g monofilament testing to identify feet at risk for ulceration and amputation.

**Symptoms and signs of autonomic neuropathy should be assessed in patients with microvascular complications.**

The diabetic neuropathies are a heterogeneous group of disorders with diverse clinical manifestations. The early recognition and appropriate management of neuropathy in the patient with diabetes is important.

1. Diabetic neuropathy is a diagnosis of exclusion. Nondiabetic neuropathies may be present in patients with diabetes and may be treatable.
2. Up to 50% of diabetic peripheral neuropathy may be asymptomatic. If not recognized and if preventive foot care is not implemented, patients are at risk for injuries to their insensate feet.
3. Recognition and treatment of autonomic neuropathy may improve symptoms, reduce sequelae, and improve quality of life.

Specific treatment for the underlying nerve damage, other than improved glycemic control, is currently not available. Glycemic control can effectively prevent diabetic peripheral neuropathy (DPN) and cardiac autonomic neuropathy (CAN) in type 1 diabetes (38,39) and may modestly slow their progression in type 2 diabetes (40), but it does not reverse neuronal loss. Therapeutic strategies (pharmacologic and nonpharmacologic) for the relief of painful DPN and symptoms of autonomic neuropathy can potentially reduce pain (41) and improve quality of life.

**Diabetes Peripheral Neuropathy**

Patients with type 1 diabetes for 5 or more years and all patients with type 2 diabetes should be assessed annually for DPN using the medical history and simple clinical tests (41). Symptoms vary according to the class of sensory fibers involved. The most common early symptoms are induced by the involvement of small fibers and include pain and dyesthesias (unpleasant sensations of burning and tingling). The involvement of large fibers may cause numbness and loss of protective sensation (LOPS). LOPS indicates the presence of distal sensorimotor polyneuropathy and is a risk factor for diabetic foot ulceration. The following clinical tests may be used to assess small- and large-fiber function and protective sensation:

1. Small-fiber function: pinprick and temperature sensation.
2. Large-fiber function: vibration perception and 10-g monofilament.
3. Protective sensation: 10-g monofilament.

These tests not only screen for the presence of dysfunction but also predict future risk of complications. Electrophysiological testing or referral to a neurologist is rarely needed, except in situations where the clinical features are atypical or the diagnosis is unclear.

In all patients with diabetes and DPN, causes of neuropathy other than diabetes should be considered, including toxins (e.g., alcohol), neurototoxic medications (e.g., chemotherapy), vitamin B12 deficiency, hypothyroidism, renal disease, malignancies (e.g., multiple myeloma, bronchogenic carcinoma), infections (e.g., HIV), chronic inflammatory demyelinating neuropathy, inherited neuropathies, and vasculitis (42). See the American Diabetes Association position statement “Diabetic Neuropathy” for more details (41).

**Diabetic Autonomic Neuropathy**

The symptoms and signs of autonomic neuropathy should be elicited carefully during the history and physical examination. Major clinical manifestations of diabetic autonomic neuropathy include hypoglycemia unawareness, resting tachycardia, orthostatic hypotension, gastroparesis, constipation, diarrhea, fecal incontinence, erectile dysfunction, neurogenic bladder, and sudomotor dysfunction with either increased or decreased sweating.

**Cardiac Autonomic Neuropathy.** CAN is associated with mortality independently of other cardiovascular risk factors (43,44). In its early stages, CAN may be completely asymptomatic and detected only by decreased heart rate variability with deep breathing. Advanced disease may be associated with resting tachycardia (>100 bpm) and orthostatic hypotension (a fall in systolic or diastolic
blood pressure by $>20$ mmHg or $>10$ mmHg, respectively, upon standing without an appropriate increase in heart rate). CAN treatment is generally focused on alleviating symptoms.

**Gastrointestinal Neuropathies.** Gastrointestinal neuropathies may involve any portion of the gastrointestinal tract, with manifestations including esophageal dysmotility, gastroparesis, constipation, diarrhea, and fecal incontinence. Gastroparesis should be suspected in individuals with erratic glycemic control or with upper gastrointestinal symptoms without another identified cause. Exclusion of organic causes of gastric outlet obstruction or peptic ulcer disease (with esophageogastroduodenoscopy or a barium study of the stomach) is needed before considering a diagnosis of or specialized testing for gastroparesis. The diagnostic gold standard for gastroparesis is the measurement of gastric emptying with scintigraphy of digestible solids at 15-min intervals for 4 h after food intake. The use of $^{13}$C octanoic acid breath test is emerging as a viable alternative.

**Genitourinary Disturbances.** Diabetic autonomic neuropathy may also cause genitourinary disturbances, including sexual dysfunction and bladder dysfunction. In men, diabetic autonomic neuropathy may cause erectile dysfunction and/or retrograde ejaculation (41). Female sexual dysfunction occurs more frequently in those with diabetes and presents as decreased sexual desire, increased pain during intercourse, decreased sexual arousal, and inadequate lubrication (45). Lower urinary tract symptoms manifest as urinary incontinence and bladder dysfunction (nocturia, frequent urination, urination urgency, and weak urinary stream). Evaluation of bladder function should be performed for individuals with diabetes who have recurrent urinary tract infections, pyelonephritis, incontinence, or a palpable bladder.

### Treatment

#### Recommendations

12.18 Optimize glucose control to prevent or delay the development of neuropathy in patients with type 1 diabetes

A and to slow the progression of neuropathy in patients with type 2 diabetes. B

12.19 Assess and treat patients to reduce pain related to diabetic peripheral neuropathy B and symptoms of autonomic neuropathy and to improve quality of life. E

12.20 Pregabalin, duloxetine, or gabapentin are recommended as initial pharmacologic treatments for neuropathic pain in diabetes. A

#### Glycemic Control

Near-normal glycemic control, implemented early in the course of diabetes, has been shown to effectively delay or prevent the development of DPN and CAN in patients with type 1 diabetes (46–49). Although the evidence for the benefit of near-normal glycemic control is not as strong for type 2 diabetes, some studies have demonstrated a modest slowing of progression without reversal of neuronal loss (40,50). Specific glucose-lowering strategies may have different effects. In a post hoc analysis, participants, particularly men, in the Bypass Angioplasty Revascularization Investigation in Type 2 Diabetes (BARI 2D) trial treated with insulin sensitizers had a lower incidence of distal symmetric polyneuropathy over 4 years than those treated with insulin/sulfonylurea (51).

#### Neuropathic Pain

Neuropathic pain can be severe and can impact quality of life, limit mobility, and contribute to depression and social dysfunction (52). No compelling evidence exists in support of glycemic control or lifestyle management as therapies for neuropathic pain in diabetes or prediabetes, which leaves only pharmaceutical interventions (53).

Pregabalin and duloxetine have received regulatory approval by the FDA, Health Canada, and the European Medicines Agency for the treatment of neuropathic pain in diabetes. The opioid tapentadol has regulatory approval in the U.S. and Canada, but the evidence of its use is weaker (54). Comparative effectiveness studies and trials that include quality-of-life outcomes are rare, so treatment decisions must consider each patient’s presentation and comorbidities and often follow a trial-and-error approach. Given the range of partially effective treatment options, a tailored and stepwise pharmacologic strategy with careful attention to relative symptom improvement, medication adherence, and medication side effects is recommended to achieve pain reduction and improve quality of life (55–57).

**Pregabalin,** a calcium channel $\alpha_2-\delta$ subunit ligand, is the most extensively studied drug for DPN. The majority of studies testing pregabalin have reported favorable effects on the proportion of participants with at least 30–50% improvement in pain (54,56,58–61). However, not all trials with pregabalin have been positive (54,56,62,63), especially when treating patients with advanced refractory DPN (60). Adverse effects may be more severe in older patients (64) and may be attenuated by lower starting doses and more gradual titration. The related drug, gabapentin, has also shown efficacy for pain control in diabetic neuropathy and may be less expensive, although it is not FDA approved for this indication (65).

**Duloxetine** is a selective norepinephrine and serotonin reuptake inhibitor. Doses of 60 and 120 mg/day showed efficacy in the treatment of pain associated with DPN in multicenter randomized trials, although some of these had high drop-out rates (54,56,61,63). Duloxetine also appeared to improve neuropathy-related quality of life (66). In longer-term studies, a small increase in A1C was reported in people with diabetes treated with duloxetine compared with placebo (67). Adverse events may be more severe in older people but may be attenuated with lower doses and slower titration of duloxetine.

**Tapentadol** is a centrally acting opioid analgesic that exerts its analgesic effects through both $\mu$-opioid receptor agonism and noradrenaline reuptake inhibition. Extended-release tapentadol was approved by the FDA for the treatment of neuropathic pain associated with diabetes based on data from two multicenter clinical trials in which participants titrated to an optimal dose of tapentadol were randomly assigned to continue that dose or switch to placebo (68,69). However, both used a design enriched for patients who responded to tapentadol, and therefore their results are not generalizable. A recent systematic review and meta-analysis by the Special Interest Group on
Neuropathic Pain of the International Association for the Study of Pain found the evidence supporting the effectiveness of tapentadol in reducing neuropathic pain to be inconclusive (54). Therefore, given the high risk for addiction and safety concerns compared with the relatively modest pain reduction, the use of extended-release tapentadol is not generally recommended as a first-or second-line therapy. The use of any opioids for management of chronic neuropathic pain carries the risk of addiction and should be avoided.

Tricyclic antidepressants, venlafaxine, carbamazepine, and topical capsaicin, although not approved for the treatment of painful DPN, may be effective and considered for the treatment of painful DPN (41,54,56).

Orthostatic Hypotension

Treating orthostatic hypotension is challenging. The therapeutic goal is to minimize postural symptoms rather than to restore normotension. Most patients require both nonpharmacologic measures (e.g., ensuring adequate salt intake, avoiding medications that aggravate hypotension, or using compressive garments over the legs and abdomen) and pharmacologic measures. Physical activity and exercise should be encouraged to avoid deconditioning, which is known to exacerbate orthostatic intolerance, and volume repletion with fluids and salt is critical. There have been clinical studies that assessed the impact of an approach incorporating the aforementioned nonpharmacologic measures. Additionally, supine blood pressure tends to be much higher in these patients, often requiring treatment of blood pressure at bedtime with shorter-acting drugs that also affect baroreceptor activity such as guanfacine or clonidine, shorter-acting calcium blockers (e.g., isradipine), or shorter-acting β-blockers such as atenolol or metoprolol tartrate. Alternatives can include enalanpir if patients are unable to tolerate preferred agents (70–72). Midodrine and droxidopa are approved by the FDA for the treatment of orthostatic hypotension.

Gastroparesis

Treatment for diabetic gastroparesis may be very challenging. A low-fiber, low-fat eating plan provided in small frequent meals with a greater proportion of liquid calories may be useful (73–75). In addition, foods with small particle size may improve key symptoms (76). Withdrawing drugs with adverse effects on gastrointestinal motility, including opioids, anticholinergic, tricyclic antidepressants, GLP-1 RAs, pramlintide, and possibly dipeptidyl peptidase 4 inhibitors, may also improve intestinal motility (73,77). In cases of severe gastroparesis, pharmacologic interventions are needed. Only metoclopramide, a prokinetic agent, is approved by the FDA for the treatment of gastroparesis. However, the level of evidence regarding the benefits of metoclopramide for the management of gastroparesis is weak, and given the risk for serious adverse effects (extrapyramidal signs such as acute dystonic reactions, drug-induced parkinsonism, akathisia, and tardive dyskinesia), its use in the treatment of gastroparesis beyond 12 weeks is no longer recommended by the FDA or the European Medicines Agency. It should be reserved for severe cases that are unresponsive to other therapies (77). Other treatment options include domperidone (available outside of the U.S.) and erythromycin, which is only effective for short-term use due to tachyphylaxis (78,79). Gastric electrical stimulation using a surgically implantable device has received approval from the FDA, although its efficacy is variable and use is limited to patients with severe symptoms that are refractory to other treatments (80).

Erectile Dysfunction

In addition to treatment of hypogonadism if present, treatments for erectile dysfunction may include phosphodiesterase type 5 inhibitors, intracorporeal or intravaginal prostaglandins, vacuum devices, or penile prostheses. As with DPN treatments, these interventions do not change the underlying pathology and natural history of the disease process but may improve the patient’s quality of life.

FOOT CARE

Recommendations

12.21 Perform a comprehensive foot evaluation at least annually to identify risk factors for ulcers and amputations. B

12.22 Patients with evidence of sensory loss or prior ulceration or amputation should have their feet inspected at every visit. B

12.23 Obtain a prior history of ulceration, amputation, Charcot foot, angioplasty or vascular surgery, cigarette smoking, retinopathy, and renal disease and assess current symptoms of neuropathy (pain, burning, numbness) and vascular disease (leg fatigue, claudication). B

12.24 The examination should include inspection of the skin, assessment of foot deformities, neurologic assessment (10-g monofilament testing with at least one other assessment: pinprick, temperature, vibration), and vascular assessment, including pulses in the legs and feet. B

12.25 Patients with symptoms of claudication or decreased or absent pedal pulses should be referred for ankle-brachial index and for further vascular assessment as appropriate. C

12.26 A multidisciplinary approach is recommended for individuals with foot ulcers and high-risk feet (e.g., dialysis patients and those with Charcot foot or prior ulcers or amputation). B

12.27 Refer patients who smoke or who have histories of prior lower-extremity complications, loss of protective sensation, structural abnormalities, or peripheral arterial disease to foot care specialists for ongoing preventive care and lifelong surveillance. C

12.28 Provide general preventive foot self-care education to all patients with diabetes. B

12.29 The use of specialized therapeutics footwear is recommended for high-risk patients with diabetes, including those with severe neuropathy, foot deformities, ulcers, callous formation, poor peripheral circulation, or history of amputation. B

Foot ulcers and amputation, which are consequences of diabetic neuropathy
and/or peripheral arterial disease (PAD), are common and represent major causes of morbidity and mortality in people with diabetes.

Early recognition and treatment of patients with diabetes and feet at risk for ulcers and amputations can delay or prevent adverse outcomes.

The risk of ulcers or amputations is increased in people who have the following risk factors:

- Poor glycemic control
- Peripheral neuropathy with LOPS
- Cigarette smoking
- Foot deformities
- Preulcerative callus or corn
- PAD
- History of foot ulcer
- Amputation
- Visual impairment
- Chronic kidney disease (especially patients on dialysis)

Moreover, there is good-quality evidence to support use of appropriate therapeutic footwear with demonstrated pressure relief that is worn by the patient to prevent plantar foot ulcer recurrence or worsening. However, there is very little evidence for the use of interventions to prevent a first foot ulcer or heal ischemic, infected, nonplantar, or proximal foot ulcers (81). Studies on specific types of footwear demonstrated that shape and barefoot plantar pressure–based orthoses were more effective in reducing submetatarsal head plantar ulcer recurrence than current standard-of-care orthoses (82).

Clinicians are encouraged to review ADA screening recommendations for further details and practical descriptions of how to perform components of the comprehensive foot examination (83).

Evaluation for Loss of Protective Sensation

All adults with diabetes should undergo a comprehensive foot evaluation at least annually. Detailed foot assessments may occur more frequently in patients with histories of ulcers or amputations, foot deformities, insensate feet, and PAD (84,85). To assess risk, clinicians should ask about history of foot ulcers or amputation, neuropathic and peripheral vascular symptoms, impaired vision, renal disease, tobacco use, and foot care practices. A general inspection of skin integrity and musculoskeletal deformities should be performed. Vascular assessment should include inspection and palpation of pedal pulses.

The neurological exam performed as part of the foot examination is designed to identify LOPS rather than early neuropathy. The 10-g monofilament is the most useful test to diagnose LOPS. Ideally, the 10-g monofilament test should be performed with at least one other assessment (pinprick, temperature or vibration sensation using a 128-Hz tuning fork, or ankle reflexes). Absent monofilament sensation suggests LOPS, while at least two normal tests (and no abnormal test) rules out LOPS.

Evaluation for Peripheral Arterial Disease

Initial screening for PAD should include a history of decreased walking speed, leg fatigue, claudication, and an assessment of the pedal pulses. Ankle-brachial index testing should be performed in patients with symptoms or signs of PAD. Additionally, at least one of the following tests in a patient with a diabetic foot ulcer and PAD should be performed: skin perfusion pressure (≥40 mmHg), toe pressure (≥30 mmHg), or transcutaneous oxygen pressure (TcPO2 ≥25 mmHg). Urgent vascular imaging and revascularization should be considered in a patient with a diabetic foot ulcer and an ankle pressure (ankle-brachial index) <50 mmHg, toe pressure <30 mmHg, or a TcPO2 <25 mmHg (41,86).

Patient Education

All patients with diabetes and particularly those with high-risk foot conditions (history of ulcer or amputation, deformity, LOPS, or PAD) and their families should be provided general education about risk factors and appropriate management (87). Patients at risk should understand the implications of foot deformities, LOPS, and PAD; the proper care of the foot, including nail and skin care; and the importance of foot monitoring on a daily basis. Patients with LOPS should be educated on ways to substitute other sensory modalities (palpation or visual inspection using an unbreakable mirror) for surveillance of early foot problems.

The selection of appropriate footwear and footwear behaviors at home should also be discussed. Patients’ understanding of these issues and their physical ability to conduct proper foot surveillance and care should be assessed. Patients with visual difficulties, physical constraints preventing movement, or cognitive problems that impair their ability to assess the condition of the foot and to institute appropriate responses will need other people, such as family members, to assist with their care.

Treatment

People with neuropathy or evidence of increased plantar pressures (e.g., erythema, warmth, or calluses) may be adequately managed with well-fitted walking shoes or athletic shoes that cushion the feet and redistribute pressure. People with bony deformities (e.g., hammertoes, prominent metatarsal heads, bunions) may need extra wide or deep shoes. People with bony deformities, including Charcot foot, who cannot be accommodated with commercial therapeutic footwear, will require custom-molded shoes. Special consideration and a thorough workup should be performed when patients with neuropathy present with the acute onset of a red, hot, swollen foot or ankle, and Charcot neuroarthropathy should be excluded. Early diagnosis and treatment of Charcot neuroarthropathy is the best way to prevent deformities that increase the risk of ulceration and amputation. The routine prescription of therapeutic footwear is not generally recommended. However, patients should be provided adequate information to aid in selection of appropriate footwear. General footwear recommendations include a broad and square toe box, laces with three or four eyes per side, padded tongue, quality lightweight materials, and sufficient size to accommodate a cushioned insole. Use of custom therapeutic footwear can help reduce the risk of future foot ulcers in high-risk patients (84,87).

Most diabetic foot infections are polymicrobial, with aerobic gram-positive cocci. Staphylococci and streptococci are the most common causative organisms. Wounds without evidence of soft tissue or bone infection do not require antibiotic therapy. Empiric antibiotic therapy can be narrowly targeted at gram-positive cocci in many patients
with acute infections, but those at risk for infection with antibiotic-resistant organisms or with chronic, previously treated, or severe infections require broader-spectrum regimens and should be referred to specialized care centers (88). Foot ulcers and wound care may require care by a podiatrist, orthopedic or vascular surgeon, or rehabilitation specialist experienced in the management of individuals with diabetes (88).

Hyperbaric oxygen therapy (HBOT) in patients with diabetic foot ulcers has mixed evidence supporting its use as an adjunctive treatment to enhance wound healing and prevent amputation (89–92). A well-conducted randomized controlled study performed in 103 patients found that HBOT did not reduce the indication for amputation or facilitate wound healing compared with comprehensive wound care in patients with chronic diabetic foot ulcers (93). Moreover, a systematic review by the International Working Group on the Diabetic Foot of interventions to improve the healing of chronic diabetic foot ulcers concluded that analysis of the evidence continues to present methodological challenges as randomized controlled studies remain few, with a majority being of poor quality (90). Thus, HBOT does not have a significant effect on health-related quality of life in patients with diabetic foot ulcers (94,95). A recent review concluded that the evidence to date remains inconclusive regarding the clinical and cost-effectiveness of HBOT as an adjunctive treatment to standard wound care for diabetic foot ulcers (96). Results from the Dutch DAMOCLES (Does Applying More Oxygen Cure Lower Extremity Sores?) trial demonstrated that HBOT in patients with diabetes and ischemic wounds did not significantly improve complete wound healing and limb salvage (97). While the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services currently covers HBOT for diabetic foot ulcers that have failed a standard course of wound therapy when there are no measurable signs of healing for at least 30 consecutive days (98), given the data not supporting an effect, such an approach is not currently warranted. HBOT should be a topic of shared decision-making before treatment is considered for selected patients with diabetic foot ulcers (98).

References


58. Freeman R, Durso-Decruz E, Emir B. Efficacy, safety, and tolerability of pregabalin treatment for painful diabetic peripheral neuropathy: findings from seven randomized, controlled trials across a range of doses. Diabetes Care 2008;31:1448–1454


69. Vinik AI, Shapiro DY, Rauschkolb C, et al. A randomized withdrawal, placebo-controlled study evaluating the efficacy and tolerability of
13. Older Adults: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2022

Diabetes Care 2022;45(Suppl. 1):S195–S207 | https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S013

The American Diabetes Association (ADA) “Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes” includes the ADA’s current clinical practice recommendations and is intended to provide the components of diabetes care, general treatment goals and guidelines, and tools to evaluate quality of care. Members of the ADA Professional Practice Committee, a multidisciplinary expert committee (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SPPC), are responsible for updating the Standards of Care annually, or more frequently as warranted. For a detailed description of ADA standards, statements, and reports, as well as the evidence-grading system for ADA’s clinical practice recommendations, please refer to the Standards of Care Introduction (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SINT). Readers who wish to comment on the Standards of Care are invited to do so at professional.diabetes.org/SOC.

Recommendations

13.1 Consider the assessment of medical, psychological, functional (self-management abilities), and social domains in older adults to provide a framework to determine targets and therapeutic approaches for diabetes management. B

13.2 Screen for geriatric syndromes (i.e., polypharmacy, cognitive impairment, depression, urinary incontinence, falls, persistent pain, and frailty) in older adults, as they may affect diabetes self-management and diminish quality of life. B

Diabetes is a highly prevalent health condition in the aging population. Over one-quarter of people over the age of 65 years have diabetes, and one-half of older adults have prediabetes (1,2), and the number of older adults living with these conditions is expected to increase rapidly in the coming decades. Diabetes management in older adults requires regular assessment of medical, psychological, functional, and social domains. Older adults with diabetes have higher rates of premature death, functional disability, accelerated muscle loss, and coexisting illnesses, such as hypertension, coronary heart disease, and stroke, than those without diabetes. Screening for diabetes complications in older adults should be individualized and periodically revisited, as the results of screening tests may impact targets and therapeutic approaches (3–5). At the same time, older adults with diabetes are also at greater risk than other older adults for several common geriatric syndromes, such as polypharmacy, cognitive impairment, depression, urinary incontinence, injurious falls, persistent pain, and frailty (1). These conditions may impact older adults’ diabetes self-management abilities and quality of life if left unaddressed (2,6,7). See Section 4, “Comprehensive Medical Evaluation and
Assessment of Comorbidities” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S004), for the full range of issues to consider when caring for older adults with diabetes.

The comprehensive assessment described above may provide a framework to determine targets and therapeutic approaches (8–10), including whether referral for diabetes self-management education is appropriate (when complicating factors arise or when transitions in care occur) or whether the current regimen is too complex for the patient’s self-management ability or the caregivers providing care (11). Particular attention should be paid to complications that can develop over short periods of time and/or would significantly impair functional status, such as visual and lower-extremity complications. Please refer to the American Diabetes Association (ADA) consensus report “Diabetes in Older Adults” for details (3).

NEUROCOGNITIVE FUNCTION

Recommendation 13.3 Screening for early detection of mild cognitive impairment or dementia should be performed for adults 65 years of age or older at the initial visit, annually, and as appropriate. B

Older adults with diabetes are at higher risk of cognitive decline and institutionalization (12,13). The presentation of cognitive impairment ranges from subtle executive dysfunction to memory loss and overt dementia. People with diabetes have higher incidences of all-cause dementia, Alzheimer disease, and vascular dementia than people with normal glucose tolerance (14). The effects of hyperglycemia and hyperinsulinemia on the brain are areas of intense research. Poor glycemic control is associated with a decline in cognitive function (15,16), and longer duration of diabetes is associated with worsening cognitive function. There are ongoing studies evaluating whether preventing or delaying diabetes onset may help to maintain cognitive function in older adults. However, studies examining the effects of intensive glycemic and blood pressure control to achieve specific targets have not demonstrated a reduction in brain function decline (17,18).

Clinical trials of specific interventions—including cholinesterase inhibitors and glutamatergic antagonists—have not shown positive therapeutic benefit in maintaining or significantly improving cognitive function or in preventing cognitive decline (19). Pilot studies in patients with mild cognitive impairment evaluating the potential benefits of intranasal insulin therapy and metformin therapy provide insights for future clinical trials and mechanistic studies (20–23).

Despite the paucity of therapies to prevent or remedy cognitive decline, identifying cognitive impairment early has important implications for diabetes care. The presence of cognitive impairment can make it challenging for clinicians to help their patients reach individualized glycemic, blood pressure, and lipid targets. Cognitive dysfunction makes it difficult for patients to perform complex self-care tasks (24), such as monitoring glucose and adjusting insulin doses. It also hinders their ability to appropriately maintain the timing of meals and content of the diet. When clinicians are managing patients with cognitive dysfunction, it is critical to simplify drug regimens and to facilitate and engage the appropriate support structure to assist the patient in all aspects of care.

Older adults with diabetes should be carefully screened and monitored for cognitive impairment (2). Several simple assessment tools are available to screen for cognitive impairment (24,25), such as the Mini Mental State Examination (26), Mini-Cog (27), and the Montreal Cognitive Assessment (28), which may help to identify patients requiring neuropsychological evaluation, particularly those in whom dementia is suspected (i.e., experiencing memory loss and decline in their basic and instrumental activities of daily living). Annual screening is indicated for adults 65 years of age or older for early detection of mild cognitive impairment or dementia (4,29). Screening for cognitive impairment should additionally be considered when a patient presents with a significant decline in clinical status due to increased problems with self-care activities, such as errors in calculating insulin dose, difficulty counting carbohydrates, skipped meals, skipped insulin doses, and difficulty recognizing, preventing, or treating hypoglycemia. People who screen positive for cognitive impairment should receive diagnostic assessment as appropriate, including referral to a behavioral health provider for formal cognitive/neuropsychological evaluation (30).

HYPOGLYCEMIA

Recommendations

13.4 Because older adults with diabetes have a greater risk of hypoglycemia than younger adults, episodes of hypoglycemia should be ascertained and addressed at routine visits. B

13.5 For older adults with type 1 diabetes, continuous glucose monitoring should be considered to reduce hypoglycemia. A

Older adults are at higher risk of hypoglycemia for many reasons, including insulin deficiency necessitating insulin therapy and progressive renal insufficiency (31). As described above, older adults have higher rates of unidentified cognitive impairment and dementia, leading to difficulties in adhering to complex self-care activities (e.g., glucose monitoring, insulin dose adjustment, etc.). Cognitive decline has been associated with increased risk of hypoglycemia, and conversely, severe hypoglycemia has been linked to increased risk of dementia (32,33). Therefore, as discussed in Recommendation 13.3, it is important to routinely screen older adults for cognitive impairment and dementia and discuss findings with the patients and their caregivers.

Patients and their caregivers should be routinely queried about hypoglycemia (e.g., selected questions from the Diabetes Care Profile) (34) and hypoglycemia unawareness (35). Older patients can also be stratified for future risk for hypoglycemia with validated risk calculators (e.g., Kaiser Hypoglycemia Model) (36). An important step to mitigate hypoglycemia risk is to determine whether the patient is skipping meals or inadvertently repeating doses of their medications. Glycemic targets and pharmacologic regimens may need to be adjusted to minimize the occurrence of hypoglycemic events (2). This recommendation is supported by observations...
from multiple randomized controlled trials, such as the Action to Control Cardiovascular Risk in Diabetes (ACCORD) study and the Veterans Affairs Diabetes Trial (VADT), which showed that intensive treatment protocols targeting A1C <6.0% with complex drug regimens significantly increased the risk for hypoglycemia requiring assistance compared with standard treatment (37,38). However, these intensive treatment regimens included extensive use of insulin and minimal use of glucagon-like peptide 1 (GLP-1) receptor agonists, and they preceded the availability of sodium–glucose cotransporter 2 (SGLT2) inhibitors.

For older patients with type 1 diabetes, continuous glucose monitoring (CGM) may be another approach to predicting and reducing the risk of hypoglycemia (39). In the Wireless Innovation in Seniors with Diabetes Mellitus (WISDM) trial, patients over 60 years of age with type 1 diabetes were randomized to CGM or standard blood glucose monitoring. Over 6 months, use of CGM resulted in a small but statistically significant reduction in time spent with hypoglycemia (glucose level <70 mg/dL) compared with standard blood glucose monitoring (adjusted treatment difference −1.9% [−27 min/day]; 95% CI −2.8% to −1.1% [−40 to −16 min/day]; P < 0.001) (40,41). Among secondary outcomes, glycemic variability was reduced with CGM, as reflected by an 8% (95% CI 6.0−11.5) increase in time spent in range between 70 and 180 mg/dL. While the current evidence base for older adults is primarily in type 1 diabetes, the evidence demonstrating the clinical benefits of CGM for patients with type 2 diabetes using insulin is growing (42) (see Section 7, “Diabetes Technology,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S007). Another population for which CGM may also play an increasing role is older adults with physical or cognitive limitations who require monitoring of blood glucose by a surrogate.

**TREATMENT GOALS**

**Recommendations**

**13.6** Older adults who are otherwise healthy with few coexisting chronic illnesses and intact cognitive function and functional status should have lower glycemic goals (such as A1C less than 7.0−7.5% [53−58 mmol/mol]), while those with multiple coexisting chronic illnesses, cognitive impairment, or functional dependence should have less stringent glycemic goals (such as A1C less than 8.0% [64 mmol/mol]).

**13.7** Glycemic goals for some older adults might reasonably be relaxed as part of individualized care, but hyperglycemia leading to symptoms or risk of acute hyperglycemia complications should be avoided in all patients.

**13.8** Screening for diabetes complications should be individualized in older adults. Particular attention should be paid to complications that would lead to functional impairment.

**13.9** Treatment of hypertension to individualized target levels is indicated in most older adults.

**13.10** Treatment of other cardiovascular risk factors should be individualized in older adults considering the time frame of benefit. Lipid-lowering therapy and aspirin therapy may benefit those with life expectancies at least equal to the time frame of primary prevention or secondary intervention trials.

The care of older adults with diabetes is complicated by their clinical, cognitive, and functional heterogeneity. Some older individuals may have developed diabetes years earlier and have significant complications, others are newly diagnosed and may have had years of undiagnosed diabetes with resultant complications, and still other older adults may have truly recent-onset disease with few or no complications (43). Some older adults with diabetes have other underlying chronic conditions, substantial diabetes-related comorbidity, limited cognitive or physical functioning, or frailty (44,45). Other older individuals with diabetes have little comorbidity and are active. Life expectancies are highly variable but are often longer than clinicians realize. Multiple prognostic tools for life expectancy for older adults are available (46), including tools specifically designed for older adults with diabetes (47). Older patients also vary in their preferences for the intensity and mode of glucose control (48). Providers caring for older adults with diabetes must take this heterogeneity into consideration when setting and prioritizing treatment goals (9,10) (Table 13.1). In addition, older adults with diabetes should be assessed for disease treatment and self-management knowledge, health literacy, and mathematical literacy (numeration) at the onset of treatment. See Fig. 6.2 for patient- and disease-related factors to consider when determining individualized glycemic targets.

A1C is used as the standard biomarker for glycemic control in all patients with diabetes but may have limitations in patients who have medical conditions that impact red blood cell turnover (see Section 2, “Classification and Diagnosis of Diabetes,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S002, for additional details on the limitations of A1C) (49). Many conditions associated with increased red blood cell turnover, such as hemodialysis, recent blood loss or transfusion, or erythropoietin therapy, are commonly seen in older adults and can falsely increase or decrease A1C. In these instances, plasma glucose fingerstick and sensor glucose readings should be used for goal setting (Table 13.1).

**Healthy Patients With Good Functional Status**

There are few long-term studies in older adults demonstrating the benefits of intensive glycemic, blood pressure, and lipid control. Patients who can be expected to live long enough to realize the benefits of long-term intensive diabetes management, who have good cognitive and physical function, and who choose to do so via shared decision-making may be treated using therapeutic interventions and goals similar to those for younger adults with diabetes (Table 13.1).

As with all patients with diabetes, diabetes self-management education and ongoing diabetes self-management support are vital components of diabetes care for older adults and their
caregivers. Self-management knowledge and skills should be reassessed when regimen changes are made or an individual’s functional abilities diminish. In addition, declining or impaired ability to perform diabetes self-care behaviors may be an indication that a patient needs a referral for cognitive and physical functional assessment, using age-normalized evaluation tools, as well as help establishing a support structure for diabetes care (3,30).

Patients With Complications and Reduced Functionality
For patients with advanced diabetes complications, life-limiting comorbid illnesses, or substantial cognitive or functional impairments, it is reasonable to set less-intensive glycemic goals (Table 13.1). Factors to consider in individualizing glycemic goals are outlined in Fig. 6.2. Based on concepts of competing mortality and time to benefit, these patients are less likely to benefit from reducing the risk of microvascular complications (50). In addition, these patients are more likely to suffer serious adverse effects of therapeutics, such as hypoglycemia (51). However, patients with poorly controlled diabetes may be subject to acute complications of diabetes, including dehydration, poor wound healing, and hyperglycemic hyperosmolar coma. Glycemic goals should, at a minimum, avoid these consequences.

While Table 13.1 provides overall guidance for identifying complex and very complex patients, there is not yet global consensus on geriatric patient classification. Ongoing empirical research on the classification of older adults with diabetes based on comorbid illness has repeatedly found three major classes of patients: a healthy, a geriatric, and a cardiovascular class (9,52). The geriatric class has the highest prevalence of obesity, hypertension, arthritis, and incontinence, and the cardiovascular class has the highest prevalence of myocardial infarctions, heart failure, and stroke. Compared with the healthy class, the cardiovascular class has the highest risk of frailty and subsequent mortality. Additional research is needed to develop a reproducible classification scheme to distinguish the natural history of disease as well as differential response to glucose control and specific glucose-lowering agents (53).

**Vulnerable Patients at the End of Life**
For patients receiving palliative care and end-of-life care, the focus should be to avoid hypoglycemia and symptomatic hyperglycemia while reducing the burdens of glycemic management. Thus, as organ failure develops, several agents will have to be deintensified or discontinued. For the dying patient, most agents for type 2 diabetes may be removed (54). There is, however, no consensus for the management of type 1 diabetes in this scenario (55). See the section END-OF-LIFE CARE, below, for additional information.

**Beyond Glycemic Control**
Although hyperglycemia control may be important in older individuals with diabetes, greater reductions in morbidity and mortality are likely to result from a clinical focus on comprehensive cardiovascular risk factor modification. There is strong evidence from clinical trials of the value of treating hypertension in older adults (56,57), with treatment of hypertension to individualized target levels indicated in most. There is less evidence for lipid-lowering therapy and aspirin therapy, although the benefits of these interventions for primary and secondary prevention are likely to apply to older adults whose life expectancies equal or exceed the time frames of the clinical trials (58). In the case of statins, the follow-up time of clinical trials ranged from 2 to 6 years. While the time frame of trials can be used to inform treatment decisions, a more specific concept is the time to benefit for a therapy. For statins, a meta-analysis of the previously mentioned trials showed that the time to benefit is 2.5 years (59).

**Lifestyle Management**

**Recommendations**

13.11 Optimal nutrition and protein intake is recommended for older adults; regular exercise, including aerobic activity, weight-bearing exercise, and/or resistance training, should be encouraged in all older adults who can safely engage in such activities. B

13.12 For older adults with type 2 diabetes, overweight/obesity, and capacity to safely exercise, an intensive lifestyle intervention focused on dietary changes, physical activity, and modest weight loss (e.g., 5–7%) should be considered for its benefits on quality of life, mobility and physical functioning, and cardiometabolic risk factor control. A

Lifestyle management in older adults should be tailored to frailty status. Diabetes in the aging population is associated with reduced muscle strength, poor muscle quality, and accelerated loss of muscle mass, which may result in sarcopenia and/or osteopenia (60,61). Diabetes is also recognized as an independent risk factor for frailty. Frailty is characterized by decline in physical performance and an increased risk of poor health outcomes due to physiologic vulnerability and functional or psychosocial stressors. Inadequate nutritional intake, particularly inadequate protein intake, can increase the risk of sarcopenia and frailty in older adults. Management of frailty in diabetes includes optimal nutrition with adequate protein intake combined with an exercise program that includes aerobic, weight-bearing, and resistance training. The benefits of a structured exercise program (as in the Lifestyle Interventions and Independence for Elders [LIFE] study) in frail older adults include reducing sedentary time, preventing mobility disability, and reducing frailty (62,63). The goal of these programs is not weight loss but enhanced functional status.

For nonfrail older adults with type 2 diabetes and overweight or obesity, an intensive lifestyle intervention designed to reduce weight is beneficial across multiple outcomes. The Look AHEAD (Action for Health in Diabetes) trial is described in Section 8, “Obesity and Weight Management for the Prevention and Treatment of Type 2 Diabetes” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S008). Look AHEAD specifically excluded individuals with a low functional status. It enrolled people between 45 and 74 years of age and required that they be able perform a maximal exercise test (64,65). While the Look AHEAD trial did not achieve its primary outcome of reducing cardiovascular events, the intensive lifestyle intervention...
Table 13.1—Framework for considering treatment goals for glycemia, blood pressure, and dyslipidemia in older adults with diabetes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient characteristics/health status</th>
<th>Rationale</th>
<th>Reasonable A1C goal†</th>
<th>Fasting or preprandial glucose</th>
<th>Bedtime glucose</th>
<th>Blood pressure</th>
<th>Lipids</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Healthy (few coexisting chronic illnesses, intact cognitive and functional status)</td>
<td>Longer remaining life expectancy</td>
<td>&lt;7.0–7.5% (53–58 mmol/mol)</td>
<td>80–130 mg/dL (4.4–7.2 mmol/L)</td>
<td>80–180 mg/dL (4.4–10.0 mmol/L)</td>
<td>&lt;140/90 mmHg</td>
<td>Statin unless contraindicated or not tolerated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complex/intermediate (multiple coexisting chronic illnesses* or 2+ instrumental ADL impairments or mild-to-moderate cognitive impairment)</td>
<td>Intermediate remaining life expectancy, high treatment burden, hypoglycemia vulnerability, fall risk</td>
<td>&lt;8.0% (64 mmol/mol)</td>
<td>90–150 mg/dL (5.0–8.3 mmol/L)</td>
<td>100–180 mg/dL (5.6–10.0 mmol/L)</td>
<td>&lt;140/90 mmHg</td>
<td>Statin unless contraindicated or not tolerated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very complex/poor health (LTC or end-stage chronic illnesses** or moderate-to-severe cognitive impairment or 2+ ADL impairments)</td>
<td>Limited remaining life expectancy makes benefit uncertain</td>
<td>Avoid reliance on A1C; glucose control decisions should be based on avoiding hypoglycemia and symptomatic hyperglycemia</td>
<td>100–180 mg/dL (5.6–10.0 mmol/L)</td>
<td>110–200 mg/dL (6.1–11.1 mmol/L)</td>
<td>&lt;150/90 mmHg</td>
<td>Consider likelihood of benefit with statin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This table represents a consensus framework for considering treatment goals for glycemia, blood pressure, and dyslipidemia in older adults with diabetes. The patient characteristic categories are general concepts. Not every patient will clearly fall into a particular category. Consideration of patient and caregiver preferences is an important aspect of treatment individualization. Additionally, a patient’s health status and preferences may change over time. ADL, activities of daily living; LTC, long-term care. †A lower A1C goal may be set for an individual if achievable without recurrent or severe hypoglycemia or undue treatment burden. *Coexisting chronic illnesses are conditions serious enough to require medications or lifestyle management and may include arthritis, cancer, heart failure, depression, emphysema, falls, hypertension, incontinence, stage 3 or worse chronic kidney disease, myocardial infarction, and stroke. “Multiple” means at least three, but many patients may have five or more (60). **The presence of a single end-stage chronic illness, such as stage 3–4 heart failure or oxygen-dependent lung disease, chronic kidney disease requiring dialysis, or uncontrolled metastatic cancer, may cause significant symptoms or impairment of functional status and significantly reduce life expectancy. Adapted from Kirkman et al. (3).

had multiple clinical benefits that are important to the quality of life of older adults. Benefits included weight loss, improved physical fitness, increased HDL cholesterol, lowered systolic blood pressure, reduced A1C levels, reduced waist circumference, and reduced need for medications (66). Additionally, several subgroups, including participants who lost at least 10% of baseline body weight at year 1, had improved cardiovascular outcomes (67). Risk factor control was improved with reduced utilization of antihypertensive medications, statins, and insulin (68). In age-stratified analyses, older patients in the trial (60 to early 70s) had similar benefits compared with younger patients (69,70). In addition, lifestyle intervention produced benefits on aging-relevant outcomes such as reductions in multimorbidity and improvements in physical function and quality of life (71–74).

**PHARMACOLOGIC THERAPY**

**Recommendations**

13.13 In older adults with type 2 diabetes at increased risk of hypoglycemia, medication classes with low risk of hypoglycemia are preferred. B

13.14 Overtreatment of diabetes is common in older adults and should be avoided. B

13.15 Deintensification (or simplification) of complex regimens is recommended to reduce the risk of hypoglycemia and polypharmacy, if it can be achieved within the individualized A1C target. B

13.16 Consider costs of care and insurance coverage rules when developing treatment plans in order to reduce risk of cost-related nonadherence. B

Special care is required in prescribing and monitoring pharmacologic therapies in older adults (75). See Fig. 9.3 for general recommendations regarding glucose-lowering treatment for adults with type 2 diabetes and Table 9.2 for patient- and drug-specific factors to consider when selecting glucose-lowering agents. Cost may be an important consideration, especially as older adults tend to be on many medications and live on fixed incomes (76). Accordingly, the costs of care and insurance coverage rules should be considered when developing treatment plans to reduce the risk of cost-related nonadherence (77,78). See Table 9.3 and Table 9.4 for median monthly cost in the U.S. of noninsulin glucose-lowering agents and insulin, respectively. It is important to match complexity of the treatment regimen to the self-management ability of older patients and their
available social and medical support. Many older adults with diabetes struggle to maintain the frequent blood glucose monitoring and insulin injection regimens they previously followed, perhaps for many decades, as they develop medical conditions that may impair their ability to follow their regimen safely. Individualized glycemic goals should be established (Fig. 6.2) and periodically adjusted based on coexisting chronic illnesses, cognitive function, and functional status (2). Intensive glycemic control with regimens including insulin and sulfonylureas in older adults with complex or very complex medical conditions has been identified as overtreatment and found to be very common in clinical practice (79–83). Ultimately, the determination of whether or not a patient is considered overtreated requires an elicitation of the patient’s perceptions of the current medication burden and preferences for treatments. For those seeking to simplify their diabetes regimen, deintensification of regimens in patients taking noninsulin glucose-lowering medications can be achieved by either lowering the dose or discontinuing some medications, as long as the individualized glycemic targets are maintained. When patients are found to have an insulin regimen with complexity beyond their self-management abilities, lowering the dose of insulin may not be adequate (84). Simplification of the insulin regimen to match an individual’s self-management abilities and their available social and medical support in these situations has been shown to reduce hypoglycemia and disease-related distress without worsening glycemic control (85–87). Fig. 13.1 depicts an algorithm that can be used to simplify the insulin regimen (85). There are now multiple studies evaluating deintensification protocols in diabetes as well as hypertension, demonstrating that deintensification is safe and possibly beneficial for older adults (88). Table 13.2 provides examples of and rationale for situations where deintensification and/or insulin regimen simplification may be appropriate in older adults.

Metformin
Metformin is the first-line agent for older adults with type 2 diabetes. Recent studies have indicated that it may be used safely in patients with estimated glomerular filtration rate ≥ 30 mL/min/1.73 m² (89). However, it is contraindicated in patients with advanced renal insufficiency and should be used with caution in patients with impaired hepatic function or heart failure because of the increased risk of lactic acidosis. Metformin may be temporarily discontinued before procedures, during hospitalizations, and when acute illness may compromise renal or liver function. Additionally, metformin can cause gastrointestinal side effects and a reduction in appetite that can be problematic for some older adults. Reduction or elimination of metformin may be necessary for patients experiencing persistent gastrointestinal side effects. For those taking metformin long-term, monitoring for vitamin B12 deficiency should be considered (90).

Thiazolidinediones
Thiazolidinediones, if used at all, should be used very cautiously in those patients on insulin therapy as well as those patients with or at risk for heart failure, osteoporosis, falls or fractures, and/or macular edema (91,92). Lower doses of a thiazolidinedione in combination therapy may mitigate these side effects.

Insulin Secretagogues
Sulfonylureas and other insulin secretagogues are associated with hypoglycemia and should be used with caution. If used, sulfonylureas with a shorter duration of action, such as glipizide or glimepiride, are preferred. Glyburide is a longer-acting sulfonylurea and should be avoided in older adults (93).

Incretin-Based Therapies
Oral dipeptidyl peptidase 4 (DPP-4) inhibitors have few side effects and minimal risk of hypoglycemia, but their cost may be a barrier to some older patients. DPP-4 inhibitors do not reduce or increase major adverse cardiovascular outcomes (94). Across the trials of this drug class, there appears to be no interaction by age-group (95–97). A challenge of interpreting the age-stratified analyses of this drug class and other cardiovascular outcomes trials is that while most of these analyses were prespecified, they were not powered to detect differences.

GLP-1 receptor agonists have demonstrated cardiovascular benefits among patients with established atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease (ASCVD) and those at higher ASCVD risk, and newer trials are expanding our understanding of their benefits in other populations (94). See Section 9, “Pharmacologic Approaches to Glycemic Treatment” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S009), and Section 10, “Cardiovascular Disease and Risk Management” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S010), for a more extensive discussion regarding the specific indications for this class. In a systematic review and meta-analysis of GLP-1 receptor agonist trials, these agents have been found to reduce major adverse cardiovascular events, cardiovascular deaths, stroke, and myocardial infarction to the same degree for patients above and below 65 years of age (98). While the evidence for this class for older patients continues to grow, there are a number of practical issues that should be considered for older patients. These drugs are injectable agents (with the exception of oral semaglutide) (99), which require visual, motor, and cognitive skills for appropriate administration. Agents with a weekly dosing schedule may reduce the burden of administration. GLP-1 receptor agonists may also be associated with nausea, vomiting, and diarrhea. Given the gastrointestinal side effects of this class, GLP-1 receptor agonists may not be preferred in older patients who are experiencing unexplained weight loss.

Sodium–Glucose Cotransporter 2 Inhibitors
SGLT2 inhibitors are administered orally, which may be convenient for older adults with diabetes. In patients with established ASCVD, these agents have shown cardiovascular benefits (94). This class of agents has also been found to be beneficial for patients with heart failure and to slow the progression of chronic kidney disease. See Section 9, “Pharmacologic Approaches to Glycemic Treatment” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S009), and Section 10, “Cardiovascular Disease and Risk Management” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S010), for a more extensive discussion regarding the indications for this class of agents. The stratified analyses of the trials of this drug class indicate that older patients have similar or greater...
Insulin Therapy

The use of insulin therapy requires that patients or their caregivers have good visual and motor skills and cognitive ability. Insulin therapy relies on the ability of the older patient to administer insulin on their own or with the assistance of a caregiver. Insulin doses should be titrated to meet individualized glycemic targets and to avoid hypoglycemia.

Once-daily basal insulin injection therapy is associated with minimal side effects and may be a reasonable option in many older patients (103). When choosing a basal insulin, long-acting insulin analogs have been found to be associated with a lower risk of hypoglycemia compared with NPH insulin in the Medicare population. Multiple daily injections of insulin may be too complex for the older patient with advanced diabetes complications, life-limiting coexisting chronic illnesses, or limited functional status. Fig. 13.1 provides a potential approach to insulin regimen simplification.

Other Factors to Consider

The needs of older adults with diabetes and their caregivers should be evaluated to construct a tailored care plan. Impaired social functioning may reduce the risk of functional dependency (7). The patient’s living situation must be considered as it may affect diabetes management and support needs. Social and instrumental support networks (e.g., adult children, caretakers) that provide instrumental or emotional support for older adults with diabetes should be included in diabetes management discussions and shared decision-making.

The need for ongoing support of older adults becomes even greater when transitions to acute care and long-term care (LTC) become necessary. Unfortunately, these transitions can lead to discontinuity in goals of care, errors in dosing, and changes in diet and activity (104). Older adults in assisted living facilities may not have support to administer their own medications, whereas those living in a nursing home (community living centers)
Table 13.2—Considerations for treatment regimen simplification and deintensification/deprescribing in older adults with diabetes (85,123)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient characteristics/health status</th>
<th>Reasonable A1C/ treatment goal</th>
<th>Rationale/considerations</th>
<th>When may regimen simplification be required?</th>
<th>When may treatment deintensification/deprescribing be required?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Healthy (few coexisting chronic illnesses, intact cognitive and functional status)</td>
<td>A1C &lt;7.0–7.5% (53–58 mmol/mol)</td>
<td>Patients can generally perform complex tasks to maintain good glycemic control when health is stable</td>
<td>If severe or recurrent hypoglycemia occurs in patients on insulin therapy (regardless of A1C)</td>
<td>If severe or recurrent hypoglycemia occurs in patients on noninsulin therapies with high risk of hypoglycemia (regardless of A1C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complex/intermediate (multiple coexisting chronic illnesses or ≥ instrumental ADL impairments or mild-to-moderate cognitive impairment)</td>
<td>A1C &lt;8.0% (64 mmol/mol)</td>
<td>Comorbidities may affect self-management abilities and capacity to avoid hypoglycemia</td>
<td>If severe or recurrent hypoglycemia occurs in patients on insulin therapy (even if A1C is appropriate)</td>
<td>If severe or recurrent hypoglycemia occurs in patients on noninsulin therapies with high risk of hypoglycemia (even if A1C is appropriate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Community-dwelling patients receiving care in a skilled nursing facility for short-term rehabilitation</td>
<td>Avoid reliance on A1C Glucose target: 100–200 mg/dL (5.55–11.1 mmol/L)</td>
<td>Glycemic control is important for recovery, wound healing, hydration, and avoidance of infections</td>
<td>If treatment regimen increased in complexity during hospitalization, it is reasonable, in many cases, to reinstate the prehospitalization medication regimen during the rehabilitation</td>
<td>If the hospitalization for acute illness resulted in weight loss, anorexia, short-term cognitive decline, and/or loss of physical functioning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Very complex/poor health (LTC or end-stage chronic illnesses or moderate-to-severe cognitive impairment or ≥ ADL impairments)</td>
<td>Avoid reliance on A1C. Avoid hypoglycemia and symptomatic hyperglycemia</td>
<td>No benefits of tight glycemic control in this population</td>
<td>If on an insulin regimen and the patient would like to decrease the number of injections and fingertip blood glucose monitoring events each day</td>
<td>If on noninsulin agents with a high hypoglycemia risk in the context of cognitive dysfunction, depression, anorexia, or inconsistent eating pattern</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At the end of life</td>
<td>Avoid hypoglycemia and symptomatic hyperglycemia</td>
<td>Goal is to provide comfort and avoid tasks or interventions that cause pain or discomfort</td>
<td>If there is pain or discomfort caused by treatment (e.g., injections or fingersticks)</td>
<td>If taking any medications without clear benefits in improving symptoms and/or comfort</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Treatment regimen simplification refers to changing strategy to decrease the complexity of a medication regimen (e.g., fewer administration times, fewer blood glucose checks) and decreasing the need for calculations (such as sliding-scale insulin calculations or insulin-carbohydrate ratio calculations). Deintensification/deprescribing refers to decreasing the dose or frequency of administration of a treatment or discontinuing a treatment altogether. ADL, activities of daily living; LTC, long-term care.
may rely completely on the care plan and nursing support. Those receiving palliative care (with or without hospice) may require an approach that emphasizes comfort and symptom management, while de-emphasizing strict metabolic and blood pressure control.

SPECIAL CONSIDERATIONS FOR OLDER ADULTS WITH TYPE 1 DIABETES

Due in part to the success of modern diabetes management, patients with type 1 diabetes are living longer, and the population of these patients over 65 years of age is growing (105–107). Many of the recommendations in this section regarding a comprehensive geriatric assessment and personalization of goals and treatments are directly applicable to older adults with type 1 diabetes; however, this population has unique challenges and requires distinct treatment considerations (108). Insulin is an essential life-preserving therapy for patients with type 1 diabetes, unlike for those with type 2 diabetes. To avoid diabetic ketoacidosis, older adults with type 1 diabetes need some form of basal insulin even when they are unable to ingest meals. Insulin may be delivered through an insulin pump or injections. CGM is approved for use by Medicare and can play a critical role in improving A1C, reducing glycemic variability, and reducing risk of hypoglycemia (109) (see Section 7, “Diabetes Technology,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S007, and Section 9, “Pharmacologic Approaches to Glycemic Treatment,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S009). In the older patient with type 1 diabetes, administration of insulin may become more difficult as complications, cognitive impairment, and functional impairment arise. This increases the importance of caregivers in the lives of these patients. Many older patients with type 1 diabetes require placement in LTC settings (i.e., nursing homes and skilled nursing facilities); unfortunately, these patients can encounter staff that are less familiar with insulin pumps or CGM. Some staff may be less knowledgeable about the differences between type 1 and type 2 diabetes. In these instances, the patient or the patient’s family may be more familiar with their diabetes management plan than the staff or providers. Education of relevant support staff and providers in rehabilitation and LTC settings regarding insulin dosing and use of pumps and CGM is recommended as part of general diabetes education (see Recommendations 13.17 and 13.18).

TREATMENT IN SKILLED NURSING FACILITIES AND NURSING HOMES

Recommendations

13.17 Consider diabetes education for the staff of long-term care and rehabilitation facilities to improve the management of older adults with diabetes. E

13.18 Patients with diabetes residing in long-term care facilities need careful assessment to establish individualized glycemic goals and to make appropriate choices of glucose-lowering agents based on their clinical and functional status. E

Management of diabetes in the LTC setting is unique. Individualization of health care is important in all patients; however, practical guidance is needed for medical providers as well as the LTC staff and caregivers (110). Training should include diabetes detection and institutional quality assessment. LTC facilities should develop their own policies and procedures for prevention and management of hypoglycemia. With the increased longevity of populations, the care of people with diabetes and its complications in LTC is an area that warrants greater study.

Resources

Staff of LTC facilities should receive appropriate diabetes education to improve the management of older adults with diabetes. Treatments for each patient should be individualized. Special management considerations include the need to avoid both hypoglycemia and the complications of hyperglycemia (2,111). For more information, see the ADA position statement “Management of Diabetes in Long-Term Care and Skilled Nursing Facilities” (110).

Nutritional Considerations

An older adult residing in an LTC facility may have irregular and unpredictable meal consumption, undernutrition, anorexia, and impaired swallowing. Furthermore, therapeutic diets may inadvertently lead to decreased food intake and contribute to unintentional weight loss and undernutrition. Diets tailored to a patient’s culture, preferences, and personal goals may increase quality of life, satisfaction with meals, and nutrition status (112). It may be helpful to give insulin after meals to ensure that the dose is appropriate for the amount of carbohydrate the patient consumed in the meal.

Hypoglycemia

Older adults with diabetes in LTC are especially vulnerable to hypoglycemia. They have a disproportionately high number of clinical complications and comorbidities that can increase hypoglycemia risk: impaired cognitive and renal function, slowed hormonal regulation and counterregulation, suboptimal hydration, variable appetite and nutritional intake, polypharmacy, and slowed intestinal absorption (113). Oral agents may achieve glycemic outcomes similar to basal insulin in LTC populations (80,114).

Another consideration for the LTC setting is that, unlike in the hospital setting, medical providers are not required to evaluate the patients daily. According to federal guidelines, assessments should be done at least every 30 days for the first 90 days after admission and then at least once every 60 days. Although in practice, the patients may actually be seen more frequently, the concern is that patients may have uncontrolled glucose levels or wide excursions without the practitioner being notified. Providers may make adjustments to treatment regimens by telephone, fax, or in person directly at the LTC facilities provided they are given timely notification of blood glucose management issues from a standardized alert system.

The following alert strategy could be considered:

1. Call provider immediately in cases of low blood glucose levels (<70 mg/dL [3.9 mmol/L]).
2. Call as soon as possible when
   a) glucose values are 70–100 mg/dL (3.9–5.6 mmol/L) (regimen may need to be adjusted),
   b) glucose values are consistently >250 mg/dL (13.9 mmol/L) within a 24-h period,
The management of the older adult at the end of life receiving palliative medicine or hospice care is a unique situation. Overall, palliative medicine promotes comfort, symptom control and prevention (pain, hypoglycemia, hyperglycemia, and dehydration), and preservation of dignity and quality of life in patients with limited life expectancy (111,115). In the setting of palliative care, providers should initiate conversations regarding the goals and intensity of diabetes care; strict glucose and blood pressure control may not be consistent with achieving comfort and quality of life. Avoidance of severe hypertension and hyperglycemia aligns with the goals of palliative care. In a multicenter trial, withdrawal of statins among older adults without dementia. Arch Intern Med 2012;7:1674–1681

1. A stable patient: Continue with the patient’s previous regimen, with a focus on 1) the prevention of hypoglycemia and 2) the management of hyperglycemia using blood glucose testing, keeping levels below the renal threshold of glucose, and hyperglycemia-mediated dehydration. There is no role for A1C monitoring.

2. A patient with organ failure: Preventing hypoglycemia is of greatest significance. Dehydration must be prevented and treated. In people with type 1 diabetes, insulin administration may be reduced as the oral intake of food decreases but should not be stopped. For those with type 2 diabetes, agents that may cause hypoglycemia should be reduced in dose. The main goal is to avoid hypoglycemia, allowing for glucose values in the upper level of the desired target range.

3. A dying patient: For patients with type 2 diabetes, the discontinuation of all medications may be a reasonable approach, as patients are unlikely to have any oral intake. In patients with type 1 diabetes, there is no consensus, but a small amount of basal insulin may maintain glucose levels and prevent acute hyperglycemic complications.

References
51. Park SW, Goodpaster BH, Strotmeyer ES, et al. Accelerated loss of skeletal muscle strength in older adults with type 2 diabetes: the...
group; Scottish Renal Registry. Estimated life expectancy in a Scottish cohort with type 1 diabetes, 2008-2010. JAMA 2015;313:37–44
14. Children and Adolescents: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2022

The American Diabetes Association (ADA) “Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes” includes the ADA’s current clinical practice recommendations and is intended to provide the components of diabetes care, general treatment goals and guidelines, and tools to evaluate quality of care. Members of the ADA Professional Practice Committee, a multidisciplinary expert committee (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SPPC), are responsible for updating the Standards of Care annually, or more frequently as warranted. For a detailed description of ADA standards, statements, and reports, as well as the evidence-grading system for ADA’s clinical practice recommendations, please refer to the Standards of Care Introduction (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SINT). Readers who wish to comment on the Standards of Care are invited to do so at professional.diabetes.org/SOC.

The management of diabetes in children and adolescents cannot simply be derived from care routinely provided to adults with diabetes. The epidemiology, pathophysiology, developmental considerations, and response to therapy in pediatric diabetes are often different from adult diabetes. There are also differences in recommended care for children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes, type 2 diabetes, and other forms of pediatric diabetes. This section is divided into two major parts: the first part addresses care for children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes, and the second part addresses care for children and adolescents with type 2 diabetes. Monogenic diabetes (neonatal diabetes and maturity-onset diabetes in the young [MODY]) and cystic fibrosis–related diabetes, which are often present in youth, are discussed in Section 2, “Classification and Diagnosis of Diabetes” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S002). Table 14.1A and Table 14.1B provide an overview of the recommendations for screening and treatment of complications and related conditions in pediatric type 1 diabetes and type 2 diabetes, respectively. In addition to comprehensive diabetes care, youth with diabetes should receive age- and developmentally appropriate pediatric care, including vaccines and immunizations as recommended by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) (1). To ensure continuity of care as an adolescent with diabetes becomes an adult, guidance is provided at the end of this section on the transition from pediatric to adult diabetes care.

Due to the nature of pediatric clinical research, the recommendations for children and adolescents with diabetes are less likely to be based on clinical trial evidence. However, expert opinion and a review of available and relevant experimental data are summarized in the American Diabetes Association (ADA) position statements “Type 1 Diabetes in Children and Adolescents” (2) and “Evaluation and Management of Youth-Onset Type 2 Diabetes” (3). Finally, other sections in the Standards of Care may have recommendations that apply to youth with diabetes and are referenced in the narrative of this section.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 14.1A—Recommendations for screening and treatment of complications and related conditions in pediatric type 1 diabetes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Thyroid disease</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Method</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>When to start</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Follow-up frequency</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Target</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Treatment</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ARBO, angiotensin receptor blocker; NA, not applicable; tTG, tissue transglutaminase. *Due to the potential teratogenic effects, females should receive reproductive counseling and medication should be avoided in females of childbearing age who are not using reliable contraception.
Table 14.18—Recommendations for screening and treatment of complications and related conditions in pediatric type 2 diabetes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complication</th>
<th>Corresponding recommendations</th>
<th>Hypertension</th>
<th>Nephropathy</th>
<th>Neuropathy</th>
<th>Retinopathy</th>
<th>Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease</th>
<th>Obstructive sleep apnea</th>
<th>Polycystic ovarian syndrome (for adolescent females)</th>
<th>Dyslipidemia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Albumin-to-creatinine ratio; random sample acceptable initially</td>
<td>Dilated fundoscopy</td>
<td>Foot exam with foot pulses, pinprick, 10-g monofilament sensation tests, vibration, and ankle reflexes</td>
<td>AST and ALT measurement</td>
<td>Screening for symptoms</td>
<td>Screening for symptoms; laboratory evaluation if positive symptoms</td>
<td>Lipid profile</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When to start</td>
<td>At diagnosis</td>
<td>At diagnosis</td>
<td>At diagnosis</td>
<td>At/soon after diagnosis</td>
<td>At diagnosis</td>
<td>At diagnosis</td>
<td>Soon after diagnosis, preferably after glycemia has improved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Follow-up frequency</td>
<td>Every visit</td>
<td>If normal, annually; if abnormal, repeat with confirmation in two of three samples over 6 months</td>
<td>If normal, annually</td>
<td>If normal, annually</td>
<td>Annually</td>
<td>Every visit</td>
<td>Every visit</td>
<td>Annually</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Target</td>
<td>&lt;90th percentile for age, sex, and height; if ≥13 years old, &lt;130/80 mmHg</td>
<td>&lt;30 mg/g</td>
<td>No neuropathy</td>
<td>No retinopathy</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>LDL &lt; 100 mg/dL, HDL &gt; 35 mg/dL, triglycerides &lt; 150 mg/dL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treatment</td>
<td>Lifestyle modification for elevated blood pressure (90th to &lt;95th percentile for age, sex, and height or, if ≥13 years old, 120–129/80 mmHg); lifestyle modification and ACE inhibitor or ARB* for hypertension (≥95th percentile for age, sex, and height or, if ≥13 years, ≥130/80 mmHg)</td>
<td>Optimize glucose and blood pressure control; ACE inhibitor* if albumin-to-creatinine ratio is elevated in two of three samples over 6 months</td>
<td>Optimize glucose control; referral to neurology</td>
<td>Optimize glucose control; treatment per ophthalmology</td>
<td>Refer to gastroenterology for persistently elevated or worsening transaminases</td>
<td>If positive symptoms, refer to sleep specialist and polysomnogram</td>
<td>If no contraindications, oral contraceptive pills; medical nutrition therapy; metformin</td>
<td>If abnormal, optimize glucose control and medical nutrition therapy; if after 6 months, LDL &gt; 130 mg/dL, initiate statin therapy (for those aged &gt;10 years)*; if triglycerides &gt; 400 mg/dL fasting or &gt; 1,000 mg/dL nonfasting, begin fibrate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Due to the potential teratogenic effects, females should receive reproductive counseling and medication should be avoided in females of childbearing age who are not using reliable contraception.

ARB, angiotensin receptor blocker; NA, not applicable. *Due to the potential teratogenic effects, females should receive reproductive counseling and medication should be avoided in females of childbearing age who are not using reliable contraception.
TYPE 1 DIABETES

Type 1 diabetes is the most common form of diabetes in youth (4), although data suggest that it may account for a large proportion of cases diagnosed in adult life (5). The provider must consider the unique aspects of care and management of children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes, such as changes in insulin sensitivity related to physical growth and sexual maturation, ability to provide self-care, supervision in the childcare and school environment, neurological vulnerability to hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia in young children, and possible adverse neurocognitive effects of diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) (6,7). Attention to family dynamics, developmental stages, and physiologic differences related to sexual maturity is essential in developing and implementing an optimal diabetes treatment plan (8).

A multidisciplinary team trained in pediatric diabetes management and sensitive to the challenges of children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes and their families should provide diabetes-specific care for this population. It is essential that diabetes self-management education and support, medical nutrition therapy, and psychosocial support be provided at diagnosis and regularly thereafter in a developmentally appropriate format that builds on prior knowledge by a team of health care professionals experienced with the biological, educational, nutritional, behavioral, and emotional needs of the growing child and family. The diabetes team, taking into consideration the youth’s developmental and psychosocial needs, should ask about and advise the youth and parents/caregivers about diabetes management responsibilities on an ongoing basis.

Diabetes Self-Management Education and Support

Recommendation

14.1 Youth with type 1 diabetes and their parents/caregivers (for patients aged <18 years) should receive culturally sensitive and developmentally appropriate individualized diabetes self-management education and support according to national standards at diagnosis and routinely thereafter. B

Self-management in pediatric diabetes involves both the youth and their parents/adult caregivers. No matter how sound the medical regimen is, it can only be effective if the family and/or affected individuals are able to implement it. Family involvement is a vital component of optimal diabetes management throughout childhood and adolescence. As parents/caregivers are critical to diabetes self-management in youth, diabetes care requires an approach that places the youth and their parents/caregivers at the center of the care model. The pediatric diabetes care team must be capable of evaluating the educational, behavioral, emotional, and psychosocial factors that impact the implementation of a treatment plan and must work with the youth and family to overcome barriers or redefine goals as appropriate. Diabetes self-management education and support requires periodic reassessment, especially as the youth grows, develops, and acquires the need and desire for greater independent self-care skills. The pediatric diabetes team should work with the youth and their parents/caregivers to ensure there is not a premature transfer of responsibilities for self-management to the youth during this time. In addition, it is necessary to assess the educational needs and skills of, and provide training to, day care workers, school nurses, and school personnel who are responsible for the care and supervision of the child with diabetes (9–11).

Nutrition Therapy

Recommendation

14.2 Individualized medical nutrition therapy is recommended for children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes as an essential component of the overall treatment plan. A

14.3 Monitoring carbohydrate intake, whether by carbohydrate counting or experience-based estimation, is a key component to optimizing glycemic management. B

14.4 Comprehensive nutrition education at diagnosis, with annual updates, by an experienced registered dietitian nutritionist, is recommended to assess caloric and nutrition intake in relation to weight status and cardiovascular disease risk factors and to inform macronutrient choices. E

Dietary management should be individualized: family habits, food preferences, religious or cultural needs, finances, schedules, physical activity, and the patient’s and family’s abilities in numeracy, literacy, and self-management should be considered. Visits with a registered dietitian nutritionist should include assessment for changes in food preferences over time, access to food, growth and development, weight status, cardiovascular risk, and potential for disordered eating. Dietary adherence is associated with better glycemic control in youth with type 1 diabetes (12).

Physical Activity and Exercise

Recommendation

14.5 Physical activity is recommended for all youth with type 1 diabetes with the goal of 60 min of moderate- to vigorous-intensity aerobic activity daily, with vigorous muscle-strengthening and bone-strengthening activities at least 3 days per week. C

14.6 Frequent glucose monitoring before, during, and after exercise, via blood glucose meter or continuous glucose monitoring, is important to prevent, detect, and treat hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia associated with exercise. C

14.7 Youth and their parents/caregivers should receive education on targets and management of glycemia before, during, and after physical activity, individualized according to the type and intensity of the planned physical activity. E

14.8 Youth and their parents/caregivers should be educated on strategies to prevent hypoglycemia during, after, and overnight following physical activity and exercise, which may include reducing prandial insulin dosing for the meal/snack preceding (and, if needed, following) exercise, reducing...
Physical activity and exercise positively impact metabolic and psychological health in children with type 1 diabetes (13). While it affects insulin sensitivity, physical fitness, strength building, weight management, social interaction, mood, self-esteem building, and the creation of healthful habits for adulthood, it also has the potential to cause both hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia.

See below for strategies to mitigate hypoglycemia risk and minimize hyperglycemia associated with exercise. For an in-depth discussion, see recently published reviews and guidelines (14–16).

Overall, it is recommended that youth participate in 60 min of moderate- (e.g., brisk walking, dancing) to vigorous- (e.g., running, jumping rope) intensity aerobic activity daily, including resistance and flexibility training (17). Although uncommon in the pediatric population, patients should be medically evaluated for comorbid conditions or diabetes complications that may restrict participation in an exercise program. As hyperglycemia can occur before, during, and after physical activity, it is important to ensure that the elevated glucose level is not related to insulin deficiency that would lead to worsening hyperglycemia with exercise and ketosis risk. Intense activity should be postponed with marked hyperglycemia (glucose ≥350 mg/dl [19.4 mmol/L]), moderate to large urine ketones, and/or β-hydroxybutyrate (B-OHB) >1.5 mmol/L. Caution may be needed when B-OHB levels are ≥0.6 mmol/L (12,14).

The prevention and treatment of hyperglycemia associated with physical activity include decreasing the prandial insulin for the meal/snack before exercise and/or increasing food intake. Patients on insulin pumps can lower basal rates by 10–50% or more or suspend for 1–2 h during exercise (18). Decreasing basal rates or long-acting insulin doses by 20% after exercise may reduce delayed exercise-induced hypoglycemia (19). Accessible rapid-acting carbohydrates and frequent blood glucose monitoring before, during, and after exercise, with or without continuous glucose monitoring (CGM), maximize safety with exercise.

Blood glucose targets prior to physical activity and exercise should be 126–180 mg/dl (7.0–10.0 mmol/L) but should be individualized based on the type, intensity, and duration of activity (14,20). Consider additional carbohydrate intake during and/or after exercise, depending on the duration and intensity of physical activity, to prevent hypoglycemia. For low- to moderate-intensity aerobic activities (30–60 min), and if the youth is fasting, 10–15 g of carbohydrate may prevent hypoglycemia (21). After insulin boluses (relative hyperinsulinemia), consider 0.5–1.0 g of carbohydrates/kg per hour of exercise (~30–60 g), which is similar to carbohydrate requirements to optimize performance in athletes without type 1 diabetes (22–24).

In addition, obesity is as common in children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes as in those without diabetes. It is associated with a higher frequency of cardiovascular risk factors, and it disproportionately affects racial/ethnic minorities in the U.S. (25–29). Therefore, diabetes care providers should monitor weight status and encourage a healthy diet, exercise, and healthy weight as key components of pediatric type 1 diabetes care.

School and Child Care
As a large portion of a child’s day is spent in school and/or day care, training of school or day care personnel to provide care in accordance with the child’s individualized diabetes medical management plan is essential for optimal diabetes management and safe access to all school or day care–sponsored opportunities (10,11,30). In addition, federal and state laws require schools, day care facilities, and other entities to provide needed diabetes care to enable the child to safely access the school or day care environment. Refer to the ADA position statements “Diabetes Care in the School Setting” (10) and “Care of Young Children With Diabetes in the Child Care Setting” (11) and ADA’s Safe at School website (www.diabetes.org/resources/know-your-rights/safe-at-school-state-laws) for additional details.

Psychosocial Issues

Recommendations

14.9 At diagnosis and during routine follow-up care, assess psychosocial issues and family stresses that could impact diabetes management and provide appropriate referrals to trained mental health professionals, preferably experienced in childhood diabetes. E

14.10 Mental health professionals should be considered integral members of the pediatric diabetes multidisciplinary team. E

14.11 Encourage developmentally appropriate family involvement in diabetes management tasks for children and adolescents, recognizing that premature transfer of diabetes care responsibility to the youth can result in diabetes burnout, suboptimal diabetes management, and deterioration in glycemic control. A

14.12 Providers should assess food security, housing stability/homelessness, health literacy, financial barriers, and social/community support and apply that information to treatment decisions. E

14.13 Providers should consider asking youth and their parents/caregivers about social adjustment (peer relationships) and school performance to determine whether further intervention is needed. B

14.14 Assess youth with diabetes for psychosocial and diabetes-related distress, generally starting at 7–8 years of age. B

14.15 Offer adolescents time by themselves with their care provider(s) starting at age 12 years, or when developmentally appropriate. E

14.16 Starting at puberty, preconception counseling should be incorporated into routine diabetes care for all girls of childbearing potential. A
Rapid and dynamic cognitive, developmental, and emotional changes occur during childhood, adolescence, and emerging adulthood. Diabetes management during childhood and adolescence places substantial burdens on the youth and family, necessitating ongoing assessment of psychosocial status, social determinants of health, and diabetes distress in the patient and the parents/caregivers during routine diabetes visits (31–39). It is important to consider the impact of diabetes on quality of life as well as the development of mental health problems related to diabetes distress, fear of hypoglycemia (and hyperglycemia), symptoms of anxiety, disordered eating behaviors and eating disorders, and symptoms of depression (40). Consider assessing youth for diabetes distress, generally starting at 7 or 8 years of age (41). Consider screening for depression and disordered eating behaviors using available screening tools (31,42). Early detection of depression, anxiety, disordered eating, and learning disabilities can facilitate effective treatment options and help minimize adverse effects on diabetes management and disease outcomes (36,41). There are validated tools, such as Problem Areas in Diabetes-Teen (PAID-T) and the parent version (P-PAID-T) (37), that can be used in assessing diabetes-specific distress in youth starting at age 12 years and in their parents/caregivers. Furthermore, the complexities of diabetes management require ongoing parental involvement in care throughout childhood with developmentally appropriate family teamwork between the growing child/teen and parent in order to maintain adherence and to prevent deterioration in glycemic control (43,44). As diabetes-specific family conflict is related to poorer adherence and glycemic control, it is appropriate to inquire about such conflict during visits and to either help to negotiate a plan for resolution or refer to an appropriate mental health specialist (45). Monitoring of social adjustment (peer relationships) and school performance can facilitate both well-being and academic achievement (46). Suboptimal glycemic control is a risk factor for underperformance at school and increased absenteeism (47).

Shared decision-making with youth regarding the adoption of regimen components and self-management behaviors can improve diabetes self-efficacy, adherence, and metabolic outcomes (26,48). Although cognitive abilities vary, the ethical position often adopted is the “mature minor rule,” whereby children after age 12 or 13 years who appear to be “mature” have the right to consent or withhold consent to general medical treatment, except in cases in which refusal would significantly endanger health (49).

Beginning at the onset of puberty or at diagnosis of diabetes, all adolescent females with childbearing potential should receive education about the risks of malformations associated with poor metabolic control and the use of effective contraception to prevent unplanned pregnancy. Preconception counseling using developmentally appropriate educational tools enables adolescent girls to make well-informed decisions (50). Preconception counseling resources tailored for adolescents are available at no cost through the ADA (51). Refer to the ADA position statement “Psychosocial Care for People With Diabetes” for further details (41).

Youth with type 1 diabetes have an increased risk of disordered eating behavior as well as clinical eating disorders with serious short-term and long-term negative effects on diabetes outcomes and health in general. It is important to recognize the unique and dangerous disordered eating behavior of insulin omission for weight control in type 1 diabetes (52) using tools such as the Diabetes Eating Problems Survey-Revised (DEPS-R) to allow for early diagnosis and intervention (42,53–55).

The presence of a mental health professional on pediatric multidisciplinary teams highlights the importance of attending to the psychosocial issues of diabetes. These psychosocial factors are significantly related to self-management difficulties, suboptimal glycemic control, reduced quality of life, and higher rates of acute and chronic diabetes complications.

**Glycemic Monitoring, Insulin Delivery, and Targets**

**Recommendations**

14.17 Begin screening youth with type 1 diabetes for disordered eating between 10 and 12 years of age. The Diabetes Eating Problems Survey-Revised (DEPS-R) is a reliable, valid, and brief screening tool for identifying disturbed eating behavior. B

14.18 All children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes should monitor glucose levels multiple times daily (up to 6–10 times/day by blood glucose meter or continuous glucose monitoring), including prior to meals and snacks, at bedtime, and as needed for safety in specific situations such as exercise, driving, or the presence of symptoms of hypoglycemia. B

14.19 Real-time continuous glucose monitoring B or intermittently scanned continuous glucose monitoring E should be offered for diabetes management in youth with diabetes on multiple daily injections or insulin pump therapy who are capable of using the device safely (either by themselves or with caregivers). The choice of device should be made based on patient circumstances, desires, and needs.

14.20 Automated insulin delivery systems should be offered for diabetes management to youth with type 1 diabetes who are capable of using the device safely (either by themselves or with caregivers). The choice of device should be made based on patient circumstances, desires, and needs. A

14.21 Insulin pump therapy alone should be offered for diabetes management to youth on multiple daily injections with type 1 diabetes who are capable of using the device safely (either by themselves or with caregivers). The choice of device should be made based on patient circumstances, desires, and needs. A

14.22 Students must be supported at school in the use of diabetes technology, including continuous glucose monitors, insulin pumps, connected
insulin pens, and automated insulin delivery systems as prescribed by their diabetes care team. E

14.23 A1C goals must be individualized and reassessed over time. An A1C of <7% (53 mmol/mol) is appropriate for many children. B

14.24 Less stringent A1C goals (such as <7.5% [58 mmol/mol]) may be appropriate for patients who cannot articulate symptoms of hypoglycemia; have hypoglycemia unawareness; lack access to analog insulins, advanced insulin delivery technology, and/or continuous glucose monitoring; cannot check blood glucose regularly; or have nonglycemic factors that increase A1C (e.g., high glycators). B

14.25 Even less stringent A1C goals (such as <8% [64 mmol/mol]) for selected individual patients if they can be achieved without significant hypoglycemia, negative impacts on well-being, or undue burden of care, or in those who have nonglycemic factors that decrease A1C (e.g., lower erythrocyte life span). Lower targets may also be appropriate during the honeymoon phase. B

14.26 Providers may reasonably suggest more stringent A1C goals (such as <6.5% [48 mmol/mol]) for selected individual patients if they can be achieved with continuous glucose monitoring metrics derived from continuous glucose monitor use over the most recent 14 days (or longer for patients with more glycemic variability), including time in range (70–180 mg/dL), time below target (<70 and <54 mg/dL), and time above target (>180 mg/dL)], are recommended to be used in conjunction with A1C whenever possible. E

Current standards for diabetes management reflect the need to minimize hyperglycemia as safely as possible. The Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT), which did not enroll children <13 years of age, demonstrated that near normalization of blood glucose levels was more difficult to achieve in adolescents than in adults. Nevertheless, the increased use of basal-bolus regimens, insulin pumps, frequent blood glucose monitoring, automated insulin delivery systems, goal setting, and improved patient education has been associated with more children and adolescents reaching the blood glucose targets recommended by the ADA (56–59), particularly in patients of families in which both the parents/caregivers and the child with diabetes participate jointly to perform the required diabetes-related tasks.

Lower A1C in adolescence and young adulthood is associated with a lower risk and rate of microvascular and macrovascular complications (60–64) and demonstrates the effects of metabolic memory (65–68).

In addition, type 1 diabetes can be associated with adverse effects on cognition during childhood and adolescence (6,69–71), and neurocognitive imaging differences related to hyperglycemia in children provide another motivation for achieving glycemic targets (6). DKA has been shown to cause adverse effects on brain development and function. Additional factors (72–75) that contribute to adverse effects on brain development and function include young age, severe hypoglycemia at <6 years of age, and chronic hyperglycemia (76,77). However, meticulous use of new therapeutic modalities such as rapid- and long-acting insulin analogs, technological advances (e.g., CGM, sensor-augmented pump therapy, and automated insulin delivery systems), and intensive self-management education now make it more feasible to achieve glycemic control while reducing the incidence of severe hypoglycemia (78–90).

In selecting individualized glycemic targets, the long-term health benefits of achieving a lower A1C should be balanced against the risks of hypoglycemia and the developmental burdens of intensive regimens in youth (91). Recent data with newer devices and insulins indicate that the risk of hypoglycemia with lower A1C is less than it was before (79,92–100). Some data suggest that there could be a threshold where lower A1C is associated with more hypoglycemia (101,102); however, the confidence intervals were large, suggesting great variability. In addition, achieving lower A1C levels is likely facilitated by setting lower A1C targets (103,104). Lower goals may be possible during the “honeymoon” phase of type 1 diabetes. Special consideration should be given to the risk of hypoglycemia in young children (aged <6 years) who are often unable to recognize, articulate, and/or manage hypoglycemia. However, registry data indicate that A1C targets can be achieved in children, including those aged <6 years, without increased risk of severe hypoglycemia (92,103). Recent data have demonstrated that the use of real-time CGM lowered A1C and increased time in range in adolescents and young adults and, in children aged <8 years old, was associated with a lower risk of hypoglycemia (105,106). Please refer to Section 6, “Glycemic Targets” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S006), for more information on glycemic assessment.

A strong relationship exists between the frequency of blood glucose monitoring and glycemic control (80–87, 107,108). Glucose levels for all children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes should be monitored multiple times daily by blood glucose monitoring or CGM. In the U.S., real-time CGM is approved for nonadjunctive use in children aged 2 years and older, and intermittently scanned CGM is approved for nonadjunctive use in children aged 4 years and older. Metrics derived from CGM include percent time in target range, below target range, and above target range (109). While studies indicate a relationship between time in range and A1C (110, 111), it is still uncertain what the ideal target time in range should be for children, and further studies are needed. Please refer to Section 7, “Diabetes Technology” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S007), for more information on the use of blood glucose meters, CGM, and insulin pumps. More information on insulin injection technique can be found in Section 9, “Pharmacologic Approaches to Glycemic Treatment” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S009).
Key Concepts in Setting Glycemic Targets

- Targets should be individualized, and lower targets may be reasonable based on a benefit-risk assessment.
- Blood glucose targets should be modified in children with frequent hypoglycemia or hypoglycemia unawareness.
- Postprandial blood glucose values should be measured when there is a discrepancy between preprandial blood glucose values and A1C levels and to assess preprandial insulin doses in those on basal-bolus or pump regimens.

Autoimmune Conditions

Recommendation 14.28 Assess for additional autoimmune conditions soon after the diagnosis of type 1 diabetes and if symptoms develop. B

Because of the increased frequency of other autoimmune diseases in type 1 diabetes, screening for thyroid dysfunction and celiac disease should be considered (112–116). Periodic screening in asymptomatic individuals has been recommended, but the optimal frequency of screening is unclear.

Although much less common than thyroid dysfunction and celiac disease, other autoimmune conditions, such as Addison disease (primary adrenal insufficiency), autoimmune hepatitis, autoimmune gastritis, dermatomyositis, and myasthenia gravis, occur more commonly in the population with type 1 diabetes than in the general pediatric population and should be assessed and monitored as clinically indicated. In addition, relatives of patients should be offered testing for islet autoantibodies through research studies (e.g., TrialNet) and national programs for early diagnosis of preclinical type 1 diabetes (stages 1 and 2).

Thyroid Disease

Recommendations

14.29 Consider testing children with type 1 diabetes for antithyroid peroxidase and antithyroglobulin antibodies soon after diagnosis. B

14.30 Measure thyroid-stimulating hormone concentrations at diagnosis when clinically stable or soon after optimizing glycemia. If normal, suggest rechecking every 1–2 years or sooner if the youth has positive thyroid antibodies or develops symptoms or signs suggestive of thyroid dysfunction, thyromegaly, an abnormal growth rate, or unexplained glycemic variability. B

Autoimmune thyroid disease is the most common autoimmune disorder associated with diabetes, occurring in 17–30% of individuals with type 1 diabetes (113,117,118). At the time of diagnosis, ~25% of children with type 1 diabetes have thyroid autoantibodies (119), the presence of which is predictive of thyroid dysfunction—most commonly hypothyroidism, although hyperthyroidism occurs in ~0.5% of patients with type 1 diabetes (120,121). For thyroid autoantibodies, a study from Sweden indicated that antithyroid peroxidase antibodies were more predictive than antithyroglobulin antibodies in multivariate analysis (122). Thyroid function tests may be misleading (euthyroid sick syndrome) if performed at the time of diagnosis owing to the effect of previous hyperglycemia, ketosis, or ketoadiposis, weight loss, etc. Therefore, if performed at diagnosis and slightly abnormal, thyroid function tests should be repeated soon after a period of metabolic stability and achievement of glycemic targets. Subclinical hypothyroidism may be associated with an increased risk of symptomatic hypoglycemia (123) and a reduced linear growth rate. Hyperthyroidism alters glucose metabolism and usually causes deterioration of glycemic control.

Celiac Disease

Recommendations

14.31 Screen youth with type 1 diabetes for celiac disease by measuring IgA tissue transglutaminase (tTG) antibodies, with documentation of normal total serum IgA levels, soon after the diagnosis of diabetes, or IgG tTG and deamidated gliadin antibodies if IgA is deficient. B

14.32 Repeat screening within 2 years of diabetes diagnosis and then again after 5 years and consider more frequent screening in youth who have symptoms or a first-degree relative with celiac disease. B

14.33 Individuals with confirmed celiac disease should be placed on a gluten-free diet for treatment and to avoid complications; they should also have a consultation with a dietitian experienced in managing both diabetes and celiac disease. B

Celiac disease is an immune-mediated disorder that occurs with increased frequency in patients with type 1 diabetes (1.6–16.4% of individuals compared with 0.3–1% in the general population) (112,115,116,124–128). Screening patients with type 1 diabetes for celiac disease is further justified by its association with osteoporosis, iron deficiency, growth failure, and potential increased risk of retinopathy and albuminuria (129–132).

Screening for celiac disease includes measuring serum levels of IgA and tissue transglutaminase (tTG) IgA antibodies, or, with IgA deficiency, screening can include measuring tTG IgG antibodies or deamidated gliadin peptide IgG antibodies. Because most cases of celiac disease are diagnosed within the first 5 years after the diagnosis of type 1 diabetes, screening should be considered at the time of diagnosis and repeated at 2 and then 5 years (126) or if clinical symptoms indicate, such as poor growth or increased hypoglycemia (127,129).

Although celiac disease can be diagnosed more than 10 years after diabetes diagnosis, there are insufficient data after 5 years to determine the optimal screening frequency. Measurement of tTG antibody should be considered at other times in patients with symptoms suggestive of celiac disease (126). Monitoring for symptoms should include an assessment of linear growth and weight gain (127,129). A small bowel biopsy in antibody-positive children is recommended to confirm the diagnosis (133). European guidelines on screening for celiac disease in children (not specific to children with type 1 diabetes) suggest that biopsy may not be necessary in symptomatic children with high antibody titers (i.e., greater than 10 times the
upper limit of normal) provided that further testing is performed (verification of endomyosal antibody positivity on a separate blood sample). Whether this approach may be appropriate for asymptomatic children in high-risk groups remains an open question, though evidence is emerging (134). It is also advisable to check for celiac disease–associated HLA types in patients who are diagnosed without a small intestinal biopsy. In symptomatic children with type 1 diabetes and confirmed celiac disease, gluten-free diets reduce symptoms and rates of hypoglycemia (135). The challenging dietary restrictions associated with having both type 1 diabetes and celiac disease place a significant burden on individuals. Therefore, a biopsy to confirm the diagnosis of celiac disease is recommended, especially in asymptomatic children, before establishing a diagnosis of celiac disease (136) and endorsing significant dietary changes. A gluten-free diet was beneficial in asymptomatic adults with positive antibodies confirmed by biopsy (137).

### Management of Cardiovascular Risk Factors

#### Hypertension Screening

**Recommendation**

14.34 Blood pressure should be measured at every routine visit. In youth with high blood pressure (blood pressure ≥90th percentile for age, sex, and height or, in adolescents aged ≥13 years, blood pressure ≥120/80 mmHg) on three separate measurements, ambulatory blood pressure monitoring should be strongly considered. B

**Hypertension Treatment**

**Recommendations**

14.35 Treatment of elevated blood pressure (defined as 90th to <95th percentile for age, sex, and height or, in adolescents aged ≥13 years, 120–129/<80 mmHg) is lifestyle modification focused on healthy nutrition, physical activity, sleep, and, if appropriate, weight management. C

14.36 In addition to lifestyle modification, ACE inhibitors or angiotensin receptor blockers should be started for treatment of confirmed hypertension (defined as blood pressure consistently ≥95th percentile for age, sex, and height or, in adolescents aged ≥13 years, ≥130/80 mmHg). Due to the potential teratogenic effects, females should receive reproductive counseling and ACE inhibitors and angiotensin receptor blockers should be avoided in females of childbearing age who are not using reliable contraception. B

14.37 The goal of treatment is blood pressure <90th percentile for age, sex, and height or, in adolescents aged ≥13 years, <130/80 mmHg. C

Blood pressure measurements should be performed using the appropriate size cuff with the youth seated and relaxed. Elevated blood pressure should be confirmed on at least three separate days, and ambulatory blood pressure monitoring should be considered. Evaluation should proceed as clinically indicated (138,139). Treatment is generally initiated with an ACE inhibitor, but an angiotensin receptor blocker can be used if the ACE inhibitor is not tolerated (e.g., due to cough) (140).

**Dyslipidemia Screening**

**Recommendations**

14.38 Initial lipid profile should be performed soon after diagnosis, preferably after glycemia has improved and age is ≥2 years. If initial LDL cholesterol is ≤100 mg/dL (2.6 mmol/L), subsequent testing should be performed at 9–11 years of age. B Initial testing may be done with a nonfasting non-HDL cholesterol level with confirmatory testing with a fasting lipid panel.

14.39 If LDL cholesterol values are within the accepted risk level (<100 mg/dL [2.6 mmol/L]), a lipid profile repeated every 3 years is reasonable. E

**Dyslipidemia Treatment**

**Recommendations**

14.40 If lipids are abnormal, initial therapy should consist of optimizing glycemia and medical nutrition therapy to limit the amount of calories from fat to 25–30% and saturated fat to <7%, limit cholesterol to <200 mg/day, avoid trans fats, and aim for ~10% calories from monounsaturated fats. A

14.41 After the age of 10 years, addition of a statin may be considered in patients who, despite medical nutrition therapy and lifestyle changes, continue to have LDL cholesterol >160 mg/dL (4.1 mmol/L) or LDL cholesterol >130 mg/dL (3.4 mmol/L) and one or more cardiovascular disease risk factors. E Due to the potential teratogenic effects, females should receive reproductive counseling and statins should be avoided in females of childbearing age who are not using reliable contraception. B

14.42 The goal of therapy is an LDL cholesterol value <100 mg/dL (2.6 mmol/L). E

Population-based studies estimate that 14–45% of children with type 1 diabetes have two or more atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease (ASCVD) risk factors (141–143), and the prevalence of cardiovascular disease (CVD) risk factors increase with age (143) and among racial/ethnic minorities (25), with girls having a higher risk burden than boys (142).

**Pathophysiology.** The atherosclerotic process begins in childhood, and although ASCVD events are not expected to occur during childhood, observations using a variety of methodologies show that youth with type 1 diabetes may have subclinical CVD within the first decade of diagnosis (144–146). Studies of carotid intima-media thick-
ness have yielded inconsistent results (139,140).

Screening. Diabetes predisposes to the development of accelerated atherosclerosis. Lipid evaluation for these patients contributes to risk assessment and identifies an important proportion of those with dyslipidemia. Therefore, initial screening should be done soon after diagnosis. If the initial screen is normal, subsequent screening may be done at 9–11 years of age, which is a stable time for lipid assessment in children (147). Children with a primary lipid disorder (e.g., familial hyperlipidemia) should be referred to a lipid specialist. Non-HDL cholesterol level has been identified as a significant predictor of the presence of atherosclerosis—as powerful as any other lipoprotein cholesterol measure in children and adolescents. For both children and adults, non-HDL cholesterol level seems to be more predictive of persistent dyslipidemia and, therefore, atherosclerosis and future events than total cholesterol, LDL cholesterol, or HDL cholesterol levels alone. A major advantage of non-HDL cholesterol is that it can be accurately calculated in a nonfasting state and is therefore practical to obtain in clinical practice as a screening test (148). Youth with type 1 diabetes have a high prevalence of lipid abnormalities (141,149).

Even if normal, screening should be repeated within 3 years, as glycemic control and other cardiovascular risk factors can change dramatically during adolescence (150).

Treatment. Pediatric lipid guidelines provide some guidance relevant to children with type 1 diabetes and secondary dyslipidemia (139,147,151,152); however, there are few studies on modifying lipid levels in children with type 1 diabetes. A 6-month trial of dietary counseling produced a significant improvement in lipid levels (153); likewise, a lifestyle intervention trial with 6 months of exercise in adolescents demonstrated improvement in lipid levels (154). Data from the SEARCH for Diabetes in Youth (SEARCH) study show that improved glucose over a 2-year period is associated with a more favorable lipid profile; however, improved glycemia alone will not normalize lipids in youth with type 1 diabetes and dyslipidemia (150).

Although intervention data are sparse, the American Heart Association categorizes children with type 1 diabetes in the highest tier for cardiovascular risk and recommends both lifestyle and pharmacologic treatment for those with elevated LDL cholesterol levels (152,155). Initial therapy should include a nutrition plan that restricts saturated fat to 7% of total calories and dietary cholesterol to 200 mg/day. Data from randomized clinical trials in children as young as 7 months of age indicate that this diet is safe and does not interfere with normal growth and development (156).

Neither long-term safety nor cardiovascular outcome efficacy of statin therapy has been established for children; however, studies have shown short-term safety equivalent to that seen in adults and efficacy in lowering LDL cholesterol levels in familial hypercholesterolemia or severe hyperlipidemia, improving endothelial function and causing regression of carotid intimal thickening (157,158). Statins are not approved for patients aged <10 years, and statin treatment should generally not be used in children with type 1 diabetes before this age. Statins are contraindicated in pregnancy; therefore, the prevention of unplanned pregnancies is of paramount importance. Statins should be avoided in females of childbearing age who are not using reliable contraception (see Section 15, “Management of Diabetes in Pregnancy,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S015, for more information). The multicenter, randomized, placebo-controlled Adolescent Type 1 Diabetes Cardio-Renal Intervention Trial (AdDIT) provides safety data on pharmacologic treatment with an ACE inhibitor and statin in adolescents with type 1 diabetes (139).

The adverse health effects of smoking are well recognized with respect to future cancer and CVD risk. Despite this, smoking rates are significantly higher among youth with diabetes than among youth without diabetes (159,160). In youth with diabetes, it is important to avoid additional CVD risk factors. Smoking increases the risk of the onset of albuminuria; therefore, smoking avoidance is important to prevent both microvascular and macrovascular complications (147,161).

Discouraging cigarette smoking, including electronic cigarettes (162,163), is an important part of routine diabetes care. In light of recent CDC evidence of deaths related to electronic cigarette use (164,165), no individuals should be advised to use electronic cigarettes, either as a way to stop smoking tobacco or as a recreational drug. In younger children, it is important to assess exposure to cigarette smoke in the home because of the adverse effects of secondhand smoke and to discourage youth from ever smoking.

Microvascular Complications

Nephropathy Screening

Recommendation

14.45 Annual screening for albuminuria with a random (morning sample preferred to avoid effects of exercise) spot urine sample for albumin-to-creatinine ratio should be considered at puberty or at age >10 years, whichever is earlier, once the child has had diabetes for 5 years. B

Nephropathy Treatment

Recommendation

14.46 An ACE inhibitor or an angiotensin receptor blocker, titrated to normalization of albumin excretion, may be considered when elevated urinary albumin-to-creatinine ratio (>30 mg/g) is documented (two of three urine samples obtained over a 6-month interval following efforts to improve glycemic control and normalize blood pressure). E Due to the potential teratogenic effects, females should receive reproductive counseling and ACE inhibitors...
Data from 7,549 participants <20 years of age in the T1D Exchange clinic registry emphasize the importance of good glycemic and blood pressure control, particularly as diabetes duration increases, in order to reduce the risk of diabetic kidney disease. The data also underscore the importance of routine screening to ensure early diagnosis and timely treatment of albuminuria (166). An estimation of glomerular filtration rate (GFR), calculated using GFR estimating equations from the serum creatinine, height, age, and sex (167), should be considered at baseline and repeated as indicated based on clinical status, age, diabetes duration, and therapies. Improved methods are needed to screen for early GFR loss, since estimated GFR is inaccurate at GFR >60 mL/min/1.73 m^2 (167,168). The AdDIT study in adolescents with type 1 diabetes demonstrated the safety of ACE inhibitor treatment, but the treatment did not change the albumin-to-creatinine ratio over the course of the study (139).

**Retinopathy**

**Recommendations**

14.47 An initial dilated and comprehensive eye examination is recommended once youth have had type 1 diabetes for 3–5 years, provided they are aged ≥11 years or puberty has started, whichever is earlier. B

14.48 After the initial examination, repeat dilated and comprehensive eye examination every 2 years. Less frequent examinations, every 4 years, may be acceptable on the advice of an eye care professional and based on risk factor assessment, including a history of A1C <8%. B

14.49 Programs that use retinal photography (with remote reading or use of a validated assessment tool) to improve access to diabetic retinopathy screening can be appropriate screening strategies for diabetic retinopathy. Such programs need to provide pathways for timely referral for a comprehensive eye examination when indicated. E

Retinopathy (like albuminuria) most commonly occurs after the onset of puberty and after 5–10 years of diabetes duration (169). It is currently recognized that there is a low risk of development of vision-threatening retinal lesions prior to 12 years of age (170,171). A 2019 publication based on the follow-up of the DCCT adolescent cohort supports a lower frequency of eye examinations than previously recommended, particularly in adolescents with A1C closer to the target range (172,173). Referrals should be made to eye care professionals with expertise in diabetic retinopathy and experience in counseling pediatric patients and families on the importance of prevention, early detection, and intervention.

**Neuropathy**

**Recommendation**

14.50 Consider an annual comprehensive foot exam at the start of puberty or at age ≥10 years, whichever is earlier, once the youth has had type 1 diabetes for 5 years. B

Diabetic neuropathy rarely occurs in prepubertal children or after only 1–2 years of diabetes (169), although data suggest a prevalence of distal peripheral neuropathy of 7% in 1,734 youth with type 1 diabetes and association with the presence of CVD risk factors (174,175). A comprehensive foot exam, including inspection, palpation of dorsalis pedis and posterior tibial pulses, and determination of proprioception, vibration, and monofilament sensation, should be performed annually along with an assessment of symptoms of neuropathic pain (175). Foot inspection can be performed at each visit to educate youth regarding the importance of foot care (see Section 12, “Retinopathy, Neuropathy, and Foot Care,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S012).

**TYPE 2 DIABETES**

For information on risk-based screening for type 2 diabetes and prediabetes in children and adolescents, please refer to Section 2, “Classification and Diagnosis of Diabetes” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S002). For additional support for these recommendations, see the ADA position statement “Evaluation and Management of Youth-Onset Type 2 Diabetes” (3).

Type 2 diabetes in youth has increased over the past 20 years, and recent estimates suggest an incidence of ~5,000 new cases per year in the U.S. (176). The CDC published projections for type 2 diabetes prevalence using the SEARCH database; assuming a 2.3% annual increase, the prevalence in those under 20 years of age will quadruple in 40 years (177,178).

Evidence suggests that type 2 diabetes in youth is different not only from type 1 diabetes but also from type 2 diabetes in adults and has unique features, such as a more rapidly progressive decline in β-cell function and accelerated development of diabetes complications (3,179). Long-term follow-up data from the Treatment Options for Type 2 Diabetes in Adolescents and Youth (TODAY) study showed that a majority of individuals with type 2 diabetes diagnosed as youth had microvascular complications by young adulthood (180). Type 2 diabetes disproportionately impacts youth of ethnic and racial minorities and can occur in complex psychosocial and cultural environments, which may make it difficult to sustain healthy lifestyle changes and self-management behaviors (26,181–184). Additional risk factors associated with type 2 diabetes in youth include adiposity, family history of diabetes, female sex, and low socioeconomic status (179).

As with type 1 diabetes, youth with type 2 diabetes spend much of the day in school. Therefore, close communication with and the cooperation of school personnel are essential for optimal diabetes management, safety, and maximal academic opportunities.

**Screening and Diagnosis**

**Recommendations**

14.51 Risk-based screening for prediabetes and/or type 2 diabetes should be considered after the onset of puberty or ≥10 years...
of age, whichever occurs earlier, in youth with overweight (BMI ≥ 85th percentile) or obesity (BMI ≥ 95th percentile) and who have one or more additional risk factors for diabetes (see Table 2.4 for evidence grading of other risk factors).

14.52 If screening is normal, repeat screening at a minimum of 3-year intervals E, or more frequently if BMI is increasing. C

14.53 Fasting plasma glucose, 2-h plasma glucose during a 75-g oral glucose tolerance test, and A1C can be used to test for prediabetes or diabetes in children and adolescents. B

14.54 Children and adolescents with overweight or obesity in whom the diagnosis of type 2 diabetes is being considered should have a panel of pancreatic autoantibodies tested to exclude the possibility of autoimmune type 1 diabetes. B

In the last decade, the incidence and prevalence of type 2 diabetes in adolescents has increased dramatically, especially in racial and ethnic minority populations (147,185). A few studies suggest oral glucose tolerance tests or fasting plasma glucose values as more suitable diagnostic tests than A1C in the pediatric population, especially among certain ethnicities (186), although fasting glucose alone may overdiagnose diabetes in children (187,188). In addition, many of these studies do not recognize that diabetes diagnostic criteria are based on long-term health outcomes, and validations are not currently available in the pediatric population (189). A recent analysis of National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES) data suggests using A1C for screening of high-risk youth (190).

The ADA acknowledges the limited data supporting A1C for diagnosing type 2 diabetes in children and adolescents. Although A1C is not recommended for diagnosis of diabetes in children with cystic fibrosis or symptoms suggestive of acute onset of type 1 diabetes, and only A1C assays without interference are appropriate for children with hemoglobinopathies, the ADA continues to recommend A1C for diagnosis of type 2 diabetes in this population (191,192).

**Diagnostic Challenges**

Given the current obesity epidemic, distinguishing between type 1 and type 2 diabetes in children can be difficult. Overweight and obesity are common in children with type 1 diabetes (27), and diabetes-associated autoantibodies and ketosis may be present in pediatric patients with clinical features of type 2 diabetes (including obesity and acanthosis nigricans) (187). The presence of islet autoantibodies has been associated with faster progression to insulin deficiency (187). At the onset, DKA occurs in ~6% of youth aged 10–19 years with type 2 diabetes (193). Although uncommon, type 2 diabetes has been observed in prepubertal children under the age of 10 years, and thus it should be part of the differential in children with suggestive symptoms (194). Finally, obesity contributes to the development of type 1 diabetes in some individuals (195), which further blurs the lines between diabetes types. However, accurate diagnosis is critical, as treatment regimens, educational approaches, dietary advice, and outcomes differ markedly between patients with the two diagnoses. The significant diagnostic difficulties posed by MODY are discussed in Section 2, “Classification and Diagnosis of Diabetes” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S002). In addition, there are rare and atypical diabetes cases that represent a challenge for clinicians and researchers.

**Glycemic Targets**

**Recommendations**

14.60 Blood glucose monitoring should be individualized, taking into consideration the pharmacologic treatment of the patient. E

14.61 Real-time continuous glucose monitoring or intermittently scanned continuous glucose monitoring should be offered for diabetes management in youth with type 2 diabetes on multiple daily injections or continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion who are capable of using the device safely (either by themselves or with a caregiver). The choice of device should be made based on patient circumstances, desires, and needs. E

14.62 Glycemic status should be assessed every 3 months. E
14.63 A reasonable A1C target for most children and adolescents with type 2 diabetes is <7% (53 mmol/mol). More stringent A1C targets (such as <6.5% [48 mmol/mol]) may be appropriate for selected individual patients if they can be achieved without significant hypoglycemia or other adverse effects of treatment. Appropriate patients might include those with a short duration of diabetes and lesser degrees of β-cell dysfunction and patients treated with lifestyle or metformin only who achieve significant weight improvement. E

14.64 Less stringent A1C goals (such as 7.5% [58 mmol/mol]) may be appropriate if there is an increased risk of hypoglycemia. E

14.65 A1C targets for patients on insulin should be individualized, taking into account the relatively low rates of hyperglycemia in youth-onset type 2 diabetes. E

**Pharmacologic Management**

**Recommendations**

14.66 Initiate pharmacologic therapy, in addition to behavioral counseling for healthful nutrition and physical activity changes, at diagnosis of type 2 diabetes. A

14.67 In incidentally diagnosed or metabolically stable patients (A1C <8.5% [69 mmol/mol] and asymptomatic), metformin is the initial pharmacologic treatment of choice if renal function is normal. A

14.68 Youth with marked hyperglycemia (blood glucose ≥250 mg/dL [13.9 mmol/L], A1C ≥8.5% [69 mmol/mol] without acidoses at diagnosis who are symptomatic with polyuria, polydipsia, nocturia, and/or weight loss should be treated initially with basal insulin while metformin is initiated and titrated. B

14.69 In patients with ketosis/ketoacidosis, treatment with subcutaneous or intravenous insulin should be initiated to rapidly correct the hyperglycemia and the metabolic derangement. Once acidosis is resolved, metformin should be initiated while subcutaneous insulin therapy is continued. A

14.70 In individuals presenting with severe hyperglycemia (blood glucose ≥600 mg/dL [33.3 mmol/L]), consider assessment for hyperglycemic hyperosmolar nonketotic syndrome. A

14.71 If glycemic targets are no longer met with metformin (with or without basal insulin), glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonist therapy approved for youth with type 2 diabetes should be considered in children 10 years of age or older if they have no past medical history or family history of medullary thyroid carcinoma or multiple endocrine neoplasia type 2. A

14.72 Patients treated with metformin, a glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonist, and basal insulin who do not meet glycemic targets should be moved to multiple daily injections with basal and premeal bolus insulins or insulin pump therapy. E

14.73 In patients initially treated with insulin and metformin who are meeting glucose targets based on blood glucose monitoring, insulin can be tapered over 2–6 weeks by decreasing the insulin dose 10–30% every few days. B

14.74 Use of medications not approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration for youth with type 2 diabetes is not recommended outside of research trials. B

Treatment of youth-onset type 2 diabetes should include lifestyle management, diabetes self-management education, and pharmacologic treatment. Initial treatment of youth with obesity and diabetes must take into account that diabetes type is often uncertain in the first few weeks of treatment due to overlap in presentation and that a substantial percentage of youth with type 2 diabetes will present with clinically significant ketoacidosis (196). Therefore, initial therapy should address the hyperglycemia and associated metabolic derangements irrespective of ultimate diabetes type, with adjustment of therapy once metabolic compensation has been established and subsequent information, such as islet autoantibody results, becomes available. Fig. 14.1 provides an approach to the initial treatment of new-onset diabetes in youth with overweight or obesity with clinical suspicion of type 2 diabetes.

Glycemic targets should be individualized, taking into consideration the long-term health benefits of more stringent targets and risk for adverse effects, such as hypoglycemia. A lower target A1C in youth with type 2 diabetes when compared with those recommended in type 1 diabetes is justified by a lower risk of hypoglycemia and higher risk of complications (180,197–200).

Self-management in pediatric diabetes involves both the youth and their parents/adult caregivers. Patients and their families should receive counseling for healthful nutrition and physical activity changes such as eating a balanced diet, achieving and maintaining a healthy weight, and exercising regularly. Physical activity should include aerobic, muscle-strengthening, and bone-strengthening activities (17). A family-centered approach to nutrition and lifestyle modification is essential in children and adolescents with type 2 diabetes, and nutrition recommendations should be culturally appropriate and sensitive to family resources (see Section 5, “Facilitating Behavior Change and Well-being to Improve Health Outcomes,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-5005). Given the complex social and environmental context surrounding youth with type 2 diabetes, individual-level lifestyle interventions may not be sufficient to target the complex interplay of family dynamics, mental health, community readiness, and the broader environmental system (3).

A multidisciplinary diabetes team, including a physician, diabetes care and education specialist, registered dietitian nutritionist, and psychologist or social worker, is essential. In addition to achieving glycemic targets and self-management...
education (201–203), initial treatment must include management of comorbidities such as obesity, dyslipidemia, hypertension, and microvascular complications.

Current pharmacologic treatment options for youth-onset type 2 diabetes are limited to three approved drug classes: insulin, metformin, and glucagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonists. Presentation with ketoacidosis or marked ketosis requires a period of insulin therapy until fasting and postprandial glycemia have been restored to normal or near-normal levels. Insulin pump therapy may be considered as an option for those on long-term multiple daily injections who are able to safely manage the device. Initial treatment should also be with insulin when the distinction between type 1 diabetes and type 2 diabetes is unclear in patients who have random blood glucose concentrations ≥250 mg/dL (13.9 mmol/L) and/or A1C ≥8.5% (69 mmol/mol) (204). Metformin therapy should be added after resolution of ketosis/ketoacidosis.

When initial insulin treatment is not required, initiation of metformin is recommended. The TODAY study found that metformin alone provided durable glycemic control (A1C ≤8% [64 mmol/mol] for 6 months) in approximately half of the subjects (205). The Restoring Insulin Secretion (RISE) Consortium study did not demonstrate differences in measures of glucose or β-cell function preservation between metformin and insulin, but there was more weight gain with insulin (206).

To date, the TODAY study is the only trial combining lifestyle and metformin therapy in youth with type 2 diabetes; the combination did not perform better than metformin alone in achieving durable glycemic control (205).

A randomized clinical trial in youth aged 10–17 years with type 2 diabetes demonstrated the addition of subcutaneous liraglutide (up to 1.8 mg daily) to metformin (with or without basal insulin) as safe and effective to decrease A1C (estimated decrease of 1.06 percentage points at 26 weeks and 1.30 at 52 weeks), although it did increase the frequency of gastrointestinal side effects (207). Liraglutide and once-weekly exenatide extended release are approved for the treatment of type 2 diabetes in youth aged 10 years or older (208,209).

Home blood glucose monitoring regimens should be individualized, taking into consideration the pharmacologic treatment of the patient. Although data on CGM in youth with type 2 diabetes are sparse (210), CGM could be considered in individuals requiring frequent blood glucose monitoring for diabetes management.

**Metabolic Surgery**

**Recommendations**

14.75 Metabolic surgery may be considered for the treatment of adolescents with type 2 diabetes who have severe obesity (BMI >35 kg/m²) and who have uncontrolled glycaemia and/or serious comorbidities despite lifestyle and pharmacologic intervention.
The results of weight loss and lifestyle interventions for obesity in children and adolescents have been disappointing, and treatment options are limited. As an adjunct to lifestyle therapy, liraglutide (3.0 mg) was recently approved for adolescents aged 12 to 17 years with a body weight of at least 60 kg and an initial BMI corresponding to ≥30 kg/m² for adults (211,212). Over the last decade, weight loss surgery has been increasingly performed in adolescents with obesity. Small retrospective analyses and a prospective multicenter, nonrandomized study suggest that bariatric or metabolic surgery may have benefits in adolescents with obesity and type 2 diabetes similar to those observed in adults. Teenagers experience similar degrees of weight loss, diabetes remission, and improvement of cardiometabolic risk factors for at least 3 years after surgery (213). A secondary data analysis from the Teen-Longitudinal Assessment of Bariatric Surgery (TeenLABS) and TODAY studies suggests surgical treatment of adolescents with severe obesity and type 2 diabetes is associated with improved glycemic control (214); however, no randomized trials have yet compared the effectiveness and safety of surgery to those of conventional treatment options in adolescents (215). The guidelines used as an indication for metabolic surgery in adolescents generally include BMI >35 kg/m² with comorbidities or BMI >40 kg/m² with or without comorbidities (216–227). A number of groups, including the Pediatric Bariatric Study Group and Teen-LABS study, have demonstrated the effectiveness of metabolic surgery in adolescents (220–226).

Prevention and Management of Diabetes Complications

**Hypertension**

**Recommendations**

14.77 Blood pressure should be measured at every visit. In youth with high blood pressure (blood pressure ≥90th percentile for age, sex, and height or, in adolescents aged ≥13 years, ≥120/80 mmHg) on three separate measurements, ambulatory blood pressure monitoring should be strongly considered.

14.78 Treatment of elevated blood pressure (defined as 90th to <95th percentile for age, sex, and height or, in adolescents aged ≥13 years, 120–129/<80 mmHg) is lifestyle modification focused on healthy nutrition, physical activity, sleep, and, if appropriate, weight management.

14.79 In addition to lifestyle modification, ACE inhibitors or angiotensin receptor blockers should be started for treatment of confirmed hypertension (defined as blood pressure consistently ≥95th percentile for age, sex, and height or, in adolescents aged ≥13 years, ≥130/80 mmHg). Due to the potential teratogenic effects, females should receive reproductive counseling and ACE inhibitors and angiotensin receptor blockers should be avoided in females of childbearing age who are not using reliable contraception.

14.80 The goal of treatment is blood pressure <90th percentile for age, sex, and height or, in adolescents aged ≥13 years, <130/80 mmHg.

14.83 Estimated glomerular filtration rate should be determined at the time of diagnosis and annually thereafter.

14.84 In patients with diabetes and hypertension, either an ACE inhibitor or an angiotensin receptor blocker is recommended for those with modestly elevated urinary albumin-to-creatinine ratio (30–299 mg/g creatinine) and is strongly recommended for those with urinary albumin-to-creatinine ratio >300 mg/g creatinine and/or estimated glomerular filtration rate <60 mL/min/1.73 m². Due to the potential teratogenic effects, females should receive reproductive counseling and ACE inhibitors and angiotensin receptor blockers should be avoided in females of childbearing age who are not using reliable contraception.

14.85 For those with nephropathy, continued monitoring (yearly urinary albumin-to-creatinine ratio, estimated glomerular filtration rate, and serum potassium) may aid in assessing adherence and detecting progression of disease.

14.86 Referral to nephrology is recommended in case of uncertainty of etiology, worsening urinary albumin-to-creatinine ratio, or decrease in estimated glomerular filtration rate.

**Neuropathy**

**Recommendations**

14.81 Protein intake should be at the recommended daily allowance of 0.8 g/kg/day.

14.82 Urine albumin-to-creatinine ratio should be obtained at the time of diagnosis and annually thereafter. An elevated urine albumin-to-creatinine ratio (>30 mg/g creatinine) should be confirmed on two of three samples.

14.88 Prevention should focus on achieving glycemic targets.
Retinopathy

Recommendations

14.89 Screening for retinopathy should be performed by dilated fundoscopy at or soon after diagnosis and annually thereafter. B

14.90 Optimizing glycemia is recommended to decrease the risk or slow the progression of retinopathy. B

14.91 Less frequent examination (every 2 years) may be considered if achieving glycemic targets and a normal eye exam. C

14.92 Programs that use retinal photography (with remote reading or use of a validated assessment tool) to improve access to diabetic retinopathy screening can be appropriate screening strategies for diabetic retinopathy. Such programs need to provide pathways for timely referral for a comprehensive eye examination when indicated. E

Nonalcoholic Fatty Liver Disease

Recommendations

14.93 Evaluation for nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (by measuring AST and ALT) should be done at diagnosis and annually thereafter. B

14.94 Referral to gastroenterology should be considered for persistently elevated or worsening transaminases. B

Obstructive Sleep Apnea

Recommendation

14.95 Screening for symptoms of sleep apnea should be done at each visit, and referral to a pediatric sleep specialist for evaluation and a polysomnogram, if indicated, is recommended. Obstructive sleep apnea should be treated when documented. B

Polycystic Ovary Syndrome

Recommendations

14.96 Evaluate for polycystic ovary syndrome in female adolescents with type 2 diabetes, including laboratory studies when indicated. B

14.97 Oral contraceptive pills for treatment of polycystic ovary syndrome are not contraindicated for girls with type 2 diabetes. C

14.98 Metformin in addition to lifestyle modification is likely to improve the menstrual cyclicity and hyperandrogenism in girls with type 2 diabetes. E

Cardiovascular Disease

Recommendation

14.99 Intensive lifestyle interventions focusing on weight loss, dyslipidemia, hypertension, and dysglycemia are important to prevent overt macrovascular disease in early adulthood. E

Dyslipidemia

Recommendations

14.100 Lipid screening should be performed initially after optimizing glycemia and annually thereafter. B

14.101 Optimal goals are LDL cholesterol <100 mg/dL (2.6 mmol/L), HDL cholesterol >35 mg/dL (0.91 mmol/L), and triglycerides <150 mg/dL (1.7 mmol/L). E

14.102 If lipids are abnormal, initial therapy should consist of optimizing glucose control and medical nutritional therapy to limit the amount of calories from fat to 25–30% and saturated fat to <7%, limit cholesterol to <200 mg/day, avoid trans fats, and aim for ~10% calories from monounsaturated fats for elevated LDL. For elevated triglycerides, medical nutrition therapy should also focus on decreasing simple sugar intake and increasing dietary n-3 fatty acids in addition to the above changes. A

14.103 If LDL cholesterol remains >130 mg/dL after 6 months of dietary intervention, initiate therapy with statin, with a goal of LDL <100 mg/dL. Due to the potential teratogenic effects, females should receive reproductive counseling and statins should be avoided in females of childbearing age who are not using reliable contraception. B

If triglycerides are >400 mg/dL (4.7 mmol/L) fasting or >1,000 mg/dL (11.6 mmol/L) nonfasting, optimize glycemia and begin fibrate, with a goal of <400 mg/dL (4.7 mmol/L) fasting (to reduce risk for pancreatitis). C

Cardiac Function Testing

Recommendation

14.105 Routine screening for heart disease with electrocardiogram, echocardiogram, or stress testing is not recommended in asymptomatic youth with type 2 diabetes. B

Comorbidities may already be present at the time of diagnosis of type 2 diabetes in youth (179,228). Therefore, blood pressure measurement, a fasting lipid panel, assessment of random urine albumin-to-creatinine ratio, and a dilated eye examination should be performed at diagnosis. Additional medical conditions that may need to be addressed include polycystic ovary disease and other comorbidities associated with pediatric obesity, such as sleep apnea, hepatic steatosis, orthopedic complications, and psychosocial concerns. The ADA position statement “Evaluation and Management of Youth-Onset Type 2 Diabetes” (3) provides guidance on the prevention, screening, and treatment of type 2 diabetes and its comorbidities in children and adolescents.

Youth-onset type 2 diabetes is associated with significant microvascular and macrovascular risk burden and a substantial increase in the risk of cardiovascular morbidity and mortality at an earlier age than in those diagnosed later in life (180,229). The higher complication risk in earlier-onset type 2 diabetes is likely related to prolonged lifetime exposure to hyperglycemia and other
atherogenic risk factors, including insulin resistance, dyslipidemia, hypertension, and chronic inflammation. There is a low risk of hypoglycemia in youth with type 2 diabetes, even if they are being treated with insulin (230), and there are high rates of complications (197–200). These diabetes comorbidities also appear to be higher in youth with type 1 diabetes despite shorter diabetes duration and lower A1C (228). In addition, the progression of vascular abnormalities appears to be more pronounced in youth-onset type 2 diabetes compared with type 1 diabetes of similar duration, including ischemic heart disease and stroke (231).

**Psychosocial Factors**

**Recommendations**

14.106 Providers should assess food security, housing stability/homelessness, health literacy, financial barriers, and social/community support and apply that information to treatment decisions. E

14.107 Use patient-appropriate standardized and validated tools to assess for diabetes distress and mental/behavioral health in youth with type 2 diabetes, with attention to symptoms of depression and disordered eating, and refer to specialty care when indicated. B

14.108 When choosing glucose-lowering or other medications for youth with overweight or obesity and type 2 diabetes, consider medication-taking behavior and the medications’ effect on weight. E

14.109 Starting at puberty, preconception counseling should be incorporated into routine diabetes clinic visits for all females of childbearing potential because of the adverse pregnancy outcomes in this population. A

14.110 Patients should be screened for tobacco, electronic cigarettes, and alcohol use at diagnosis and regularly thereafter. C

Most youth with type 2 diabetes come from racial/ethnic minority groups, have low socioeconomic status, and often experience multiple psychosocial stressors (26,41,181–184). Consideration of the sociocultural context and efforts to personalize diabetes management are of critical importance to minimize barriers to care, enhance adherence, and maximize response to treatment.

Evidence about psychiatric disorders and symptoms in youth with type 2 diabetes is limited (232–236), but given the sociocultural context for many youth and the medical burden and obesity associated with type 2 diabetes, ongoing surveillance of mental health/behavioral health is indicated. Symptoms of depression and disordered eating are common and associated with poorer glycemic control (233,237,238).

Many of the medications prescribed for diabetes and psychiatric disorders are associated with weight gain and can increase patients’ concerns about eating, body shape, and weight (239,240).

The TODAY study documented (241) that despite disease- and age-specific counseling, 10.2% of the females in the cohort became pregnant over an average of 3.8 years of study participation. Of note, 26.4% of pregnancies ended in a miscarriage, stillbirth, or intrauterine death, and 20.5% of the liveborn infants had a major congenital anomaly.

**TRANSITION FROM PEDIATRIC TO ADULT CARE**

**Recommendations**

14.111 Pediatric diabetes providers should begin to prepare youth for transition to adult health care in early adolescence and, at the latest, at least 1 year before the transition. E

14.112 Both pediatric and adult diabetes care providers should provide support and resources for transitioning young adults. E

14.113 Youth with type 2 diabetes should be transferred to an adult-oriented diabetes specialist when deemed appropriate by the patient and provider. E

Care and close supervision of diabetes management are increasingly shifted from parents and other adults to the youth with type 1 or type 2 diabetes throughout childhood and adolescence. The shift from pediatric to adult health care providers, however, often occurs abruptly as the older teen enters the next developmental stage, referred to as emerging adulthood (242), which is a critical period for young people who have diabetes. During this period of major life transitions, youth begin to move out of their parents’ homes and must become fully responsible for their diabetes care. Their new responsibilities include self-management of their diabetes, making medical appointments, and financing health care, once they are no longer covered by their parents’ health insurance plans (ongoing coverage until age 26 years is currently available under provisions of the U.S. Affordable Care Act). In addition to lapses in health care, this is also a period associated with deterioration in glycemic stability; increased occurrence of acute complications; psychosocial, emotional, and behavioral challenges; and the emergence of chronic complications (243–248). The transition period from pediatric to adult care is prone to fragmentation in health care delivery, which may adversely impact health care quality, cost, and outcomes (249). Worsening diabetes outcomes during the transition to adult care and early adulthood have been documented (250,251).

Although scientific evidence is limited, it is clear that comprehensive and coordinated planning that begins in early adolescence is necessary to facilitate a seamless transition from pediatric to adult health care (243,244,252,253). New technologies and other interventions are being tried to support the transition to adult care in young adulthood (254–258). A comprehensive discussion regarding the challenges faced during this period, including specific recommendations, is found in the ADA position statement “Diabetes Care for Emerging Adults: Recommendations for Transition From Pediatric to Adult Diabetes Care Systems” (244).
References


44. Laffel LM, Vangsness L, Connell A, Goebel-Fabbri A, Butler D, Anderson BJ. Impact of ambulatory, family-focused teamwork intervention...


Johnson SR, Cooper MN, Jones TW, Davis EA. Long-term outcome of insulin pump therapy in children with type 1 diabetes assessed in a large population-based case-control study. Diabetologia 2013;56:2392–2400.


with serologic markers of celiac disease. Gastroenterology 2014;147:610–617.e1
152. Kavey R-EW, Allada V, Daniels SR, et al.; American Heart Association Expert Panel on Population and Prevention Science; American Heart Association Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young; American Heart Association Council on Epidemiology and Prevention; American Heart Association Council on Nutrition, Physical Activity and Metabolism; American Heart Association Council on High Blood Pressure Research; American Heart Association Council on Cardiovascular Nursing; American Heart Association Council on the Kidney in Heart Disease; Interdisciplinary Working Group on Quality of Care and Outcomes Research. Cardiovascular risk reduction in high-risk pediatric patients: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association Expert Panel on Population and Prevention Science; the Councils on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young, Epidemiology and Prevention, Nutrition, Physical Activity and Metabolism, High Blood Pressure Research, Cardiovascular Nursing, and the Kidney in Heart Disease; and the Interdisciplinary Working Group on Quality of Care and Outcomes Research; endorsed by the American Academy of Pediatrics. Circulation 2006;114:727–738
155. McCrindle BW, Urbina EM, Dennison BA, et al.; American Heart Association Atherosclerosis, Hypertension, and Obesity in Youth Committee; American Heart Association Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young; American Heart Association Council on Cardiovascular Nursing. Drug therapy of high-risk lipid abnormalities in children and adolescents: a scientific statement from the American Heart Association Atherosclerosis, Hypertension, and Obesity in Youth Committee, Council on Cardiovascular Disease in the Young, with the Council on Cardiovascular Nursing. Circulation 2007;115:1948–1967


251. Lyons SK, Becker DJ, Helgeson VS. Transfer from pediatric to adult health care: effects on diabetes outcomes. Pediatr Diabetes 2014;15:10–17


256. White M, O’Connell MA, Cameron FJ. Clinic attendance and disengagement of young adults with type 1 diabetes after transition of care from paediatric to adult services (TrACeD): a randomised, open-label, controlled trial. Lancet Child Adolesc Health 2017;1:274–283

257. Schultz AT, Smaldone A. Components of interventions that improve transitions to adult care for adolescents with type 1 diabetes. J Adolesc Health 2017;60:133–146

15. Management of Diabetes in Pregnancy: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2022

The prevalence of diabetes in pregnancy has been increasing in the U.S. in parallel with the worldwide epidemic of obesity. Not only is the prevalence of type 1 diabetes and type 2 diabetes increasing in women of reproductive age, but there is also a dramatic increase in the reported rates of gestational diabetes mellitus (GDM). Diabetes confers significantly greater maternal and fetal risk largely related to the degree of hyperglycemia but also related to chronic complications and comorbidities of diabetes. In general, specific risks of diabetes in pregnancy include spontaneous abortion, fetal anomalies, preeclampsia, fetal demise, macrosomia, neonatal hypoglycemia, hyperbilirubinemia, and neonatal respiratory distress syndrome, among others. In addition, diabetes in pregnancy may increase the risk of obesity, hypertension, and type 2 diabetes in offspring later in life (1,2).

PRECONCEPTION COUNSELING

**Recommendations**

**15.1** Starting at puberty and continuing in all women with diabetes and reproductive potential, preconception counseling should be incorporated into routine diabetes care. A

**15.2** Family planning should be discussed, and effective contraception (with consideration of long-acting, reversible contraception) should be prescribed and used until a woman’s treatment regimen and A1C are optimized for pregnancy. A

**15.3** Preconception counseling should address the importance of achieving glucose levels as close to normal as is safely possible, ideally A1C < 6.5%
All women of childbearing age with diabetes should be informed about the importance of achieving and maintaining as near euglycemia as safely possible prior to conception and throughout pregnancy. Observational studies show an increased risk of diabetic embryopathy, especially anencephaly, microcephaly, congenital heart disease, renal anomalies, and caudal regression, directly proportional to elevations in A1C during the first 10 weeks of pregnancy (3). Although observational studies are confounded by the association between elevated periconceptional A1C and other poor self-care behavior, the quantity and consistency of data are convincing and support the recommendation to optimize glycemia prior to conception, given that organogenesis occurs primarily at 5–8 weeks of gestation, with an A1C <6.5% (48 mmol/mol) being associated with the lowest risk of congenital anomalies, preeclampsia, and preterm birth (3–7). A systematic review and meta-analysis of observational studies of preconception care for women with preexisting diabetes demonstrated lower A1C and reduced risk of birth defects, preterm delivery, perinatal mortality, small-for-gestational-age births, and neonatal intensive care unit admission (8).

There are opportunities to educate all women and adolescents of reproductive age with diabetes about the risks of unplanned pregnancies and about improved maternal and fetal outcomes with pregnancy planning (9). Effective preconception counseling could avert substantial health and associated cost burdens in offspring (10). Family planning should be discussed, including the benefits of long-acting, reversible contraception, and effective contraception should be prescribed and used until a woman is prepared and ready to become pregnant (11–15).

To minimize the occurrence of complications, beginning at the onset of puberty or at diagnosis, all girls and women with diabetes of childbearing potential should receive education about 1) the risks of malformations associated with unplanned pregnancies and even mild hyperglycemia and 2) the use of effective contraception at all times when preventing a pregnancy. Preconception counseling using developmentally appropriate educational tools enables adolescent girls to make well-informed decisions (9). Preconception counseling resources tailored for adolescents are available at no cost through the American Diabetes Association (ADA) (16).

### Preconception Care

#### Recommendations

**15.4 Women with preexisting diabetes who are planning a pregnancy should ideally be managed beginning in preconception in a multidisciplinary clinic including an endocrinologist, maternal-fetal medicine specialist, registered dietitian nutritionist, and diabetes care and education specialist, when available. B**

**15.5 In addition to focused attention on achieving glycemic targets A, standard preconception care should be augmented with extra focus on nutrition, diabetes education, and screening for diabetes comorbidities and complications. E**

**15.6 Women with preexisting type 1 or type 2 diabetes who are planning pregnancy or who have become pregnant should be counseled on the risk of development and/or progression of diabetic retinopathy. Dilated eye examinations should occur ideally before pregnancy or in the first trimester, and then patients should be monitored every trimester and for 1 year postpartum as indicated by the degree of retinopathy and as recommended by the eye care provider. B**

The importance of preconception care for all women is highlighted by the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG) Committee Opinion 762, “Prepregnancy Counseling” (17). A key point is the need to incorporate a question about a woman’s plans for pregnancy into routine primary and gynecologic care. The preconception care of women with diabetes should include the standard screenings and care recommended for all women planning pregnancy (17). Prescription of prenatal vitamins (with at least 400 µg of folic acid and 150 µg of potassium iodide (18)) is recommended prior to conception. Review and counseling on the use of nicotine products, alcohol, and recreational drugs, including marijuana, is important. Standard care includes screening for sexually transmitted diseases and thyroid disease, recommended vaccinations, routine genetic screening, a careful review of all prescription and nonprescription medications and supplements used, and a review of travel history and plans with special attention to areas known to have Zika virus, as outlined by ACOG. See Table 15.1 for additional details on elements of preconception care (17,19). Counseling on the specific risks of obesity in pregnancy and lifestyle interventions to prevent and treat obesity, including referral to a registered dietitian nutritionist (RD/RDN), is recommended when indicated.

Diabetes-specific counseling should include an explanation of the risks to mother and fetus related to pregnancy and the ways to reduce risk, including glycemic goal setting, lifestyle and behavioral management, and medical nutrition therapy. The most important diabetes-specific component of preconception care is the attainment of glycemic goals prior to conception. Diabetes-specific testing should include A1C, creatinine, and urinary albumin-to-creatinine ratio. Special attention should be paid to the review of the medication list for potentially harmful drugs (i.e., ACE inhibitors [20,21], angiotensin receptor blockers [20], and statins [22,23]). A referral for a comprehensive eye exam is recommended. Women with preexisting diabetic retinopathy will need close monitoring during pregnancy to assess for progression of retinopathy and provide treatment if indicated (24).

Several studies have shown improved diabetes and pregnancy outcomes when care has been delivered from preconception through pregnancy by a multidisciplinary group focused on improved glycemic control (25–28). One study showed that care of preexisting diabetes in clinics that included diabetes
Management of Diabetes in Pregnancy

and obstetric specialists improved care (28). However, there is no consensus on the structure of multidisciplinary team care for diabetes and pregnancy, and there is a lack of evidence on the impact on outcomes of various methods of health care delivery (29).

GLYCEMIC TARGETS IN PREGNANCY

**Recommendations**

**15.7** Fasting and postprandial self-monitoring of blood glucose are recommended in both gestational diabetes mellitus and preexisting diabetes in pregnancy to achieve optimal glucose levels. Glucose targets are fasting plasma glucose <95 mg/dL (5.3 mmol/L) and either 1-h postprandial glucose <140 mg/dL (7.8 mmol/L) or 2-h postprandial glucose <120 mg/dL (6.7 mmol/L). Some women with preexisting diabetes should also test blood glucose preprandially.

**15.8** Due to increased red blood cell turnover, A1C is slightly lower in normal pregnancy than in normal nonpregnant women. Ideally, the A1C target in pregnancy is <6% (42 mmol/mol) if this can be achieved without significant hypoglycemia, but the target may be relaxed to <7% (53 mmol/mol) if necessary to prevent hypoglycemia.

**15.9** When used in addition to pre- and postprandial blood glucose monitoring, continuous glucose monitoring can help to achieve A1C targets in diabetes and pregnancy.

**15.10** When used in addition to blood glucose monitoring targeting traditional pre- and postprandial targets, real-time continuous glucose monitoring can reduce macrosomia and neonatal hypoglycemia in pregnancy complicated by type 1 diabetes.

**15.11** Continuous glucose monitoring metrics may be used in addition to but should not be used as a substitute for

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 15.1—Checklist for preconception care for women with diabetes (17,19)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Preconception education should include:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Comprehensive nutrition assessment and recommendations for:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Overweight/obesity or underweight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Meal planning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Correction of dietary nutritional deficiencies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Caffeine intake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Safe food preparation technique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Lifestyle recommendations for:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Regular moderate exercise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Avoidance of hyperthermia (hot tubs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Adequate sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Comprehensive diabetes self-management education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Counseling on diabetes in pregnancy per current standards, including: natural history of insulin resistance in pregnancy and postpartum; preconception glycemic targets; avoidance of DKA/severe hyperglycemia; avoidance of severe hypoglycemia; progression of retinopathy; PCOS (if applicable); fertility in patients with diabetes; genetics of diabetes; risks to pregnancy including miscarriage, still birth, congenital malformations, macrosomia, preterm labor and delivery, hypertensive disorders in pregnancy, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Supplementation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Folic acid supplement (400 µg routine)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Appropriate use of over-the-counter medications and supplements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Medical assessment and plan should include:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- General evaluation of overall health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Evaluation of diabetes and its comorbidities and complications, including: DKA/severe hyperglycemia; severe hypoglycemia/hypoglycemia unawareness; barriers to care; comorbidities such as hyperlipidemia, hypertension, NAFLD, PCOS, and thyroid dysfunction; complications such as macrovascular disease, nephropathy, neuropathy (including autonomic bowel and bladder dysfunction), and retinopathy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Evaluation of obstetric/gynecologic history, including history of: cesarean section, congenital malformations or fetal loss, current methods of contraception, hypertensive disorders of pregnancy, postpartum hemorrhage, preterm delivery, previous macrosomia, Rh incompatibility, and thrombotic events (DVT/PE)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Review of current medications and appropriateness during pregnancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Screening should include:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Diabetes complications and comorbidities, including: comprehensive foot exam; comprehensive ophthalmologic exam; ECG in women starting at age 35 years who have cardiac signs/symptoms or risk factors and, if abnormal, further evaluation; lipid panel; serum creatinine; TSH; and urine protein-to-creatinine ratio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Anemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Genetic carrier status (based on history):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Cystic fibrosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Sickle cell anemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Tay-Sachs disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Thalassemia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Others if indicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Infectious disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Neisseria gonorrhoea/Chlamydia trachomatis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Hepatitis C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- HIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Pap smear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Syphilis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Immunizations should include:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Rubella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Varicella</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Hepatitis B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Influenza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Others if indicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Preconception plan should include:</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Nutrition and medication plan to achieve glycemic targets prior to conception, including appropriate implementation of monitoring, continuous glucose monitoring, and pump technology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Contraceptive plan to prevent pregnancy until glycemic targets are achieved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Management plan for general health, gynecologic concerns, comorbid conditions, or complications, if present, including: hypertension, nephropathy, retinopathy; Rh incompatibility, and thyroid dysfunction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DKA, diabetic ketoacidosis; DVT/PE, deep vein thrombosis/pulmonary embolism; ECG, electrocardiogram; NAFLD, nonalcoholic fatty liver disease; PCOS, polycystic ovary syndrome; TSH, thyroid-stimulating hormone.
Pregnancy in women with normal glucose metabolism is characterized by fasting levels of blood glucose that are lower than in the nonpregnant state, due to insulin-independent glucose uptake by the fetus and placenta, and by mild postprandial hyperglycemia and carbohydrate intolerance as a result of diabetogenic placental hormones. In patients with preexisting diabetes, glycem targets are usually achieved through a combination of insulin administration and medical nutrition therapy. Because glycem targets in pregnancy are stricter than in nonpregnant individuals, it is important that women with diabetes eat consistent amounts of carbohydrates to match with insulin dosage and to avoid hyperglycemia or hypoglycemia. Referral to an RD/RDN is important in order to establish a food plan and insulin-to-carbohydrate ratio and to determine weight gain goals.

**Insulin Physiology**

Given that early pregnancy is a time of enhanced insulin sensitivity and lower glucose levels, many women with type 1 diabetes will have lower insulin requirements and an increased risk for hypoglycemia (30). Around 16 weeks, insulin resistance begins to increase, and total daily insulin doses increase linearly ~5% per week through week 36. This usually results in a doubling of daily insulin dose compared with the pre-pregnancy requirement. The insulin requirement levels off toward the end of the third trimester with placental aging: A rapid reduction in insulin requirements can indicate the development of placental insufficiency (31). In women with normal pancreatic function, insulin production is sufficient to meet the challenge of this physiological insulin resistance and to maintain normal glucose levels. However, in women with diabetes, hyperglycemia occurs if treatment is not adjusted appropriately.

**Glucose Monitoring**

Reflecting this physiology, fasting and postprandial monitoring of blood glucose is recommended to achieve metabolic control in pregnant women with diabetes. Preprandial testing is also recommended when using insulin pumps or basal-bolus therapy so that premeal rapid-acting insulin dosage can be adjusted. Postprandial monitoring is associated with better glycemic control and a lower risk of preeclampsia (32–34). There are no adequately powered randomized trials comparing different fasting and postmeal glycem targets in diabetes in pregnancy.

Similar to the targets recommended by ACOG (upper limits are the same as for GDM, described below) (35), the ADA-recommended targets for women with type 1 or type 2 diabetes are as follows:

- Fasting glucose 70–95 mg/dL (3.9–5.3 mmol/L) and either
- One-hour postprandial glucose 110–140 mg/dL (6.1–7.8 mmol/L) or
- Two-hour postprandial glucose 100–120 mg/dL (5.6–6.7 mmol/L)

Lower limits are based on the mean of normal blood glucose in pregnancy (36). Lower limits do not apply to diet-controlled type 2 diabetes. Hypoglycemia in pregnancy is as defined and treated in Recommendations 6.9–6.14 (Section 6, “Glycem Targets,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S006). These values represent optimal control if they can be achieved safely. In practice, it may be challenging for women with type 1 diabetes to achieve these targets without hypoglycemia, particularly women with a history of recurrent hypoglycemia or hypoglycemia unawareness. If women cannot achieve these targets without significant hypoglycemia, the ADA suggests less stringent targets based on clinical experience and individualization of care.

**A1C in Pregnancy**

In studies of women without preexisting diabetes, increasing A1C levels within the normal range are associated with adverse outcomes (37). In the Hyperglycemia and Adverse Pregnancy Outcome (HAPO) study, increasing levels of glycemia were also associated with worsening outcomes (38). Observational studies in preexisting diabetes and pregnancy show the lowest rates of adverse fetal outcomes in association with A1C <6–6.5% (42–48 mmol/mol) early in gestation (4–6,39). Clinical trials have not evaluated the risks and benefits of achieving these targets, and treatment goals should account for the risk of maternal hypoglycemia in setting an individualized target of <6% (42 mmol/mol) to <7% (53 mmol/mol). Due to physiological increases in red blood cell turnover, A1C levels fall during normal pregnancy (40,41). Additionally, as A1C represents an integrated measure of glucose, it may not fully capture postprandial hyperglycemia, which drives macrosomia. Thus, although A1C may be useful, it should be used as a secondary measure of glycemic control in pregnancy, after blood glucose monitoring.

In the second and third trimesters, A1C <6% (42 mmol/mol) has the lowest risk of large-for-gestational-age infants (39,42,43), preterm delivery (44), and preeclampsia (1,45). Taking all of this into account, a target of <6% (42 mmol/mol) is optimal during pregnancy if it can be achieved without significant hypoglycemia. The A1C target in a given patient should be achieved without hypoglycemia, which, in addition to the usual adverse sequelae, may increase the risk of low birth weight (46). Given the alteration in red blood cell kinetics during pregnancy and physiological changes in glycemic parameters, A1C levels may need to be monitored more frequently than usual (e.g., monthly).

**Continuous Glucose Monitoring in Pregnancy**

CONCEPTT (Continuous Glucose Monitoring in Pregnant Women With Type 1 Diabetes Trial) was a randomized controlled trial (RCT) of real-time continuous glucose monitoring (CGM) in addition to standard care, including optimization of pre- and postprandial glucose targets versus standard care for pregnant women with type 1 diabetes. It demonstrated the value of real-time CGM in pregnancy complicated by type 1 diabetes by showing a mild improvement in A1C without an increase in hypoglycemia and reductions in large-for-gestational-age births, length of stay,
and neonatal hypoglycemia (47). An observational cohort study that evaluated the glycemic variables reported using CGM found that lower mean glucose, lower standard deviation, and a higher percentage of time in target range were associated with lower risk of large-for-gestational-age births and other adverse neonatal outcomes (48). Use of the CGM-reported mean glucose is superior to the use of estimated A1C, glucose management indicator, and other calculations to estimate A1C given the changes to A1C that occur in pregnancy (49). CGM time in range (TIR) can be used for assessment of glycemic control in patients with type 1 diabetes, but it does not provide actionable data to address fasting and postprandial hypoglycemia or hyperglycemia. There are no data to support the use of TIR in women with type 2 diabetes or GDM.

The international consensus on time in range (50) endorses pregnancy target ranges and goals for TIR for patients with type 1 diabetes using CGM as reported on the ambulatory glucose profile; however, it does not specify the type or accuracy of the device or need for alarms and alerts. Selection of CGM device should be individualized based on patient circumstances.

- Target range 63–140 mg/dL (3.5–7.8 mmol/L): TIR, goal >70%
- Time below range (<63 mg/dL [3.5 mmol/L]), goal <4%
- Time below range (<54 mg/dL [3.0 mmol/L]), goal <1%
- Time above range (>140 mg/dL [7.8 mmol/L]), goal <25%

**MANAGEMENT OF GESTATIONAL DIABETES MELLITUS**

**Recommendations**

15.13 Lifestyle behavior change is an essential component of management of gestational diabetes mellitus and may suffice for the treatment of many women. Insulin should be added if needed to achieve glycemic targets.

15.14 Insulin is the preferred medication for treating hyperglycemia in gestational diabetes mellitus. Metformin and glyburide should not be used as first-line agents, as both cross the placenta to the fetus.

15.15 Metformin, when used to treat polycystic ovary syndrome and induce ovulation, should be discontinued by the end of the first trimester.

15.16 Telehealth visits for pregnant women with gestational diabetes mellitus improve outcomes compared with standard in-person care.

GDM is characterized by increased risk of large-for-gestational-age birth weight and neonatal and pregnancy complications and an increased risk of long-term maternal type 2 diabetes and offspring abnormal glucose metabolism in childhood. These associations with maternal oral glucose tolerance test (OGTT) results are continuous with no clear inflection points (38,51). Offspring with exposure to untreated GDM have reduced insulin sensitivity and β-cell compensation and are more likely to have impaired glucose tolerance in childhood (52). In other words, short-term and long-term risks increase with progressive maternal hyperglycemia. Therefore, all women should be screened according to 2009 Institute of Medicine recommendations (59) diagnostic thresholds are used.

**Lifestyle and Behavioral Management**

After diagnosis, treatment starts with medical nutrition therapy, physical activity, and weight management, depending on pregestational weight, as outlined in the section below on preexisting type 2 diabetes, as well as glucose monitoring aiming for the targets recommended by the Fifth International Workshop-Conference on Gestational Diabetes Mellitus (58):

- Fasting glucose <95 mg/dL (5.3 mmol/L) and either
- One-hour postprandial glucose <140 mg/dL (7.8 mmol/L) or
- Two-hour postprandial glucose <120 mg/dL (6.7 mmol/L)

Glycemic target lower limits defined above for preexisting diabetes apply for GDM that is treated with insulin. Depending on the population, studies suggest that 70–85% of women diagnosed with GDM under Carpenter-Coustan criteria can control GDM with lifestyle modification alone; it is anticipated that this proportion will be even higher if the lower International Association of the Diabetes and Pregnancy Study Groups (59) diagnostic thresholds are used.

**Medical Nutrition Therapy**

Medical nutrition therapy for GDM is an individualized nutrition plan developed between the woman and an RD/RDN familiar with the management of GDM (60,61). The food plan should provide adequate calorie intake to promote fetal/neonatal and maternal health, achieve glycemic goals, and promote weight gain according to 2009 Institute of Medicine recommendations (62). There is no definitive research that identifies a specific optimal calorie intake for women with GDM or suggests that their calorie needs are different from those of pregnant women without GDM. The food plan should be based on a nutrition assessment with guidance from the Dietary Reference Intakes (DRI). The DRI for all pregnant women recommends a minimum of 175 g of carbohydrate, a minimum of 71 g of protein, and 28 g of fiber. The diet should emphasize...
monounsaturated and polyunsaturated fats while limiting saturated fats and avoiding trans fats. As is true for all nutrition therapy in patients with diabetes, the amount and type of carbohydrate will impact glucose levels. The current recommended amount of carbohydrate is 175 g, or ~35% of a 2,000-calorie diet. Liberalizing higher quality, nutrient-dense carbohydrates results in controlled fasting/postprandial glucose, lower free fatty acids, improved insulin action, and vascular benefits and may reduce excess infant adiposity. Mothers who substitute fat for carbohydrate may unintentionally enhance lipolysis, promote elevated free fatty acids, and worsen maternal insulin resistance (63,64). Fasting urine ketone testing may be useful to identify women who are severely restricting carbohydrates to control blood glucose. Simple carbohydrates will result in higher post-meal excursions.

**Physical Activity**
A systematic review demonstrated improvements in glucose control and reductions in need to start insulin or insulin dose requirements with an exercise intervention. There was heterogeneity in the types of effective exercise (aerobic, resistance, or both) and duration of exercise (20–50 min/day, 2–7 days/week of moderate intensity) (65).

**Pharmacologic Therapy**
Treatment of GDM with lifestyle and insulin has been demonstrated to improve perinatal outcomes in two large randomized studies as summarized in a U.S. Preventive Services Task Force review (66). Insulin is the first-line agent recommended for treatment of GDM in the U.S. While individual RCTs support limited efficacy of metformin (67,68) and glyburide (69) in reducing glucose levels for the treatment of GDM, these agents are not recommended as first-line treatment for GDM because they are known to cross the placenta and data on long-term safety for offspring is of some concern (35). Furthermore, glyburide and metformin failed to provide adequate glycemic control in separate RCTs in 23% and 25–28% of women with GDM, respectively (70,71).

**Sulfonylureas**
Sulfonylureas are known to cross the placenta and have been associated with increased neonatal hypoglycemia. Concentrations of glyburide in umbilical cord plasma are approximately 50–70% of maternal levels (70,71). Glyburide was associated with a higher rate of neonatal hypoglycemia, macrosomia, and increased neonatal abdominal circumference than insulin or metformin in meta-analyses and systematic reviews (72,73). Glyburide failed to be found noninferior to insulin based on a composite outcome of neonatal hypoglycemia, macrosomia, and hyperbilirubinemia (74). Long-term safety data for offspring exposed to glyburide are not available (74).

**Metformin**
Metformin was associated with a lower risk of neonatal hypoglycemia and less maternal weight gain than insulin in systematic reviews (72,75–77). However, metformin readily crosses the placenta, resulting in umbilical cord blood levels of metformin as high or higher than simultaneous maternal levels (78,79). In the Metformin in Gestational Diabetes: The Offspring Follow-Up (MiG TOFU) study’s analyses of 7- to 9-year-old offspring, the 9-year-old offspring exposed to metformin for the treatment of GDM in the Auckland cohort were heavier and had a higher waist-to-height ratio and waist circumference than those exposed to insulin (80). This difference was not found in the Adelaide cohort. In two RCTs of metformin use in pregnancy for polycystic ovary syndrome, follow-up of 4-year-old offspring demonstrated higher BMI and increased obesity in the offspring exposed to metformin (81,82). A follow-up study at 5–10 years showed that the offspring had higher BMI, weight-to-height ratios, waist circumferences, and a borderline increase in fat mass (82,83). A recent meta-analysis concluded that metformin exposure resulted in smaller neonates with an acceleration of postnatal growth, resulting in higher BMI in childhood (82).

Randomized, double-blind, controlled trials comparing metformin with other therapies for ovulation induction in women with polycystic ovary syndrome have not demonstrated benefit in preventing spontaneous abortion or GDM (84), and there is no evidence-based need to continue metformin in such patients (85–87).

There are some women with GDM requiring medical therapy who, due to cost, language barriers, comprehension, or cultural influences, may not be able to use insulin safely or effectively in pregnancy. Oral agents may be an alternative in these women after a discussion of the known risks and the need for more long-term safety data in offspring. However, due to the potential for growth restriction or acidosis in the setting of placental insufficiency, metformin should not be used in women with hypertension or preeclampsia or at risk for intrauterine growth restriction (88,89).

**Insulin**
Insulin use should follow the guidelines below. Both multiple daily insulin injections and continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion are reasonable delivery strategies, and neither has been shown to be superior to the other during pregnancy (90).

**MANAGEMENT OF PREEXISTING TYPE 1 DIABETES AND TYPE 2 DIABETES IN PREGNANCY**

**Insulin Use**

**Recommendations**

15.17 Insulin should be used for management of type 1 diabetes in pregnancy. A Insulin is the preferred agent for the management of type 2 diabetes in pregnancy. B

15.18 Either multiple daily injections or insulin pump technology can be used in pregnancy complicated by type 1 diabetes. C

The physiology of pregnancy necessitates frequent titration of insulin to match changing requirements and underscores the importance of daily and frequent blood glucose monitoring. Due to the complexity of insulin management in pregnancy, referral to a specialized center offering team-based care (with team members including maternal-fetal medicine specialist, endocrinologist or other provider experienced in managing pregnancy in women with preexisting diabetes, dietitian, nurse, and social worker, as
needed) is recommended if this resource is available.

None of the currently available human insulin preparations have been demonstrated to cross the placenta (90–95). Insulins studied in RCTs are preferred (96–99) over those studied in cohort studies (100), which are preferred over those studied in case reports only.

While many providers prefer insulin pumps in pregnancy, it is not clear that they are superior to multiple daily injections (101,102). Insulin pumps that allow for the achievement of pregnancy fasting and postprandial glycemic targets may reduce hypoglycemia and allow for more aggressive prandial dosing to achieve targets. Not all hybrid closed-loop pumps are able to achieve the pregnancy targets. None of the current hybrid closed-loop insulin pump systems achieve pregnancy targets. However, predictive low glucose suspend (PLGS) technology has been shown in nonpregnant people to be better than sensor augment technology (SAP) for reducing low glucose (103). It may be suited for pregnancy because the predict low glucose threshold for suspending insulin is in the range of premeal and overnight glucose targets in pregnancy and may allow for more aggressive prandial dosing.

Type 1 Diabetes

Women with type 1 diabetes have an increased risk of hypoglycemia in the first trimester and, like all women, have altered counterregulatory response in pregnancy that may decrease hypoglycemia awareness. Education for patients and family members about the prevention, recognition, and treatment of hypoglycemia is important before, during, and after pregnancy to help to prevent and manage the risks of hypoglycemia. Insulin resistance drops rapidly with delivery of the placenta.

Pregnancy is a ketogenic state, and women with type 1 diabetes, and to a lesser extent those with type 2 diabetes, are at risk for diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) at lower blood glucose levels than in the nonpregnant state. Women with type 1 diabetes should be prescribed ketone strips and receive education on DKA prevention and detection. DKA carries a high risk of stillbirth.

Women in DKA who are unable to eat often require 10% dextrose with an insulin drip to adequately meet the higher carbohydrate demands of the placenta and fetus in the third trimester in order to resolve their ketosis.

Retinopathy is a special concern in pregnancy. The necessary rapid implementation of euglycemia in the setting of retinopathy is associated with worsening of retinopathy (24).

Type 2 Diabetes

Type 2 diabetes is often associated with obesity. Recommended weight gain during pregnancy for women with overweight is 15–25 lb and for women with obesity is 10–20 lb (62). There are no adequate data on optimal weight gain versus weight maintenance in women with BMI >35 kg/m².

Glycemic control is often easier to achieve in women with type 2 diabetes than in those with type 1 diabetes but can require much higher doses of insulin, sometimes necessitating concentrated insulin formulations. Insulin is the preferred treatment for type 2 diabetes in pregnancy. An RCT of metformin added to insulin for the treatment of type 2 diabetes found less maternal weight gain and fewer cesarean births. There were fewer macrosomic neonates, but there was a doubling of small-for-gestational-age neonates (104). As in type 1 diabetes, insulin requirements drop dramatically after delivery.

The risk for associated hypertension and other comorbidities may be as high or higher with type 2 diabetes as with type 1 diabetes, even if diabetes is better controlled and of shorter apparent duration, with pregnancy loss appearing to be more prevalent in the third trimester in women with type 2 diabetes, compared with the first trimester in women with type 1 diabetes (105,106).

PREECLAMPSIA AND ASPIRIN

Insulin Use

**Recommendation 15.19** Women with type 1 or type 2 diabetes should be prescribed low-dose aspirin 100–150 mg/day starting at 12 to 16 weeks of gestation to lower the risk of preeclampsia. E A dosage of 162 mg/day may be acceptable E; currently, in the U.S., low-dose aspirin is available in 81-mg tablets.

Diabetes in pregnancy is associated with an increased risk of preeclampsia (107). The U.S. Preventive Services Task Force recommends the use of low-dose aspirin (81 mg/day) as a preventive medication at 12 weeks of gestation in women who are at high risk for preeclampsia (108). However, a meta-analysis and an additional trial demonstrate that low-dose aspirin <100 mg is not effective in reducing preeclampsia. Low-dose aspirin >100 mg is required (109–111). A cost-benefit analysis has concluded that this approach would reduce morbidity, save lives, and lower health care costs (112). However, there are insufficient data regarding the benefits of aspirin in women with preexisting diabetes (110). More studies are needed to assess the long-term effects of prenatal aspirin exposure on offspring (113).

PREGNANCY AND DRUG CONSIDERATIONS

**Recommendations**

15.20 In pregnant patients with diabetes and chronic hypertension, a blood pressure target of 110–135/85 mmHg is suggested in the interest of reducing the risk for accelerated maternal hypertension A and minimizing impaired fetal growth. E

15.21 Potentially harmful medications in pregnancy (i.e., ACE inhibitors, angiotensin receptor blockers, statins) should be stopped at conception and avoided in sexually active women of childbearing age who are not using reliable contraception. B

In normal pregnancy, blood pressure is lower than in the nonpregnant state. In a pregnancy complicated by diabetes and chronic hypertension, a target goal blood pressure of 110–135/85 mmHg is suggested to reduce the risk of uncontrolled maternal hypertension and minimize impaired fetal growth (114–116). The 2015 study (116) excluded pregnancies complicated by...
preexisting diabetes, and only 6% had GDM at enrollment. There was no difference in pregnancy loss, neonatal care, or other neonatal outcomes between the groups with tighter versus less tight control of hypertension (116).

During pregnancy, treatment with ACE inhibitors and angiotensin receptor blockers is contraindicated because they may cause fetal renal dysplasia, oligohydramnios, pulmonary hypoplasia, and intrauterine growth restriction (20).

A large study found that after adjusting for confounders, first trimester ACE inhibitor exposure does not appear to be associated with congenital malformations (21). However, ACE inhibitors and angiotensin receptor blockers should be stopped as soon as possible in the first trimester to avoid second and third trimester fetopathy (21). Antihypertensive drugs known to be effective and safe in pregnancy include methyldopa, nifedipine, labetalol, diltiazem, clonidine, and prazosin. Atenolol is not recommended, but other β-blockers may be used, if necessary. Chronic diuretic use during pregnancy is not recommended as it has been associated with restricted maternal plasma volume, which may reduce uteroplacental perfusion (117). On the basis of available evidence, statins should also be avoided in pregnancy (118).

See pregnancy and antihypertensive medications in Section 10, “Cardiovascular Disease and Risk Management” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S010), for more information on managing blood pressure in pregnancy.

**POSTPARTUM CARE**

**Recommendations**

15.22 Insulin resistance decreases dramatically immediately postpartum, and insulin requirements need to be evaluated and adjusted as they are often roughly half the prepregnancy requirements for the initial few days postpartum. C

15.23 A contraceptive plan should be discussed and implemented with all women with diabetes of reproductive potential. A

15.24 Screen women with a recent history of gestational diabetes mellitus at 4–12 weeks postpartum, using the 75-g oral glucose tolerance test and clinically appropriate nonpregnancy diagnostic criteria. B

15.25 Women with a history of gestational diabetes mellitus found to have pregestation diabetes should receive intensive lifestyle interventions and/or metformin to prevent diabetes. A

15.26 Women with a history of gestational diabetes mellitus should have lifelong screening for the development of type 2 diabetes or prediabetes every 1–3 years. B

15.27 Women with a history of gestational diabetes mellitus should seek preconception screening for diabetes and preconception care to identify and treat hyperglycemia and prevent congenital malformations. E

15.28 Postpartum care should include psychosocial assessment and support for self-care. E

**Gestational Diabetes Mellitus**

**Initial Testing**

Because GDM often represents previously undiagnosed prediabetes, type 2 diabetes, maturity-onset diabetes of the young, or even developing type 1 diabetes, women with GDM should be tested for persistent diabetes or prediabetes at 4–12 weeks postpartum with a fasting 75-g OGGT using nonpregnancy criteria as outlined in Section 2, “Classification and Diagnosis of Diabetes” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S002), specifically Table 2.2. In the absence of unequivocal hyperglycemia, a positive screen for diabetes requires two abnormal values. If both the fasting plasma glucose (≥126 mg/dL [7.0 mmol/L]) and 2-h plasma glucose (≥200 mg/dL [11.1 mmol/L]) are abnormal in a single screening test, then the diagnosis of diabetes is made. If only one abnormal value in the OGGT meets diabetes criteria, the test should be repeated to confirm that the abnormality persists.

**Postpartum Follow-up**

The OGGT is recommended over A1C at 4–12 weeks postpartum because A1C may be persistently impacted (lowered) by the increased red blood cell turnover related to pregnancy, by blood loss at delivery, or by the preceding 3-month glucose profile. The OGGT is more sensitive at detecting glucose intolerance, including both prediabetes and diabetes. Women of reproductive age with prediabetes may develop type 2 diabetes by the time of their next pregnancy and will need preconception evaluation. Because GDM is associated with an increased lifetime maternal risk for diabetes estimated at 50–60% (119,120), women should also be tested every 1–3 years thereafter if the 4–12 weeks postpartum 75-g OGGT is normal. Ongoing evaluation may be performed with any recommended glycemic test (e.g., annual A1C, annual fasting plasma glucose, or triennial 75-g OGGT using nonpregnant thresholds).

**Gestational Diabetes Mellitus and Type 2 Diabetes**

Women with a history of GDM have a greatly increased risk of conversion to type 2 diabetes over time (120). Women with GDM have a 10-fold increased risk of developing type 2 diabetes compared with women without GDM (119). Absolute risk increases linearly through a woman’s lifetime, being approximately 20% at 10 years, 30% at 20 years, 40% at 30 years, 50% at 40 years, and 60% at 50 years (120). In the prospective Nurses’ Health Study II (NHS II), subsequent diabetes risk after a history of GDM was significantly lower in women who followed healthy eating patterns (121). Adjusting for BMI attenuated this association moderately, but not completely. Interpregnancy or postpartum weight gain is associated with increased risk of adverse pregnancy outcomes in subsequent pregnancies (122) and earlier progression to type 2 diabetes.

Both metformin and intensive lifestyle intervention prevent or delay progression to diabetes in women with prediabetes and a history of GDM. Of women with a history of GDM and prediabetes, only 5–6 women need to be treated with either intervention to prevent one case of diabetes over 3 years (123). In these women, lifestyle intervention and metformin reduced progression to diabetes by 35% and 40%, respectively, over 10 years compared with placebo (124). If the pregnancy has motivated the adoption of a healthier diet, building on these gains to support
weight loss is recommended in the postpartum period.

**Preexisting Type 1 and Type 2 Diabetes**

Insulin sensitivity increases dramatically with delivery of the placenta. In one study, insulin requirements in the immediate postpartum period are roughly 34% lower than prepregnancy insulin requirements (125). Insulin sensitivity then returns to prepregnancy levels over the following 1–2 weeks. In women taking insulin, particular attention should be directed to hypoglycemia prevention in the setting of breastfeeding and erratic sleep and eating schedules (126).

**Lactation**

In light of the immediate nutritional and immunological benefits of breastfeeding for the baby, all women, including those with diabetes, should be supported in attempts to breastfeed. Breastfeeding may also confer longer-term metabolic benefits to both mother (127) and offspring (128). However, lactation can increase the risk of overnight hypoglycemia, and insulin dosing may need to be adjusted.

**Contraception**

A major barrier to effective preconception care is the fact that the majority of pregnancies are unplanned. Planning pregnancy is critical in women with pre-existing diabetes due to the need for preconception glycemic control to prevent congenital malformations and reduce the risk of other complications. Therefore, all women with diabetes of childbearing potential should have family-planning options reviewed at regular intervals to make sure that effective contraception is implemented and maintained. This applies to women in the immediate postpartum period. Women with diabetes have the same contraception options and recommendations as those without diabetes. Long-acting, reversible contraception may be ideal for many women. The risk of an unplanned pregnancy outweighs the risk of any given contraception option.

**References**

2. Holmes VA, Young IS, Patterson CC, et al.; Diabetes and Pre-eclampsia Intervention Trial Study Group. Optimal glycemic control, pre-eclampsia, and gestational hypertension in women with type 1 diabetes in the diabetes and pre-eclampsia intervention trial. Diabetes Care 2011;34:1683–1688
17. American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists’ Committee on Gynecologic Practice; American Society for Reproductive Medicine. ACOG Committee Opinion No. 762: Prepregnancy counseling. Obstet Gynecol 2019;133:e78–e89
32. Manderson JG, Patterson CC, Hadden DR, Traub AJ, Ennis C, McCance DR. Preprandial versus postprandial blood glucose monitoring in type 1 diabetic pregnancy: a randomized
45. Temple RC, Aldridge V, Stanley K, Murphy HR. Glycaemic control throughout pregnancy and risk of pre-eclampsia in women with type 1 diabetes. BJOG 2006;113:1329–1332
49. Law GR, Gilthorpe MS, Secher AL, et al. Translating HbA1c measurements into estimated average glucose values in pregnant women with diabetes. Diabetologia 2017;60:618–624
83. Hanem LGE, Stridsklev S, Juliusson PB, et al. Metformin in PCOS pregnancies increases the risk of offspring overweight at 4 years of age: follow-up of two RCTs. J Clin Endocrinol Metab 2018;103:1612–1621
90. Farrant D, Tuffnell DJ, West J, West HM. Continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion versus multiple daily injections of insulin for pregnant women with diabetes. Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2016;6:CD005542
The American Diabetes Association (ADA) “Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes” includes the ADA’s current clinical practice recommendations and is intended to provide the components of diabetes care, general treatment goals and guidelines, and tools to evaluate quality of care. Members of the ADA Professional Practice Committee, a multidisciplinary expert committee (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SPPC), are responsible for updating the Standards of Care annually, or more frequently as warranted. For a detailed description of ADA standards, statements, and reports, as well as the evidence-grading system for ADA’s clinical practice recommendations, please refer to the Standards of Care Introduction (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SINT). Readers who wish to comment on the Standards of Care are invited to do so at professional.diabetes.org/SOC.

Among hospitalized patients, hyperglycemia, hypoglycemia, and glucose variability are associated with adverse outcomes, including death (1–3). Therefore, careful management of inpatients with diabetes has direct and immediate benefits. Hospital management of diabetes is facilitated by preadmission treatment of hyperglycemia in patients having elective procedures, a dedicated inpatient diabetes service applying well-developed standards, and careful transition out of the hospital to prearranged outpatient management. These steps can shorten hospital stays and reduce the need for readmission, as well as improve patient outcomes. Some in-depth reviews of hospital care for patients with diabetes have been published (3–5). For older hospitalized patients or for patients in the long-term care facilities, please see Section 13, “Older Adults” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S013).

### HOSPITAL CARE DELIVERY STANDARDS

**Recommendations**

16.1 Perform an A1C test on all patients with diabetes or hyperglycemia (blood glucose >140 mg/dL [7.8 mmol/L]) admitted to the hospital if not performed in the prior 3 months. B

16.2 Insulin should be administered using validated written or computerized protocols that allow for predefined adjustments in the insulin dosage based on glycemic fluctuations. B

**Considerations on Admission**

High-quality hospital care for diabetes requires standards for care delivery, which are best implemented using structured order sets, and quality assurance for process improvement. Unfortunately, “best practice” protocols, reviews, and guidelines (2–4) are inconsistently implemented within hospitals. To correct this, medical centers striving for optimal inpatient diabetes treatment should establish protocols and structured order sets, which include computerized physician order entry (CPOE).
Initial orders should state the type of diabetes (i.e., type 1, type 2, gestational diabetes mellitus, pancreatic diabetes) when it is known. Because inpatient treatment and discharge planning are more effective if based on preadmission glycemia, an A1C should be measured for all patients with diabetes or hyperglycemia admitted to the hospital if the test has not been performed in the previous 3 months (6–9). In addition, diabetes self-management knowledge and behaviors should be assessed on admission and diabetes self-management education provided, if appropriate. Diabetes self-management education should include appropriate skills needed after discharge, such as medication dosing and administration, glucose monitoring, and recognition and treatment of hypoglycemia (2,3). There is evidence to support preadmission treatment of hyperglycemia in patients scheduled for elective surgery as an effective means of reducing adverse outcomes (10–13).

The National Academy of Medicine recommends CPOE to prevent medication-related errors and to increase efficiency in medication administration (14). A Cochrane review of randomized controlled trials using computerized advice to improve glucose control in the hospital found significant improvement in the percentage of time patients spent in the target glucose range, lower mean blood glucose levels, and no increase in hypoglycemia (15). Thus, where feasible, there should be structured order sets that provide computerized advice for glucose control. Electronic insulin order templates also improve mean glucose levels without increasing hypoglycemia in patients with type 2 diabetes, so structured insulin order sets should be incorporated into the CPOE (16,17).

Diabetes Care Providers in the Hospital

Recommendation

16.3 When caring for hospitalized patients with diabetes, consult with a specialized diabetes or glucose management team when possible. C

Appropriately trained specialists or specialty teams may reduce the length of stay, improve glycemic control, and improve outcomes (10,18,19). In addition, the greater risk of 30-day readmission following hospitalization that has been attributed to diabetes can be reduced and costs saved when inpatient care is provided by a specialized diabetes management team (20,21). In a cross-sectional comparison of usual care to management by specialists who reviewed cases and made recommendations solely through the electronic medical record, rates of both hyper- and hypoglycemia were reduced 30–40% by electronic “virtual care” (22). Details of team formation are available in the Joint Commission standards for programs and from the Society of Hospital Medicine (23,24).

GLYCEMIC TARGETS IN HOSPITALIZED PATIENTS

**Recommendations**

16.4 Insulin therapy should be initiated for treatment of persistent hyperglycemia starting at a threshold ≥180 mg/dL (10.0 mmol/L) (checked on two occasions). Once insulin therapy is started, a target glucose range of 140–180 mg/dL (7.8–10.0 mmol/L) is recommended for the majority of critically ill and noncritically ill patients. A

16.5 More stringent goals, such as 110–140 mg/dL (6.1–7.8 mmol/L), may be appropriate for selected patients if they can be achieved without significant hypoglycemia. C

**Standard Definitions of Glucose Abnormalities**

Hyperglycemia in hospitalized patients is defined as blood glucose levels >140 mg/dL (7.8 mmol/L) (2,3,25). Blood glucose levels persistently above this level should prompt conservative interventions, such as alterations in diet or changes to medications that cause hyperglycemia. An admission A1C value ≥6.5% (48 mmol/mol) suggests that the onset of diabetes preceded hospitalization (see Section 2, “Classification and Diagnosis of Diabetes,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S002) (2,25). Hyperglycemia in hospitalized patients is categorized by blood glucose concentration and clinical correlates (Table 6.4) (26):

- Level 1 hypoglycemia is a glucose concentration 54–70 mg/dL (3.0–3.9 mmol/L).
- Level 2 hypoglycemia is a blood glucose concentration <54 mg/dL (3.0 mmol/L), which is typically the threshold for neuroglycopenic symptoms.
- Level 3 hypoglycemia is a clinical event characterized by altered mental and/or physical functioning that requires assistance from another person for recovery. Levels 2 and 3 require immediate correction of low blood glucose.

**Glycemic Targets**

In a landmark clinical trial, Van den Berghe et al. (27) demonstrated that an intensive intravenous insulin regimen to reach a target glycemic range of 80–110 mg/dL (4.4–6.1 mmol/L) reduced mortality by 40% compared with a standard approach targeting blood glucose of 180–215 mg/dL (10–12 mmol/L) in critically ill patients with recent surgery. This study provided robust evidence that active treatment to lower blood glucose in hospitalized patients had immediate benefits. However, a large, multicenter follow-up study, the Normoglycemia in Intensive Care Evaluation and Survival Using Glucose Algorithm Regulation (NICE-SUGAR) trial (28), led to a reconsideration of the optimal target range for glucose lowering in critical illness. In this trial, critically ill patients randomized to intensive glycemic control (80–110 mg/dL) derived no significant treatment advantage compared with a group with more moderate glycemic targets (140–180 mg/dL [7.8–10.0 mmol/L]) and, in fact, had slightly but significantly higher mortality (27.5% vs. 25%). The intensively treated group had 10- to 15-fold greater rates of hypoglycemia, which may have contributed to the adverse outcomes noted. The findings from NICE-SUGAR are supported by several meta-analyses, some of which suggest that tight glycemic control increases mortality compared with
more moderate glycemic targets and generally causes higher rates of hypoglycemia (29–31). Based on these results, insulin therapy should be initiated for treatment of persistent hyperglycemia ≥180 mg/dL (10.0 mmol/L) and targeted to a glucose range of 140–180 mg/dL (7.8–10.0 mmol/L) for the majority of critically ill patients. Although not as well supported by data from randomized controlled trials, these recommendations have been extended to hospitalized patients without critical illness. More stringent goals, such as 110–140 mg/dL (6.1–7.8 mmol/L), may be appropriate for selected patients (e.g., critically ill postsurgical patients or patients with cardiac surgery), as long as they can be achieved without significant hypoglycemia (32,33). On the other hand, glucose concentrations between 180 mg/dL and 250 mg/dL (10–13.9 mmol/L) may be acceptable in patients with severe comorbidities and in inpatient care settings where frequent glucose monitoring or close nursing supervision is not feasible. Glycemic levels above 250 mg/dL (13.9 mmol/L) may be acceptable in terminally ill patients with short life expectancy. In these patients, less aggressive insulin regimens to minimize glucosuria, dehydration, and electrolyte disturbances are often more appropriate. Clinical judgment combined with ongoing assessment of clinical status, including changes in the trajectory of glucose measures, illness severity, nutritional status, or concomitant medications that might affect glucose levels (e.g., glucocorticoids), should be incorporated into the day-to-day decisions regarding insulin dosing (34).

**BEDSIDE BLOOD Glucose Monitoring**

In hospitalized patients with diabetes who are eating, bedside glucose monitoring should be performed before meals; in those not eating, glucose monitoring is advised every 4–6 h (2). More frequent bedside blood glucose testing ranging from every 30 min to every 2 h is the required standard for safe use of intravenous insulin. Safety standards for blood glucose monitoring that prohibit the sharing of lancets, other testing materials, and needles are mandatory (35).

The vast majority of hospital glucose monitoring is performed using standard glucose monitors and capillary blood taken from fingersticks, similar to the process used by outpatients for home glucose monitoring (36). Point-of-care (POC) meters are not as accurate or as precise as laboratory glucose analyzers, and capillary blood glucose readings are subject to artifact due to perfusion, edema, anemia/erythrocytosis, and several medications commonly used in the hospital (37). The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has established standards for capillary (fingerstick) blood glucose meters used in the ambulatory setting, as well as standards to be applied for POC measures in the hospital (37). The balance between analytic requirements (e.g., accuracy, precision, interference) and clinical requirements (rapidity, simplicity, point of care) has not been uniformly resolved (36,38), and most hospitals/medical centers have arrived at their own policies to balance these parameters. It is critically important that devices selected for in-hospital use, and the workflow through which they are applied, have careful analysis of performance and reliability and ongoing quality assessments. Recent studies indicate that POC measures provide adequate information for usual practice, with only rare instances where care has been compromised (39,40). Good practice dictates that any glucose result that does not correlate with the patient’s clinical status should be confirmed through measurement of a serum sample in the clinical laboratory.

**Continuous Glucose Monitoring**

Real-time continuous glucose monitoring (CGM) provides frequent measurements of interstitial glucose levels as well as the direction and magnitude of glucose trends. Even though CGM has theoretical advantages over POC glucose testing in detecting and reducing the incidence of hypoglycemia, it has not been approved by the FDA for inpatient use. Some hospitals with established glucose management teams allow the use of CGM in selected patients on an individual basis, provided both the patients and the glucose management team are well educated in the use of this technology. CGM is not approved for intensive care unit use.

During the COVID-19 pandemic, several institutions used CGM to minimize contact between health care providers and patients, especially those in the intensive care unit (41–49). This approach seems to be helpful in that regard, as well as helping to minimize the use of personal protective equipment. Unfortunately, the data about the use of CGM to improve either glycemic control or hospitalization outcomes are not yet available. Preliminary data that are already at hand suggest that CGM can offer significant improvement to both glycemic control and outcomes of hospitalization.

For more information on CGM, see Section 7, “Diabetes Technology” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S007).

**GLUCOSE-LOWERING TREATMENT IN HOSPITALIZED PATIENTS**

**Recommendations**

16.6 Basal insulin or a basal plus bolus correction insulin regimen is the preferred treatment for non–critically ill hospitalized patients with poor oral intake or those who are taking nothing by mouth. A

16.7 An insulin regimen with basal, prandial, and correction components is the preferred treatment for non–critically ill hospitalized patients with good nutritional intake. A

16.8 Use of only a sliding scale insulin regimen in the inpatient hospital setting is strongly discouraged. A

**Insulin Therapy**

**Critical Care Setting**

In the critical care setting, continuous intravenous insulin infusion is the most effective method for achieving glycemic targets. Intravenous insulin infusions should be administered based on validated written or computerized protocols that allow for predefined adjustments in the infusion rate, accounting for glycemic fluctuations and insulin dose (3).

**Noncritical Care Setting**

In most instances, insulin is the preferred treatment for hyperglycemia in hospitalized patients. However, in certain circumstances, it may be appropriate to continue home regimens, including oral
glucose-lowering medications (50). If oral medications are held in the hospital, there should be a protocol for resuming them 1–2 days before discharge. For patients using insulin, recent reports indicate that inpatient use of insulin pens is safe and may be associated with improved nurse satisfaction compared with the use of insulin vials and syringes (51–53). Insulin pens have been the subject of an FDA warning because of potential blood-borne diseases; the warning “For single patient use only” should be rigorously followed (54).

Outside of critical care units, scheduled insulin regimens are recommended to manage hyperglycemia in patients with diabetes. Regimens using insulin analogs and human insulin result in similar glycemic control in the hospital setting (55). The use of subcutaneous rapid- or short-acting insulin before meals, or every 4–6 h if no meals are given or if the patient is receiving continuous enteral/parenteral nutrition, is indicated to correct hyperglycemia. Basal insulin, or a basal plus bolus correction regimen, is the preferred treatment for noncritically ill hospitalized patients with poor oral intake or those who are restricted from oral intake. An insulin regimen with basal, prandial, and correction components is the preferred treatment for noncritically ill hospitalized patients with good nutritional intake.

For patients who are eating, insulin injections should align with meals. In such instances, POC glucose testing should be performed immediately before meals. If oral intake is poor, a safer procedure is to administer prandial insulin immediately after the patient eats, with the dose adjusted to be appropriate for the amount ingested (55).

A randomized controlled trial has shown that basal-bolus treatment improved glycemic control and reduced hospital complications compared with reactive, or sliding scale, insulin regimens (i.e., dosing given in response to elevated glucose rather than preemptively) in general surgery patients with type 2 diabetes (56). Prolonged use of sliding scale insulin regimens as the sole treatment of hyperglycemic inpatients is strongly discouraged (19,57).

While there is evidence for using premixed insulin formulations in the outpatient setting (58), a recent inpatient study of 70/30 NPH/regular insulin versus basal-bolus therapy showed comparable glycemic control but significantly increased hypoglycemia in the group receiving premixed insulin (59). Therefore, premixed insulin regimens are not routinely recommended for in-hospital use.

**Type 1 Diabetes**

For patients with type 1 diabetes, dosing insulin based solely on premeal glucose levels does not account for basal insulin requirements or caloric intake, increasing the risk of both hypoglycemia and hyperglycemia. Typically, basal insulin dosing schemes are based on body weight, with some evidence that patients with renal insufficiency should be treated with lower doses (60,61). An insulin regimen with basal and correction components is necessary for all hospitalized patients with type 1 diabetes, with the addition of prandial insulin if the patient is eating. Most importantly, patients with type 1 diabetes should always be treated with insulin.

**Transitioning Intravenous to Subcutaneous Insulin**

When discontinuing intravenous insulin, a transition protocol is associated with less morbidity and lower costs of care (62,63) and is therefore recommended. A patient with type 1 or type 2 diabetes being transitioned to a subcutaneous regimen should receive a dose of subcutaneous basal insulin 2 h before the intravenous infusion is discontinued. The dose of basal insulin is best calculated on the basis of the insulin infusion rate during the last 6 h when stable glycemic goals were achieved (64). For patients transitioning to regimens with concentrated insulin (U-200, U-300, or U-500) in the inpatient setting, it is important to ensure correct dosing by utilizing an individual pen and cartridge for each patient and by meticulous supervision of the dose administered (64,65).

**Noninsulin Therapies**

The safety and efficacy of noninsulin glucose-lowering therapies in the hospital setting is an area of active research (66,67). Several recent randomized trials have demonstrated the potential effectiveness of glucagon-like peptide 1 (GLP-1) receptor agonists and dipeptidyl peptidase 4 inhibitors in specific groups of hospitalized patients (68–71). However, an FDA bulletin states that providers should consider discontinuing saxagliptin and alogliptin in people who develop heart failure (72).

Sodium–glucose cotransporter 2 (SGLT2) inhibitors should be avoided in cases of severe illness, in patients with ketonemia or ketonuria, and during prolonged fasting and surgical procedures (4). Until safety and effectiveness are established, SGLT2 inhibitors are not recommended for routine in-hospital use. Furthermore, the FDA has recently warned that SGLT2 inhibitors should be stopped 3 days before scheduled surgeries (4 days in the case of ertugliflozin).

**HYPOGLYCEMIA**

**Recommendations**

16.9 A hypoglycemia management protocol should be adopted and implemented by each hospital or hospital system. A plan for preventing and treating hypoglycemia should be established for each patient. Episodes of hypoglycemia in the hospital should be documented in the medical record and tracked for quality improvement/quality assessment.

16.10 For individual patients, treatment regimens should be reviewed and changed as necessary to prevent further hypoglycemia when a blood glucose value of <70 mg/dL (3.9 mmol/L) is documented.

Patients with or without diabetes may experience hypoglycemia in the hospital setting. While hypoglycemia is associated with increased mortality (73), in many cases it is a marker of underlying disease rather than the cause of fatality. However, hypoglycemia is a severe consequence of dysregulated metabolism and/or diabetes treatment, and it is imperative that it be minimized in hospitalized patients. Many episodes of hypoglycemia among inpatients are preventable. Therefore, a hypoglycemia prevention and management protocol should be adopted and implemented by each hospital or hospital system. A standardized hospital-wide, nurse-initiated hypogly-
huria dextrose, unexpected interruption of enteral or parenteral feedings, delayed meals, reduced infusion rate of intravenous nutrition-insulin mismatch, often related to an unexpected interruption of nutrition. A recent study describes acute kidney injury as an important risk factor for hypoglycemia in the hospital (76), possibly as a result of decreased insulin clearance. Studies of “bundled” preventive therapies, including proactive surveillance of glycemic outliers and an interdisciplinary data-driven approach to glycemic management, showed that hypoglycemic episodes in the hospital could be prevented. Compared with baseline, two such studies found that hypoglycemic events fell by 56–80% (77,78). The Joint Commission recommends that all hypoglycemic episodes be evaluated for a root cause and the episodes be aggregated and reviewed to address systemic issues (23).

In addition to errors with insulin treatment, iatrogenic hypoglycemia may be induced by a sudden reduction of corticosteroid dose, reduced oral intake, emesis, inappropriate timing of short- or rapid-acting insulin in relation to meals, reduced infusion rate of intravenous dextrose, unexpected interruption of enteral or parenteral feedings, delayed or missed blood glucose checks, and altered ability of the patient to report symptoms (5).

Predictors of Hypoglycemia
In ambulatory patients with diabetes, it is well established that an episode of severe hypoglycemia increases the risk for a subsequent event, in part because of impaired counterregulation (79,80). This relationship also holds for inpatients. For example, in a study of hospitalized patients treated for hyperglycemia, 84% who had an episode of “severe hypoglycemia” (defined as <40 mg/dL [2.2 mmol/L]) had a preceding episode of hypoglycemia (<70 mg/dL [3.9 mmol/L]) during the same admission (81). In another study of hypoglycemic episodes (defined as <50 mg/dL [2.8 mmol/L]), 78% of patients were using basal insulin, with the incidence of hypoglycemia peaking between midnight and 6:00 A.M. Despite recognition of hypoglycemia, 75% of patients did not have their dose of basal insulin changed before the next insulin administration (82).

Recently, several groups have developed algorithms to predict episodes of hypoglycemia among inpatients (83,84). Models such as these are potentially important and, once validated for general use, could provide a valuable tool to reduce rates of hypoglycemia in hospitalized patients.

MEDICAL NUTRITION THERAPY IN THE HOSPITAL
The goals of medical nutrition therapy in the hospital are to provide adequate calories to meet metabolic demands, optimize glycemic control, address personal food preferences, and facilitate the creation of a discharge plan. The American Diabetes Association does not endorse any single meal plan or specified percentages of macronutrients. Current nutrition recommendations advise individualization based on treatment goals, physiological parameters, and medication use. Consistent carbohydrate meal plans are preferred by many hospitals as they facilitate matching the prandial insulin dose to the amount of carbohydrate consumed (85).

Orders should also indicate that the meal delivery and nutritional insulin coverage should be coordinated, as their variability often creates the possibility of hyperglycemic and hypoglycemic events.

Many hospitals offer “meals on demand,” allowing patients to order meals from the menu at any time of the day. This option improves patient satisfaction but complicates meal–insulin coordination. Finally, if carbohydrate counting is provided by the hospital kitchen, this option should be used in patients counting carbohydrates at home (86).

SELF-MANAGEMENT IN THE HOSPITAL
Diabetes self-management in the hospital may be appropriate for specific patients (87,88). Candidates include both adolescent and adult patients who successfully conduct self-management of diabetes at home and whose cognitive and physical skills needed to successfully self-administer insulin and perform self-monitoring of blood glucose are not compromised. In addition, they should have adequate oral intake, be proficient in carbohydrate estimation, use multiple daily insulin injections or continuous subcutaneous insulin infusion (CSII), have stable insulin requirements, and understand sick-day management. If self-management is to be used, a protocol should include a requirement that the patient, nursing staff, and physician agree that patient self-management is appropriate. If CSII or CGM is to be used, hospital policy and procedures delineating guidelines for CSII therapy, including the changing of infusion sites, are advised (89,90). As outlined in Recommendation 7.29, patients using diabetes devices should be allowed to use them in an inpatient setting when proper supervision is available.

STANDARDS FOR SPECIAL SITUATIONS
Enteral/Parenteral Feedings
For patients receiving enteral or parenteral feedings who require insulin, the regimen should include coverage of basal, prandial, and correctional needs (91,92). It is particularly important that patients with type 1 diabetes continue to receive basal insulin even if feedings are discontinued.

Most patients receiving basal insulin should continue with their basal dose,
while the dose of insulin for the total daily nutritional component may be calculated as 1 unit of insulin for every 10–15 g carbohydrate in the formula. Commercially available cans of enteral nutrition contain variable amounts of carbohydrate and may be infused at different rates. All of this must be taken into consideration while calculating insulin doses to cover the nutritional component of enteral nutrition (86).

Most specialists recommend using NPH insulin twice or three times daily (every 8 or 12 h) to cover patient needs. Adjustments in insulin doses must be made frequently. Correctional insulin should also be administered subcutaneously every 6 h using human regular insulin or every 4 h using a rapid-acting insulin. If enteral nutrition is interrupted, a 10% dextrose infusion must be started immediately to prevent hypoglycemia and to allow time to select more appropriate insulin doses.

For patients receiving enteral bolus feedings, approximately 1 unit of regular human insulin or rapid-acting insulin per 10–15 g carbohydrate should be given subcutaneously before each feeding. Correctional insulin coverage should be added as needed before each feeding.

In patients receiving nocturnal tube feeding, NPH insulin administered with the initiation of feeding represents a reasonable approach to cover this nutritional load.

For patients receiving continuous peripheral or central parenteral nutrition, human regular insulin may be added to the solution, particularly if >20 units of correctional insulin have been required in the past 24 h. A starting dose of 1 unit of human regular insulin for every 10 g dextrose has been recommended (93) and should be adjusted daily in the solution. Adding insulin to the parenteral nutrition bag is the safest way to prevent hypoglycemia if the parenteral nutrition is stopped or interrupted. Correctional insulin should be administered subcutaneously. For full enteral/parenteral feeding guidance, please refer to review articles detailing this topic (91,94).

Because continuous enteral or parenteral nutrition results in a continuous postprandial state, any attempt to bring blood glucose levels to below 140 mg/dL (7.8 mmol/L) substantially increases the risk of hypoglycemia in these patients.

**Glucocorticoid Therapy**

The prevalence of glucocorticoid therapy in hospitalized patients can approach 10%, and these medications can induce hyperglycemia in patients with and without antecedent diabetes (95). Glucocorticoid type and duration of action must be considered in determining insulin treatment regimens. Daily-ingested short-acting glucocorticoids such as prednisone reach peak plasma levels in 4–6 h (96) but have pharmacologic actions that last through the day. Patients on morning steroid regimens have disproportionate hyperglycemia during the day, but they frequently reach normal blood glucose levels overnight regardless of treatment (95). In subjects on once- or twice-daily steroids, administration of intermediate-acting (NPH) insulin is a standard approach. NPH is usually administered in addition to daily basal-bolus insulin or in addition to oral antidiabetes medications. Because NPH action peaks at 4–6 h after administration, it is best to give it concomitantly with steroids (97). For long-acting glucocorticoids such as dexamethasone and multidose or continuous glucocorticoid use, long-acting insulin may be required to control fasting blood glucose (50,98). For higher doses of glucocorticoids, increasing doses of prandial and correctional insulin, sometimes in extraordinary amounts, are often needed in addition to basal insulin (99,100). Whatever orders are started, adjustments based on anticipated changes in glucocorticoid dosing and POC glucose test results are critical.

**Perioperative Care**

Many standards for perioperative care lack a robust evidence base. However, the following approach (101–103) may be considered:

1. The target range for blood glucose in the perioperative period should be 80–180 mg/dL (4.4–10.0 mmol/L).
2. A preoperative risk assessment should be performed for patients with diabetes who are at high risk for ischemic heart disease and those with autonomic neuropathy or renal failure.
3. Metformin should be withheld on the day of surgery.
4. SGLT2 inhibitors must be discontinued 3–4 days before surgery.
5. Withhold any other oral glucose-lowering agents the morning of surgery or procedure and give half of NPH dose or 75–80% doses of long-acting analog or pump basal insulin.
6. Monitor blood glucose at least every 2–4 h while the patient is taking nothing by mouth and dose with short- or rapid-acting insulin as needed.
7. There are no data on the use and/or influence of GLP-1 receptor agonists or ultra-long-acting insulin analogs upon glycaemia in perioperative care.

A recent review concluded that perioperative glycemic control tighter than 80–180 mg/dL (4.4–10.0 mmol/L) did not improve outcomes and was associated with more hypoglycemia (102); therefore, in general, tighter glycemic targets are not advised. Evidence from a recent study indicates that compared with usual dosing, a reduction of insulin given the evening before surgery by ~25% was more likely to achieve perioperative blood glucose levels in the target range with a lower risk for hypoglycemia (104).

In noncardiac general surgery patients, basal insulin plus premeal short- or rapid-acting insulin (basal-bolus) coverage has been associated with improved glycemic control and lower rates of perioperative complications compared with the reactive, sliding scale regimens (short- or rapid-acting insulin coverage only with no basal insulin dosing) (56,105).

**Diabetic Ketoacidosis and Hyperosmolar Hyperglycemic State**

There is considerable variability in the presentation of diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) and hyperosmolar hyperglycemic states, ranging from eu glycemia or mild hyperglycemia and acidosis to severe hyperglycemia, dehydration, and coma; therefore, individualization of treatment based on a careful clinical and laboratory assessment is needed (106–109).

Management goals include restoration of circulatory volume and tissue perfusion, resolution of hyperglycemia, and
correction of electrolyte imbalance and acidosis. It is also important to treat any correctable underlying cause of DKA, such as sepsis, myocardial infarction, or stroke. In critically ill and mentally obtunded patients with DKA or hyperosmolar hyperglycemia, continuous intravenous insulin is the standard of care. Successful transition of patients from intravenous to subcutaneous insulin requires administration of basal insulin 2-4 h prior to the intravenous insulin being stopped to prevent recurrence of ketoacidosis and rebound hyperglycemia (108). There is no significant difference in outcomes for intravenous human regular insulin versus subcutaneous rapid-acting analogs when combined with aggressive fluid management for treating mild or moderate DKA (110). Patients with uncomplicated DKA may sometimes be treated with subcutaneous insulin in the emergency department or step-down units (111), an approach that may be safer and more cost-effective than treatment with intravenous insulin. If subcutaneous insulin administration is used, it is important to provide an adequate fluid replacement, frequent bedside testing, appropriate treatment of any concurrent infections, and appropriate follow-up to avoid recurrent DKA. Several studies have shown that the use of bicarbonate in patients with DKA made no difference in resolution of acidosis or time to discharge, and its use is generally not recommended. For further information regarding treatment, refer to recent in-depth reviews (4).

**TRANSITION FROM THE HOSPITAL TO THE AMBULATORY SETTING**

**Recommendation 16.11** There should be a structured discharge plan tailored to the individual patient with diabetes.

A structured discharge plan tailored to the individual patient may reduce the length of hospital stay and readmission rates and increase patient satisfaction (112). Discharge planning should begin at admission and be updated as patient needs change.

The transition from the acute care setting presents risks for all patients. Inpatients may be discharged to varied settings, including home (with or without visiting nurse services), assisted living, rehabilitation, or skilled nursing facilities. For the patient who is discharged to home or to assisted living, the optimal program will need to consider diabetes type and severity, effects of the patient’s illness on blood glucose levels, and the patient’s capacities and preferences. See Section 13, “Older Adults” (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S013), for more information.

An outpatient follow-up visit with the primary care provider, endocrinologist, or diabetes care and education specialist within 1 month of discharge is advised for all patients experiencing hyperglycemia in the hospital. If glycemic medications are changed, or if glucose control is not optimal at discharge, an earlier appointment (in 1–2 weeks) is preferred, and frequent contact may be needed to avoid hyperglycemia and hypoglycemia. A recently described discharge algorithm for glycemic medication adjustment based on admission A1C was found useful to guide treatment decisions and significantly improved A1C after discharge (7). Therefore, if an A1C from the prior 3 months is unavailable, measuring the A1C in all patients with diabetes or hyperglycemia admitted to the hospital is recommended.

Clear communication with outpatient providers either directly or via hospital discharge summaries facilitates safe transitions to outpatient care. Providing information regarding the cause of hyperglycemia (or the plan for determining the cause), related complications and comorbidities, and recommended treatments can assist outpatient providers as they assume ongoing care.

The Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality recommends that, at a minimum, discharge plans include the following (113):

**Medication Reconciliation**

- The patient’s medications must be cross-checked to ensure that no chronic medications were stopped and to ensure the safety of new prescriptions.
- Prescriptions for new or changed medication should be filled and reviewed with the patient and family at or before discharge.

**Structured Discharge Communication**

- Information on medication changes, pending tests and studies, and follow-up needs must be accurately and promptly communicated to outpatient physicians.
- Discharge summaries should be transmitted to the primary care provider as soon as possible after discharge.
- Scheduling follow-up appointments prior to discharge increases the likelihood that patients will attend.

It is recommended that the following areas of knowledge be reviewed and addressed prior to hospital discharge:

- Identification of the health care provider who will provide diabetes care after discharge.
- Level of understanding related to the diabetes diagnosis, self-monitoring of blood glucose, home blood glucose goals, and when to call the provider.
- Definition, recognition, treatment, and prevention of hyperglycemia and hypoglycemia.
- Information on making healthy food choices at home and referral to an outpatient registered dietitian nutritionist to guide individualization of the meal plan, if needed.
- If relevant, when and how to take blood glucose-lowering medications, including insulin administration.
- Sick-day management.
- Proper use and disposal of needles and syringes.

It is important that patients be provided with appropriate durable medical equipment, medications, supplies (e.g., blood glucose test strips), and prescriptions, along with appropriate education at the time of discharge in order to avoid a potentially dangerous hiatus in care.

**PREVENTING ADMISSIONS AND READMISSIONS**

In patients with diabetes, the hospital readmission rate is between 14% and 20%, nearly twice that in patients without diabetes (114,115). This reflects increased disease burden for patients and has important financial implications. Of patients with diabetes who are hospitalized, 30% have two or more hospital
stays, and these admissions account for over 50% of inpatient costs for diabetes (116). Factors contributing to readmission include male sex, longer duration of prior hospitalization, number of previous hospitalizations, number and severity of comorbidities, and lower socioeconomic and/or educational status; scheduled home health visits and timely outpatient follow-up reduce rates of readmission (114,115). While there is no standard to prevent readmissions, several successful strategies have been reported (115). These include targeting ketosis-prone patients with type 1 diabetes (117), insulin treatment of patients with admission A1C >9% (75 mmol/mol) (118), and use of a transitional care model (119). For people with diabetic kidney disease, collaborative patient-centered medical homes may decrease risk-adjusted readmission rates (120). A recently published algorithm based on patient demographic and clinical characteristics had only moderate predictive power but identifies a promising future strategy (121).

Age is also an important risk factor in hospitalization and readmission among patients with diabetes (refer to Section 13, “Older Adults,” https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-S013, for detailed criteria).

References
83. Shah BR, Walji S, Kiss A, James JE, Lowe JM. Derivation and validation of a risk-prediction tool for hypoglycemia in hospitalized adults with diabetes: the Hypoglycemia During Hospi-
talization (HyDoH) score. Can J Diabetes 2019;43:278–282.e1
86. Korytkowski M, Draznin B, Drincic A. Food, fasting, insulin, and glycemic control in the hospital. In Managing Diabetes and Hyper-
90. Houlden RL, Moore S. In-hospital manage-
ment of adults using insulin pump therapy. Can J Diabetes 2014;38:126–133
95. Pichard-Lowden AR, Fan CY, Gabbay RA. Management of hyperglycemia in the non-
crinol Metab 2012;97:3132–3137
121. Rubin DJ, Recco D, Turchin A, Zhao H, Golden SH. External validation of the Diabetes Early Re-
Admission Risk Indicator (Derritm). Endocr Pract 2018;24:527–541
17. Diabetes Advocacy: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2022

The American Diabetes Association (ADA) “Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes” includes ADA’s current clinical practice recommendations and is intended to provide the components of diabetes care, general treatment goals and guidelines, and tools to evaluate quality of care. Members of the ADA Professional Practice Committee, a multidisciplinary expert committee (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SPPC), are responsible for updating the Standards of Care annually, or more frequently as warranted. For a detailed description of ADA standards, statements, and reports, as well as the evidence-grading system for ADA’s clinical practice recommendations, please refer to the Standards of Care Introduction (https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SINT). Readers who wish to comment on the Standards of Care are invited to do so at professional.diabetes.org/SOC.

Managing the daily health demands of diabetes can be challenging. People living with diabetes should not have to face discrimination due to diabetes. By advocating for the rights of those with diabetes at all levels, the American Diabetes Association (ADA) can help to ensure that they live a healthy and productive life. A strategic goal of the ADA is for more children and adults with diabetes to live free from the burden of discrimination. The ADA is also focused on making sure cost is not a barrier to successful diabetes management.

One tactic for achieving these goals has been to implement the ADA Standards of Care through advocacy-oriented position statements. The ADA publishes evidence-based, peer-reviewed statements on topics such as diabetes and employment, diabetes and driving, insulin access and affordability, and diabetes management in certain settings such as schools, childcare programs, and correctional institutions. In addition to the ADA’s clinical documents, these advocacy statements are important tools in educating schools, employers, licensing agencies, policy makers, and others about the intersection of diabetes medicine and the law and for providing scientifically supported policy recommendations.

ADVOCACY STATEMENTS

The following is a partial list of advocacy statements ordered by publication date, with the most recent statement appearing first.

Insulin Access and Affordability
The ADA’s Insulin Access and Affordability Working Group compiled public information and convened a series of meetings with stakeholders throughout the insulin supply chain to learn how each entity affects the cost of insulin for the consumer. Their conclusions and recommendations are published in the following ADA statement: Cefalu WT, Dawes DE, Gavlak G, et al.; Insulin Access and Affordability Working Group. Insulin Access and Affordability Working Group: conclusions and recommendations. Diabetes

© 2021 by the American Diabetes Association. Readers may use this article as long as the work is properly cited, the use is educational and not for profit, and the work is not altered. More information is available at https://diabetesjournals.org/journals/pages/license.
Diabetes Care in the School Setting
A sizable portion of a child’s day is spent in school, so close communication with and cooperation of school personnel are essential to optimize diabetes management, safety, and academic opportunities. See the following ADA position statement for diabetes management information for students with diabetes in the elementary and secondary school settings.


Care of Young Children With Diabetes in the Childcare Setting
Very young children (aged <6 years) with diabetes have legal protections and can be safely cared for by childcare providers with appropriate training, access to resources, and a system of communication with parents and the child’s diabetes provider. See the following ADA position statement for information on young children aged <6 years in settings such as day care centers, preschools, camps, and other programs.


Diabetes and Driving
People with diabetes who wish to operate motor vehicles are subject to a great variety of licensing requirements applied by both state and federal jurisdictions. For an overview of existing licensing rules for people with diabetes, factors that impact driving for this population, and general guidelines for assessing driver fitness and determining appropriate licensing restrictions, see the following ADA position statement.

Editor’s note: Federal commercial driving rules for individuals with insulin-treated diabetes changed on 19 November 2018. These changes will be reflected in a future updated ADA statement.


Diabetes and Employment
Any person with diabetes, whether insulin treated or non–insulin treated, should be eligible for any employment for which he or she is otherwise qualified. Employment decisions should never be based on generalizations or stereotypes regarding the effects of diabetes. For a general set of guidelines for evaluating individuals with diabetes for employment, including how an assessment should be performed and what changes (accommodations) in the workplace may be needed for an individual with diabetes, see the following ADA position statement.


Diabetes Care in Correctional Institutions
People with diabetes in correctional facilities should receive care that meets national standards. Correctional institutions should have written policies and procedures for the management of diabetes and for the training of medical and correctional staff in diabetes care practices. For a general set of guidelines for diabetes care in correction institutions, see the following ADA position statement.

Disclosures: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2022

*Diabetes Care 2022;45(Suppl. 1):S256–S258 | https://doi.org/10.2337/dc22-SDIS*

Committee members disclosed the following financial or other conflicts of interest (COI) covering the period 12 months before December 2021

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Member</th>
<th>Employment</th>
<th>Research grant</th>
<th>Other research support</th>
<th>Speakers' bureau/honoraria</th>
<th>Ownership interest</th>
<th>Consultant/advisory board</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Professional Practice Committee</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boris Dzamin, MD, PhD (Chair)</td>
<td>University of Colorado Denver, School of Medicine</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>eDoctate (unpaid professional education)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vanita R. Aroda, MD</td>
<td>Brigham and Women's Hospital Faculty, Harvard Medical School</td>
<td>Applied Therapeutics#, Eli Lilly#, Fraxyle#, Novo Nordisk#</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Janssen [spouse employee benefits]</td>
<td>Applied Therapeutics#, Novo Nordisk#, Pfizer, Sanofi</td>
<td>Janssen Pharmaceutical Companies of Johnson &amp; Johnson (spouse Sandip Datta, MD, Senior Director, Translational Sciences, Immunology, May 2020 to present) Consultant/Educational Activities: American College of Cardiology, American Diabetes Association, Cardiometabolic Health Congress, Endocrine Society, Hello Diabetes Academy, PeerView, PeerVoice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>George Bakris, MD</td>
<td>University of Chicago Medicine</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Merck, Novo Nordisk, Bayer, KBP Biosciences, Ionis, Alnylam, AstraZeneca, Quantum Genomics, Horizon, DiaMedica Therapeutics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gretchen Benson, RDN, LD, CDCES</td>
<td>Minneapolis Heart Institute Foundation</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Florence M. Brown, MD</td>
<td>Joslin Diabetes Center, Inc.</td>
<td>Dexcom#†</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RaShaye Freeman, DNP, FNP-BC, CDCES, ADM-BC</td>
<td>HCA Healthcare</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jennifer Green, MD</td>
<td>Duke University Medical Center</td>
<td>Boehringer Ingelheim/ Lilly Alliance*, Merck*, Sanofi Lexicon*, Roche*</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Continued on p. S257
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Member</th>
<th>Employment</th>
<th>Research grant</th>
<th>Other research support</th>
<th>Speakers’ bureau/honoraria</th>
<th>Ownership interest</th>
<th>Consultant/ advisory board</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Elbert Huang, MD, MPH, FACP</td>
<td>University of Chicago</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>AbbVie* (stockholder)</td>
<td>Twin health, Inc.</td>
<td>Medical Research Analytics and Informatics Alliance—BOD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>International Geriatric Diabetes Society—BOD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diana Isaacs, PharmD, BCPS, BC-ADM, CDCES</td>
<td>Cleveland Clinic</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Abbott, Dexcom, None Medtronic, Novo Nordisk, Xeris Pharmaceuticals, Bayer</td>
<td>Insulet, LifeScan, Sanofi, Lilly, DiabetesWise</td>
<td>None</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scott Kahan, MD, MPH</td>
<td>George Washington University, Milken Institute National Center for Weight and Wellness</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Vivus, Gelesis, Pfizer, Lilly</td>
<td>(All without compensation) The Obesity Society—BOD Endocrine Society— Advocacy and Public Outreach Core Committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jose Leon, MD, MPH</td>
<td>National Center for Health in Public Housing</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarah K. Lyons, MD</td>
<td>Baylor College of Medicine/Texas Children's Hospital</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Eli Lilly (parent stockholder)†</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Unpaid Board Member on Epic’s Pediatric Endocrinology Steering Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anne L. Peters, MD</td>
<td>Keck School of Medicine of USC</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Stock options: Omada Health, Teladoc</td>
<td>Abbott Diabetes Care, Eli Lilly, Medscape*, Novo Nordisk, Zealand, Vertex, AstraZeneca</td>
<td>Special government employee for U.S. Food and Drug Administration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Priya Prahalad, MD, PhD</td>
<td>Stanford Hospital and Clinics Lucile Packard Children's Hospital</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Unpaid Board Member on Epic’s Pediatric Endocrinology Steering Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jane E.B. Reusch, MD</td>
<td>University of Colorado</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Medtronic#</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deborah Young-Hyman, PhD, CDCES</td>
<td>Behavioral Health &amp; Social Science Research, National Institutes of Health</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

American College of Cardiology Designated Representatives and Staff (Section 10 “Cardiovascular Disease and Risk Management”)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Member</th>
<th>Employment</th>
<th>Research grant</th>
<th>Other research support</th>
<th>Speakers’ bureau/honoraria</th>
<th>Ownership interest</th>
<th>Consultant/ advisory board</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sandeep Das, MD, MPH, FACC</td>
<td>University of Texas Southwestern Medical Center</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mikhail Knoborod, MD, FACC</td>
<td>Saint Luke's Mid America Heart Institute</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>AstraZeneca, Boehringer Ingelheim</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Amgen*, Applied Therapeutics, AstraZeneca*, Bayer*, Boehringer Ingelheim*, Eli Lilly, Janssen*, Merck (Diabetes &amp; Cardiovascular)<em>, Novo Nordisk</em>, Sanofi*, Vifor Pharma*, Esperion Therapeutics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Continued on p. S258
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Member</th>
<th>Employment</th>
<th>Research grant</th>
<th>Other research support</th>
<th>Speakers’ bureau/honoraria</th>
<th>Ownership interest</th>
<th>Consultant/advisory board</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>American Diabetes Association Staff</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mindy Saraco, MHA</td>
<td>American Diabetes Association</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malaika I. Hill, MA</td>
<td>American Diabetes Association</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robert A. Gabbay, MD, PhD</td>
<td>American Diabetes Association</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Onduo*, Lark, Vida Health*</td>
<td>Spouse Christi Gabbay, CHSE, Managing Director, Major Gifts and Philanthropy at American Diabetes Association Endocrinologist, Joslin Diabetes Center (unpaid/volunteer)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nuha Ali El Sayed, MD, MMScsf</td>
<td>American Diabetes Association</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>Expert, World Health Organization</td>
<td>Endocrinologist, Joslin Diabetes Center (unpaid/volunteer) Chair, Diabetes Education for All (unpaid)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Disclosures may have been identified and/or acquired after the committee members were selected for the Professional Practice Committee. BOD, board of directors. *$10,000 per year from company to individual. #Grant or contract is to university or other employer. †Disclosure made after committee member began work on the Standards of Care 2022 update. ‡Employed by Joslin Diabetes Center prior to joining the American Diabetes Association in August 2021.
Index

A1C, S4, S18–S19
advantages of, S18
and cardiovascular disease outcomes, S88–S89
confirming diagnosis with, S19
correlation with BGM, S84
diagnosis of adults, S18–S19
diagnosis of children, S18–S19
differences in children, S84–S85
hemoglobinopathies and, S19
limitations, S84
other conditions affecting, S19
point-of-care assays, S4, S18
in prediabetes, S23
in pregnancy, S235
race/ethnicity and, S19, S84–S85
recommendations, S19
setting and modifying goals for, S89–S90
acarbose, S121, S137
access, to insulin, S254–S255
ADA statements, S1
adult-onset diabetes.

ACE inhibitors, S6, S7, S14, S149, S150, S158, S176, S178, S181, S182, S209, S216, S218, S222, S233, S239
acute kidney injury, S150, S178
ADA consensus report, S1–S2
ADA evidence-grading system, S2
ADA Professional Practice Committee, S1, S3
ADA statements, S1
ADAG study, S84–S85, S90, S91
Addison disease, S53
adolescents, see children and adolescents.
adrenal insufficiency, primary, S53
adult-onset diabetes. see Type 2 diabetes.
adults, prediabetes and diabetes screening in, S82, S25–S26
ADVANCE trial, S87–S88, S91, S146, S147
advocacy statements, S7, S254–S255
care of young children with diabetes in the school setting, S25
diabetes and driving, S25
diabetes and employment, S255
diabetes care in correctional institutions, S25

diabetes care in the school setting, S255
insulin access and affordability, S254–S255
African Americans, S11, S20, S21, S22, S25, S68, S69, S91
A1C variability in, S19, S23, S84–S85
BMI cut point in, S26
age
effect on A1C, S19–S20
risk factor for diabetes, S25
statin treatment and, S151
agricultural workers, migrant, S12
AIM-HIGH trial, S154–S155
albiglutide, S165, S166, S167
albuminuria, S66, S70, S91, S133, S145, S147, S149, S150, S156, S167, S176, S177, S178, S179, S180, S181, S182, S215, S217, S218
alcohol intake, S67
alirocumab, S153
alogliptin, S133, S137, S159, S167, S247
alpha-glucosidase inhibitors, S137
ambulatory glucose profile (AGP), S85, S86, S87
amputation, foot, S190, S191
analog. see insulin analogs.
anthrion receptor blockers (ARBs), S6, S149, S150, S158, S178, S180, S181, S182, S209, S210
anti-VEGF agents, S187–S188
antibiotics, S192
antibodies, S192
antiplatelet agents, S155–S157
anipsychotics, atypical, S26, S74
anti-platelet agents, S155–S157
antigorretroiravil therapies, S26
anxiety disorders, S72
ARRIVE trial, S156
ASCEND trial, S66, S156, S157
Asian Americans, S22, S25–S26, S119, S120
aspart, S27, S126, S138, S201
aspirin therapy, S155, S156, S239
ASPREE trial, S156
atinol, S190
atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease (ASCVD), S144–S174
atovastatin, S152
atypical antipsychotics, S26, S74
autoimmune diseases, S55, S215–S216
autoimmune diabetes, S55, S215–S216
automated insulin delivery (AID) systems, S5, S98, S104–S105, S126, S213
autonomic neuropathy, S70
autonomic neuropathy, diabetic, S188
balloons, implanted gastric, S119
bariatric surgery, S60–S82
diabetes self-management education and support, S60–S62
medication nutrition therapy, S62–S67
physical activity, S67–S70
in pregnancy, S236
psychosocial issues, S70–S75
smoking cessation, S70
for weight loss, S114–S115
bempedoic acid, S153–S154
beta-cell replacement therapy, S130–S131
biguanides, S137
bladder dysfunction, S189
Blood Glucose Awareness Training, S5, S72, S92
blood glucose monitoring (BGM), S5, S83, S84, S85, S89, S90, S92, S129, S221
bedside, in hospitalized patients, S246

correlation with A1C, S84
devices for, S98–S100
in hypoglycemia, S90–S92
in intensive insulin regimens, S99
during pregnancy, S235
blood pressure control. see also hypertension., S145–S150, S181
body mass index (BMI), S5, S18, S22, S25–S26, S114, S115, S116, S119, S120, S219, S221
S222, S237, S239
bone mineral density (BMD), S55
breonocriptine, S137
calcium channel blockers, S149, S150

canagliflozin, S133, S137, S162, S164, S167, S180, S181, S616
cancer, risk in diabetes, S53
CANVAS study, S162, S163, S164, S180, S181
capsaicin, topical, S190
carbazepine, S190

carbohydrate intake, S4, S5, S65–S66
cardiac autonomic neuropathy, diabetic, S188–S189
cardiac function testing, S223

cardiovascular disease, S6, S144–S174
A1C and outcomes of, S88–S89
antiplatelet agents, S155–S157
cardiac testing, S159
hypertension/blood pressure control, S145–S150
lifestyle and pharmacologic interventions, S159–S169
lipid management, S151–S155
prevention of, in prediabetes, S42–S43, S223
screening, S157–S159

cardiovascular risk in pediatric type 1 diabetes, S216
risk calculator, S145
care delivery systems, S9–S11
access to care and quality improvement, S10–S11
behaviors and well-being, S10
care teams, S10
chronic care model, S9
medication cost considerations, S10
six core elements, S9
system-level improvement strategies, S9–S10
care teams, S10

carmelina trial, S159, S167
CAROLINA trial, S159, S161
celiac disease, S53
in pediatric type 1 diabetes, S209, S215–S216
Charcot neuropathy, S69, S70, S190, S191
childcare, S12, S255
children and adolescents, S7, S208–S231
A1C in, S19–S20, S84–S85
asymptomatic, risk-based screening in, S23
cystic fibrosis-related diabetes in, S27
diabetes care in childcare settings, S212, S255
diabetes care in school setting, S98, S212, S254–S255
insulin pumps in, S104
maturity-onset diabetes of the young (MODY), S17, S28–S29
monogenic diabetes syndromes, S17, S28–S31
neonatal diabetes, S17, S28–S29
physical activity in, S68, S69
recommendations for screening and treatment, S209–S210
screening for prediabetes and type 2, S26
transition from pediatric to adult care, S224
type 1 diabetes in, S211–S218
type 2 diabetes in, S218–S224
China Da Qing Diabetes Prevention Outcome Study, S42–S43
CHIPS trial, S148
cholesterol lowering, S151
chronic care model, S9
chronic kidney disease, diabetic, S6–S7, S175–S184
acute kidney injury, S178
assessing albuminuria and GFR, S176–S177
diagnosis, S177
interventions for, S179–S182
referral to nephrologist, S182
risk of progression, S177
screening recommendations, S175
staging, S177–S178
surveillance, S178–S179
treatment recommendations, S175–S176
classification, S4, S17–S18
clonidine, S190
clopidogrel, S155, S157
closed-loop systems
do-it-yourself, S105
hybrid, S126
coaching, online, S105
cognitive capacity/impairment, S5, S53–S54,
cogntive impairment/dementia, S53–S54
hyperglycemia and, S54
hypoglycemia and, S54
nutrition and, S54
statins and, S54
dental practices, screening in, S26
depression, S72–S73
dentist, S128, S138, S139, S201
devices. see technology.
Diabetes Control and Complications Trial (DCCT), S19, S87, S88, S89, S90, S91, S105, S125, S126, S124, S128
Diabetes Control and Complications Trial/Epidemiology of Diabetes Interventions and Complications (DCCT/EDIC), S55, S88, S89, S91, S179
diabetes distress, S71–S72
diabetes medical management plan (DMMP), S98
Diabetes Prevention Impact Tool Kit, S41
Diabetes Prevention Program (DPP), S23, S40
delivery and dissemination of, S41–S42
Diabetes Prevention Recognition Program (DPPR), S42
diabetes self-management education and support (DSMES), S5, S10, S13, S60–S62, S63, S71, S93, S136, S211
diabetes technology. see technology, diabetes.
diabetic ketoacidosis, S17–S18, S249–S250
diabetic kidney disease. see chronic kidney disease.
Diabetic Retinopathy Study (DRS), S187
diagnosis, S4, S18–S26
confirmation of, S20
of diabetic kidney disease, S177
of diabetic neuropathy, S188–S189
diagnostic tests, S18–S20
type 1 diabetes, S20–S22
type of vs type 2 in pediatric patients, S210
type 2 diabetes, S23–S25
diagnostic tests, S18–S20
A1C, S19–S20
age, S19–S20
confirmation of, S20
criteria for, S19
ethnicity, S20
fasting and 2-h plasma glucose, S19
hemoglobinopathies, S20
preдиabetes, S22–S23
race, S20
diet for hypertension control, S148
for weight loss, S114–S115
Dietary Reference Intakes, S236
digital health technology, S105
Dipeptidyl peptidase 4 (DPP4) inhibitors, S28, S116, S133, S134, S135, S137, S159, S161, S166, S190, S200, S247
disordered eating behavior, S73–S74
do-it-yourself systems, S105
domperidone, S190
dose Adjusted for Normal Eating (DAFNE), S5, S92
DCRCT Retina Network, S187
driving, and diabetes, S255
droxidopa, S190
dulaglutide, S133, S137, S160, S165, S166, S167, S181
duloxetine, S189
dyslipidemia, S209, S210, S216–S217, S223
e-cigarettes, S70, S217
eating disorders, S73–S74
eating patterns, S74–S75
education, on device use, S98
electrical stimulation, gastric, S190
ELUXA trial, S160–S161
EMPA-REG OUTCOME trial, S133, S161, S162, S163, S167, S180, S181
EMPEROR Reduced trial, S133, S162, S163, S164, S167
employment, diabetes and, S255
enalapril, S190
end-of-life care, S204
enteral/parenteral feedings, S248–S249
erectional dysfunction, S56, S190
eritugliflozin, S133, S137, S162, S164–S165, S247
Ertugliflozin Efficacy and Safety Cardiovascular Outcomes Trial (VERTIS CV), S6, S164–S165
erithromycin, S190
eritugliflozin therapy, A1C and, S19
estimated average glucose (eAG), S84
ETDRS study, S187
ethnicity
effect on A1C, S20, S84–S85
in screening asymptomatic adults, S25–S26
in screening asymptomatic children/adolescents, S23
evidence-grading system, S2
evolcumbab, S6, S153
EXAMINE trial, S159, S167
exenatide, S133, S137, S160, S166, S167, S221
exercise. see physical activity.
exocrine pancreas diseases, S17, S30
EXSCEL trial, S133, S160–S161, S166
eye exam, comprehensive, S186, S187, S218, S223
etazimibe, S6, S151, S152, S153, S155, S156
family history, in screening children/adolescents, S23
fasting plasma glucose (FPG) test, S18, S19, S20, S23, S26, S136
fats, dietary, S66–S67
FDA standards, for glucose meters, S99
fibrates, S154
fibrate + statin therapy, S154
FLOW trial, S181
fluvastatin, S152
food insecurity, S11–S12
foot care, S7, S190–S192
footwear, S191
FOURIER trial, S153
fractures, S55
gastrectomy, vertical sleeve, S119–S120
gastric aspiration therapy, S119
gastric bypass, Roux-en-Y gastric, S119–S120
gastric electrical stimulation, S190
gastrointestinal neuropathies, S189
gastropareis, S189, S190
gemfibrozil, S154
genetic testing, S4, S28, S29
genoutinary disturbances, S189
gestational diabetes mellitus (GDM), S4, S17, S22, S23, S25, S30–S33, S41, S42, S232, S235, S236, S237, S239–S240
definition, S30–S31
initial testing, S239
insulin, S237
management of, S236–S237
medical nutrition therapy, S236–S237
metformin, S237
one-step strategy, S32
physical activity, S237
postpartum care, S239–S240
recommendations, S30
screening and diagnosis, S31–S33
sulfonyleureas, S237
two-step strategy, S32–S33
larginine, S126, S128, S138, S139, S140, S201
glimepiride, S133, S137, S159, S161, S200
glipizide, S133, S137, S200
glomerular filtration rate, S176
glugagon, S90, S91–S92
glugagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonists (GLP-1 RA), S118, S130, S135, S136, S137, S139–S140, S168, S179, S180, S181, S186, S190
glucocorticoid therapy, S26, S249
glucose, for hypoglycemia, S90, S91
-glucose meters
counterfeit strips, S99
inaccuracy, S100
interfering substances, S100
oxygen, S100
standards, S99
temperature, S100
-glucose monitoring: see also blood glucose monitoring.
-glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, A1c and, S19, S20
-glucose-lowering therapy, S116, S127, S131
in chronic kidney disease, S179–S182
in hospitalized patients, S246–S247
-glulisine, S138, S201
-gluburide, S134, S137, S200, S236, S237
-glucose control
assessment of, S83–S90
physical activity and, S69
-glucose goals, see also glycemic targets,
S87–S90
-glucose targets, S5, S83–S96
A1c and BGM correlation, S84
A1c and cardiovascular disease outcomes, S87
A1c differences in ethnic groups and children, S84–S85
A1c limitations, S84
continuous glucose monitoring, S85–S87
in diabetic kidney disease, S179
goals, S87–S90
in hospitalized patients, S245–S246
hypoglycemia, S90–S92
individualization of, S89
intercurrent illness, S92
in older adults, S197–S198
in pediatric type 1 diabetes, S213–S215
in pediatric type 2 diabetes, S219–S220
recommendations, S83
setting and modifying A1C goals, S89–S90
glycemic treatment, S6, S125–S143
guanfacine, S190
-glucose lowering therapy, S116, S127, S131
-glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, A1C and, S19, S20
-glucose-lowering therapy, S116, S127, S131
in chronic kidney disease, S179–S182
glucagon, S90–S92
initial testing, S239
insulin, S237
management of, S236–S237
medical nutrition therapy, S236–S237
metformin, S237
one-step strategy, S32
physical activity, S237
postpartum care, S239–S240
recommendations, S30
screening and diagnosis, S31–S33
sulfonyleureas, S237
two-step strategy, S32–S33
larginine, S126, S128, S138, S139, S140, S201
glimepiride, S133, S137, S159, S161, S200
glipizide, S133, S137, S200
glomerular filtration rate, S176
glugagon, S90, S91–S92
glugagon-like peptide 1 receptor agonists (GLP-1 RA), S118, S130, S135, S136, S137, S139–S140, S168, S179, S180, S181, S186, S190
glucocorticoid therapy, S26, S249
glucose, for hypoglycemia, S90, S91
-glucose meters
counterfeit strips, S99
inaccuracy, S100
interfering substances, S100
oxygen, S100
standards, S99
temperature, S100
-glucose monitoring: see also blood glucose monitoring.
-glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, A1c and, S19, S20
-glucose-lowering therapy, S116, S127, S131
in chronic kidney disease, S179–S182
in hospitalized patients, S246–S247
-glulisine, S138, S201
-gluburide, S134, S137, S200, S236, S237
-glucose control
assessment of, S83–S90
physical activity and, S69
-glucose goals, see also glycemic targets,
S87–S90
-glucose targets, S5, S83–S96
A1c and BGM correlation, S84
A1c and cardiovascular disease outcomes, S87
A1c differences in ethnic groups and children, S84–S85
A1c limitations, S84
continuous glucose monitoring, S85–S87
in diabetic kidney disease, S179
goals, S87–S90
in hospitalized patients, S245–S246
hypoglycemia, S90–S92
individualization of, S89
intercurrent illness, S92
in older adults, S197–S198
in pediatric type 1 diabetes, S213–S215
in pediatric type 2 diabetes, S219–S220
recommendations, S83
setting and modifying A1C goals, S89–S90
-glycemic treatment, S6, S125–S143
guanfacine, S190
-glucose lowering therapy, S116, S127, S131
-glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase deficiency, A1C and, S19, S20
-glucose-lowering therapy, S116, S127, S131
in chronic kidney disease, S179–S182
-
Join ADA Today!

Find the Most Current Research on Diabetes Treatment and Care. We are in this together.

Join thousands of professionals like you, who are part of a global community working to find a cure for diabetes. Professional membership provides up-to-date information on quality patient care information and access to the latest advancements in diabetes research, treatment and education for students, early-career and long-standing professionals.

Benefits include:
- The latest COVID-19 information to help you provide the best care for your patients
- FREE member-only webinars on topics that matter viewed live or on demand
- The most recent guidelines for diabetes care
- Subscription to Diabetes or Diabetes Care
- Discounts to Scientific Sessions registration
- Access to Member Forum and Interest Groups
- Continuing education and more!

Phone: 703.549.1500, ext. 5023 | Fax: 703.637.0004 | Online: professional.diabetes.org/join